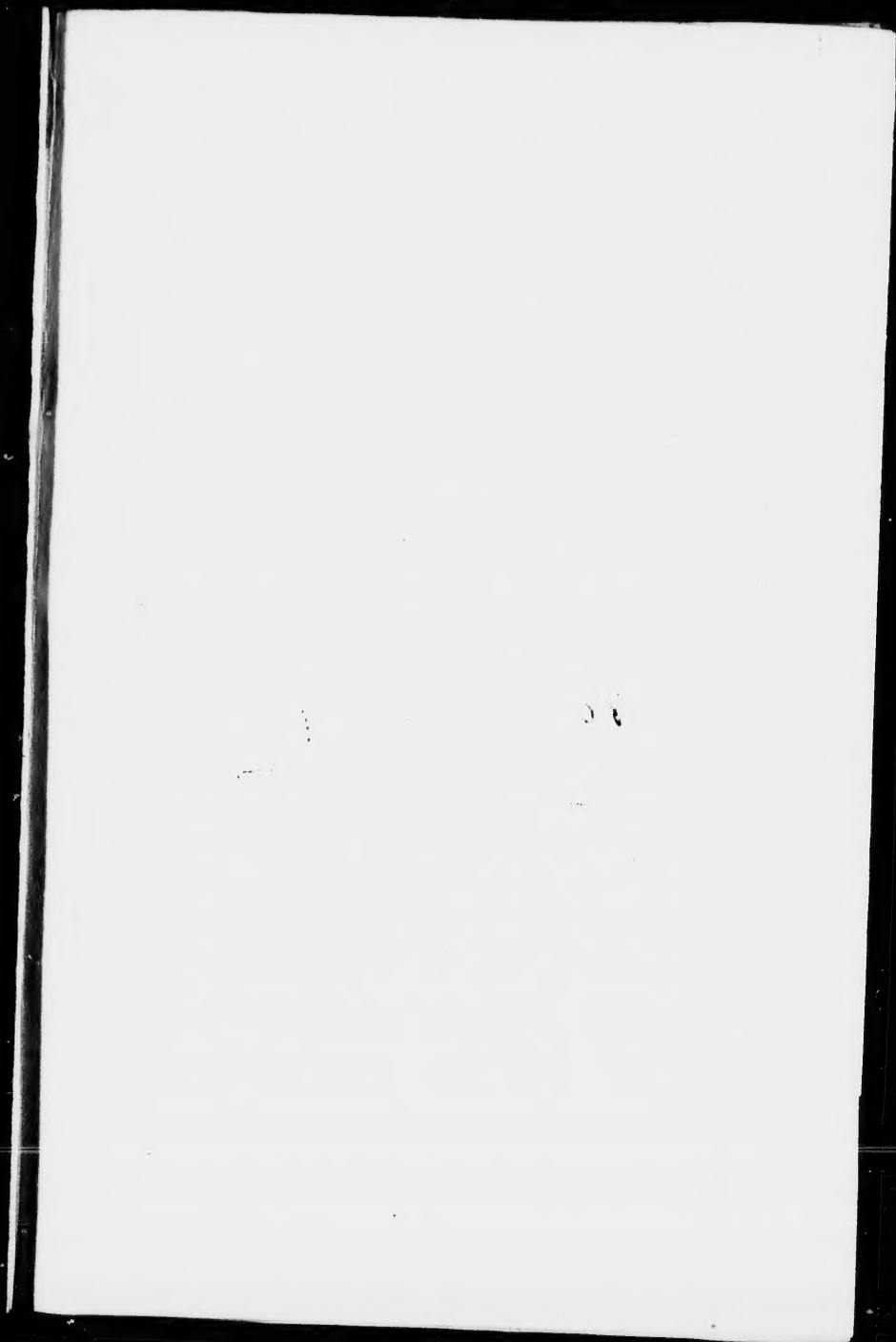
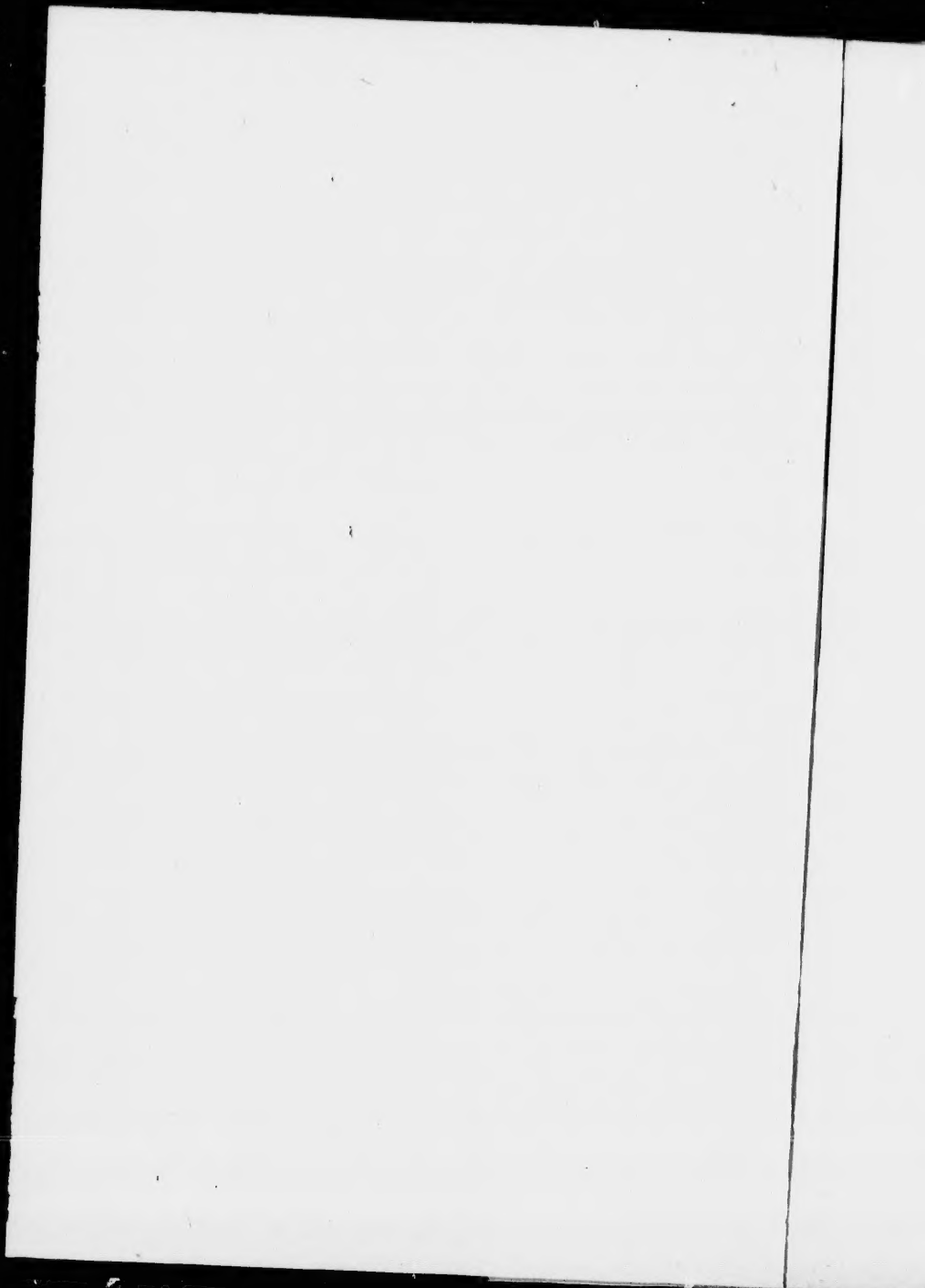
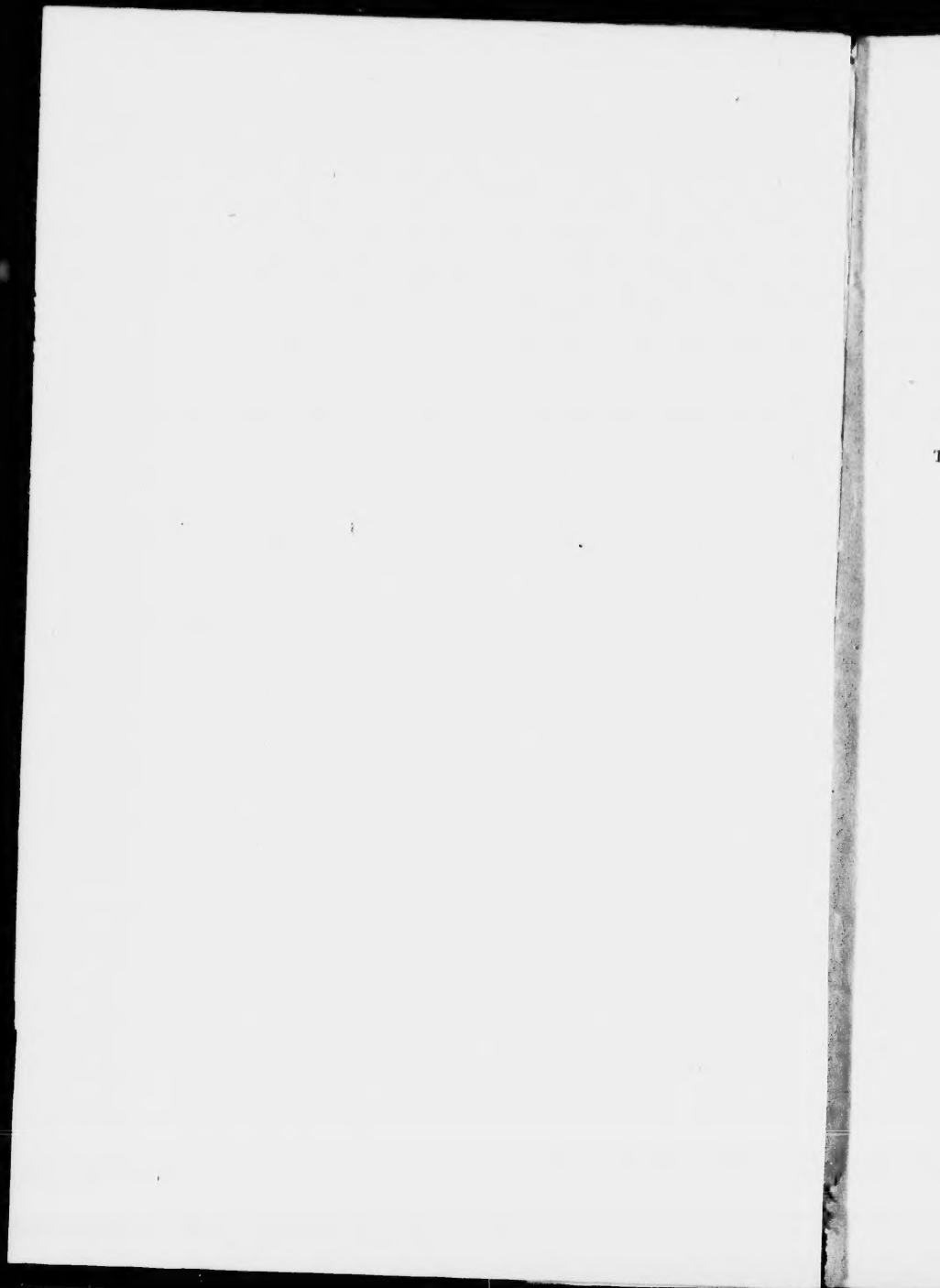








LATIN READER

CONTAINING
TABLES OF NOUNS AND VERBS, SYNTAX RULES
AND
THE NEPOS AND CAESAR SELECTIONS PRESCRIBED FOR MATRICU-
LATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

BY
J. HENDERSON, M.A.,
Principal of St. Catharines Collegiate Institute

AND
J. FLETCHER, M.A., LL.D.,
Professor of Latin, University College, Toronto.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1900.

PA2087
H45

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
nine hundred, by THE COPE, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the
Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

L
deri
G
are
G

Nom
Gen.
Dat.
Acc.
Voc.
Abl.

¹ Nou
farmer

² The
goddess
asina, a

³ Who
mensa.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

I.—FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in nominative in *-a*. Nouns in *-e*, *-as*, *-es* are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule: Nouns in *-a*¹, *-e* are feminine; those in *-as*, *-es* are masculine.

Genitive ending regularly, *-ae*.

Mens *a*, F., *a table*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	mens <i>ā</i>	mens <i>ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	mens <i>ae</i>	mens <i>ārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mens <i>ae</i>	mens <i>is</i> ²
<i>Acc.</i>	mens <i>am</i>	mens <i>as</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	mens <i>ā</i>	mens <i>ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	mens <i>ā</i>	mens <i>is</i>

Epitom *e*, F., *an abridgment*.

SINGULAR³.

<i>Nom.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ē</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ēs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ēn</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	ēpitōm <i>ē</i>

Leonid *as*, M., *Leonidas*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>as</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>am</i> (- <i>an</i>)
<i>Voc.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Lēōnīd <i>ā</i>

Pers *es*, M., *a Persian*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Pers <i>es</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Pers <i>ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Pers <i>ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Pers <i>en</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Pers <i>ē</i> (- <i>ā</i>)
<i>Abl.</i>	Pers <i>ē</i> (- <i>ā</i>)

¹ Nouns in *-a* denoting male beings are masculine; *as*, *Nauta*, *a sailor*; *agricola*, *a farmer*; *poeta*, *a poet*; also *dama*, *a deer*; *talpa*, *a mole*; *Hadria*, *the Adriatic Sea*.

² The following nouns have usually *-abus* in the dative and ablative plural: *Dea*, *a goddess*; *filia*, *a daughter*; *liberta*, *a freedwoman*; *mula*, *a she-mule*; *equa*, *a mare*; *asina*, *a she-ass*.

³ When nouns derived from the Greek have a plural, it is regular like the plural of *mensa*.

II.—SECOND DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in -us, -er, -ir, -um. Nouns in -os, -on are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -us¹, -er, -ir, -os are masculine; those in -um, -on are neuter.

Genitive ending, -i.

Dōmīn us, M., a lord, master.

Māgister, M., a master, teacher.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	dōmīn us	dōmīn i		Nom.	māgister	māgistr i	
Gen.	dōmīn i	dōmīn ōrum ²		Gen.	māgistr i	māgistr ōrum	
Dat.	dōmīn ō	dōmīn is		Dat.	māgistr ō	māgistr is	
Acc.	dōmīn um	dōmīn ōs		Acc.	māgistr um	māgistr ōs	
Voc.	dōmīn ē ³	dōmīn i		Voc.	māgister	māgistr i	
Abl.	dōmīn ō	dōmīn is		Abl.	māgistr ō	māgistr is	

Puer, M., a boy.

Vir, M., a man.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	pūer	pūer i		Nom.	vīr	vīr i	
Gen.	pūer i	pūer ōrum		Gen.	vīr i	vīr ōrum	
Dat.	pūer ō	pūer is		Dat.	vīr ō	vīr is	
Acc.	pūer um	pūer ōs		Acc.	vīr um	vīr ōs	
Voc.	pūer	pūer i		Voc.	vīr	vīr i	
Abl.	pūer ō	pūer is		Abl.	vīr ō	vīr is	

¹Exceptions to Gender (2nd Decl.).—The following are feminine: (1) Names of cities and islands: as, Cērinthus, *Corinth*; Delos, *Delos*. (2) Names of trees: as, Fāgus, a *beech-tree*; pīrus, a *pear-tree*. (3) Words that are feminine in Greek: as, Methōdus, *method*. (4) Alvus, *belly*; cōlus, *distaff*; hūmus, *ground*; vannus, a *wheat-fan*; carbāsus, *linen* (pl. carbāsa). The following are neuter: Pēlāgus, *sea*; vīrus, *poison*; vulgus, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

²Nouns in -ius often contract the genitive singular -ii into -i, and the vocative -ie into -i: as, Mercūrii, *Mercuri*; Mercūrie, *Mercuri*.

³The following nouns have -um for -ōrum, in the genitive plural: Deus, a *god*; nummus, *money*; faber, a *workman*; vir, a *man*; socius, a *companion, ally*.

Deus, a *god*, is declined: Sing. Nom., deus; Gen., dei; Dat., deō; Acc., deum; Voc., deus; Abl., deō. Plur. Nom., dei, dii, di; Gen., deōrum, deum; Dat., deīs, diīs, diīs; Acc., deos; Voc., dei, dii, di; Abl., deīs, diīs, diīs.

¹ Gre
dominu
of -ōrum
² Except

(2)

(3)

(4)

(5)

Bell um, N., <i>war</i> .		Dēl os, F., <i>Delos</i> .		Ili on, N., <i>Ilium or Troy</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR ¹ .		SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Nom.</i> Dēl os, ūs		<i>Ili on, um</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> bell i	bell ōrum	<i>Gen.</i> Dēl i		<i>Ili i</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> bell ō	bell is	<i>Dat.</i> Dēl ō		<i>Ili ō</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Acc.</i> Dēl on, um		<i>Ili on, um</i>	
<i>Voc.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Voc.</i> Dēl ē		<i>Ili on, um</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> bell ō	bell is	<i>Abl.</i> Dēl ō		<i>Ili ō</i>	

III.—THIRD DECLENSION.

Nominative, various endings.

Genitive ending, *-is*.*Masculine*² endings: *-er, -or, -os, -es* (increasing in the genitive), and *-o* (except *-do, -go, -io*).*Feminine*³ endings: *-do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es* (not increasing in the genitive), *-s* impure, and *-ūs* in words of more than one syllable.*Neuter*⁴ endings: *-c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs, -ūs* (in words of one syllable).

Princeps, M., <i>chief</i> .		Trabs, F., <i>a beam</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> princeps	princīp ēs	<i>Nom.</i> trab s	trāb ēs
<i>Gen.</i> princīp is	princīp um	<i>Gen.</i> trāb is	trāb um
<i>Dat.</i> princīp i	princīp ibus	<i>Dat.</i> trāb i	trāb ibus
<i>Acc.</i> princīp em	princīp ēs	<i>Acc.</i> trāb em	trāb ēs
<i>Voc.</i> princeps	princīp ēs	<i>Voc.</i> trab s	trāb ēs
<i>Abl.</i> princīp ē	princīp ibus	<i>Abl.</i> trāb ē	trāb ibus

¹ Greek nouns in the plural are usually regular, those in *-os* being inflected like *dominus* in the plural, those in *-on* like *bellum*; but both classes may have *-on* instead of *-orum* in the genitive plural.² *Exceptions to Gender* (of 3rd Decl.).--(1) *-er*: *Cādāv-er, -ēris* N., *a dead body*; *līter, lītērīs* N., *a road*; *papāver, -ēris* N., *a poppy*; *tuber, -ēris* N., *a swelling*; *uber, -ēris* N., *an udder*; *ver, vēris* N., *spring*; *verber, -ēris* N., *a lash*.(2) *-or*: *Arb-or, -ōris* F., *a tree*; *aequ-or, -ōris* N., *the sea*; *marm-or, -ōris* N., *marble*; *cor, cordis* N., *the heart*.(3) *-es*: *Comp-es, -ēdis* F., *fetter*; *merc-es, -ēdis* F., *merchandise*; *merg-es, -itis* F., *a sheaf*; *qui-es, -ētis* F.; *requi-es, -ētis* F., *rest*; *sēg-es, -ētis* F., *a crop*; *tēg-es, -ētis* F., *a covering*; *aes, aeris* N., *copper*.(4) *-os*: *Cos, cōtis* F., *a whetstone*; *dos, dōtis* F., *dowry*; *ōs, ossis* N., *a bone*; *ūs, ōris* N., *a mouth*.(5) *-o*: *Cāro, carnis* F., *flesh*; *echo, echūs* F., *echo*. (Over).

Hiems, F., *winter*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. hiems	hiēm ēs
Gen. hiēm is	hiēm um
Dat. hiēm i	hiēm ibus
Acc. hiēm em	hiēm ēs
Voc. hiēm s	hiēm ēs
Abl. hiēm ē	hiēm ibus

Miles, M., *a soldier*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. miles	milit ēs
Gen. milit is	milit um
Dat. milit i	milit ibus
Acc. milit em	milit ēs
Voc. mile s	milit ēs
Abl. milit ē	milit ibus

Pes, M., *a foot*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. pes	pēd es
Gen. pēd is	pēd um
Dat. pēd i	pēd ibus
Acc. pēd em	pēd ēs
Voc. pe s	pēd ēs
Abl. pēd ē	pēd ibus

Flos, N., *a flower*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. flōs	flōr ēs
Gen. flōr is	flōr um
Dat. flōr i	flōr ibus
Acc. flōr em	flōr ēs
Voc. flōs	flōr ēs
Abl. flōr ē	flōr ibus

* (1) -o: Ord-o, -inis, M., *arrangement*; card-o, -inis, M., *hinge*; lig-o, -ōnis, M., *a mattock*; marg-o, -inis, M., *margin* (of a river).

(2) -is: Amnis, -is, M., *a river*; collis, -is, M., *hill*; cin-is, -ēris, M., *ashes*; crin-is, -is, M., *hair*; ens-is, -is, M., *a sword*; fascis, -is, M., *bundle*; finis, -is, M. and F., *end*; follis, -is, M., *bellows*; fun-is, -is, M., *a rope*; ign-is, -is, M., *fire*; lāp-is, -idis, M., *a stone*; mens-is, -is, M., *a month*; orb-is, -is, M., *a circle*; pān-is, -is, M., *bread*; pisc-is, -is, M., *a fish*; post-is, -is, M., *a post*; pulv-is, -ēris, M., *dust*; sangu-is, -inis, M., *blood*; torr-is, -is, M., *fire-brand*; ungu-is, -is, M., *a nail*; vect-is, -is, M., *crowbar*; vermis, -is, M., *a worm*.

(3) -x: Calix, -icis, M., *a cup*; codex, -icis, M., *a book*; cortex, -icis, M., *bark of a tree*; grex, grūgis, M., *flock*; pollex, -icis, M., *thumb*; silex, -icis, M., *flint*; vertex, -icis, M., *top*.

(4) -es: Acināces, -is, M., *a scimitar*.

(5) -s impure: Mons, montis, M., *a mountain*; dens, dentis, M., *tooth*; fons, fontis, M., *a fountain*; pons, pontis, M., *bridge*; bidens, bidentis, M., *a mattock*; rudens, rudentis, M., *a rope*.

(6) -as: As, assis, M., *a small coin*; elephas, elephantis, M., *an elephant*; vas, vasis, N. (in singular of 3rd; plural, vāsa, -ōrum, of the 2nd), *a vessel*; fas, indecl., N., *right*; nefas, indecl., N., *wrong*.

* (1) -l: Sal, sālis, M., *salt*; sol, sōlis, M., *sun*.

(2) -n: Lien, liēnis, M., *spleen*; ren, rēnis, M., *kidney*; splen, splēnis, M., *spleen*; pecten, pectinis, M., *comb*.

(3) -ur: Fur, fūris, M., *thief*; furfur, ūris, M., *bran*; turtur, ūris, M., *a turtle-dove*; vultur, -ūris, M., *a vulture*.

(4) -us: Pēcus, -ūdis, F., *a single head of cattle*; lepūs, -ōris, M., *a hare*; grū grūs, M., *a crane*; sus, sūs, M., *a pig*; mus, mūs, M., *a mouse*.

M., a soldier.

PLURAL.
milīt ēs
milīt um
milīt ibus
milīt ēs
milīt ēs
milīt ibus

N., a flower.

PLURAL.
flōr ēs
flōr um
flōr ibus
flōr ēs
* flōr ibus

inge; lig-o, -ōnis, M., a

is, -ēris, M., ashes; crin-is, -ēris, M., and F.,
 gn-is, -is, M., fire; lāp-is, -is, M., a circle; pān-is, -is, M., a post; pulv-is, -ēris, -is, fire-brand; ungu-is, -is, a worm.

cortex, -icis, M., bark of a
 umb; silex, -icis, M., flint;

entis, M., tooth; fons, fontis,
 s, bidentis, M., a mattock;

entis, M., an elephant; vas,
 of the 2nd), a vessel; fus-

y; splen, splēnis, M., spleen

turtur, ūris, M., a turtle-dove

ēpus, -ōris, M., a hare; grū-

ūris, M., a mouse.

Opūs, N., a work.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. opūs	ōpēr ā
Gen. opēr is	ōpēr um
Dat. opēr i	ōpēr ibus
Acc. opūs	ōpēr ā
Voc. opūs	ōpēr ā
Abl. opēr ē	ōpēr ibus

Rēgō, F., a district.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. rēgō	rēgion ēs
Gen. rēgion is	rēgion um
Dat. rēgion i	rēgion ibus
Acc. rēgion em	rēgion ēs
Voc. rēgō	rēgion ēs
Abl. rēgion ē	rēgion ibus

Victor, M., a conqueror.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. victor	victōr ēs
Gen. victōr is	victōr um
Dat. victōr i	victōr ibus
Acc. victōr em	victōr ēs
Voc. victor	victōr ēs
Abl. victōr ē	victōr ibus

Consul, M., a consul.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. consūl	consūl ēs
Gen. consūl is	consūl um
Dat. consūl i	consūl ibus
Acc. consūl em	consūl ēs
Voc. consūl	consūl ēs
Abl. consūl ē	consūl ibus

Corpūs, N., a body.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. corpūs	corpōr ā
Gen. corpōr is	corpōr um
Dat. corpōr i	corpōr ibus
Acc. corpūs	corpōr ā
Voc. corpūs	corpōr ā
Abl. corpōr ē	corpōr ibus

Virgo, F., a maiden.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. virgo	virgīn ēs
Gen. virgīn is	virgīn um
Dat. virgīn i	virgīn ibus
Acc. virgīn em	virgīn ēs
Voc. virgo	virgīn ēs
Abl. virgīn ē	virgīn ibus

Sol, M., the sun.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. sōl	sōl ēs
Gen. sōl is	sōl um
Dat. sōl i	sōl ibus
Acc. sōl em	sōl ēs
Voc. sōl	sōl ēs
Abl. sōl ē	sōl ibus

Passer, M., a sparrow.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. passer	passēr ēs
Gen. passēr is	passēr um
Dat. passēr i	passēr ibus
Acc. passēr em	passēr ēs
Voc. passer	passēr ēs
Abl. passēr ē	passēr ibus

Pater, M., *a father.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> pāter	pātr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> pātr is	pātr um
<i>Dat.</i> pātr i	pātr ibus
<i>Acc.</i> pātr em	pātr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> pāter	pātr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> pātr ē	pātr ibus

Rex, M., *a king.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rex	rēg ēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēg is	rēg um
<i>Dat.</i> rēg i	rēg ibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēg em	rēg ēs
<i>Voc.</i> rex	rēg ēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēg ē	rēg ibus

Dux, M. or F., *a leader.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> dux	dūc ēs
<i>Gen.</i> dūc is	dūc um
<i>Dat.</i> dūc i	dūc ibus
<i>Acc.</i> dūc em	dūc ēs
<i>Voc.</i> dux	dūc ēs
<i>Abl.</i> dūc ē	dūc ibus

Hostis, M. or F., *an enemy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> host is	host ēs
<i>Gen.</i> host is	host ium
<i>Dat.</i> host i	host ibus
<i>Acc.</i> host em	host ēs (-is)
<i>Voc.</i> host is	host ēs
<i>Abl.</i> host ē	host ibus

Iudex, M., *a judge.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> iudex	iūdic ēs
<i>Gen.</i> iūdic is	iūdic um
<i>Dat.</i> iūdic i	iūdic ibus
<i>Acc.</i> iūdic em	iūdic ēs
<i>Voc.</i> iudex	iūdic ēs
<i>Abl.</i> iūdic ē	iūdic ibus

Radix, F., *a root.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rādex	rādic ēs
<i>Gen.</i> rādic is	rādic um
<i>Dat.</i> rādic i	rādic ibus
<i>Acc.</i> rādic em	rādic ēs
<i>Voc.</i> rādex	rādic ēs
<i>Abl.</i> rādic ē	rādic ibus

Lex, F., *a law.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> lex	lēg ēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēg is	lēg um
<i>Dat.</i> lēg i	lēg ibus
<i>Acc.</i> lēg em	lēg ēs
<i>Voc.</i> lex	lēg ēs
<i>Abl.</i> lēg ē	lēg ibus

Nubes, F., *a cloud.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> nūbēs	nūb ēs
<i>Gen.</i> nūb is	nūb ium
<i>Dat.</i> nūb i	nūb ibus
<i>Acc.</i> nūb em	nūb ēs
<i>Voc.</i> nūb ēs	nub ēs
<i>Abl.</i> nūb ē	nūb ibus

¹ The
tussis, a
also neu

² The
Clavis, a
stis, a

³ The f
(*) monos
ive; (4)

⁴ Neute

, M., a judge.

AR.	PLURAL.
x	iūdīc ēs
is	iūdīc um
i	iūdīc ibus
em	iūdīc ēs
x	iūdīc ēs
ē	iūdīc ibus

dix, F., a root.

AR.	PLURAL.
x	rādīc ēs
is	rādīc um
i	rādīc ibus
em	rādīc ēs
x	rādīc ēs
ē	rādīc ibus

ex, F., a law.

AR.	PLURAL.
	lēg ēs
is	lēg um
i	lēg ibus
em	lēg ēs
	lēg ēs
ē	lēg ibus

bes, F., a cloud.

ULAR.	PLURAL.
ēs	nūb ēs
is	nūb ium
i	nūb ibus
em	nūb ēs
ēs	nub ēs
ē	nūb ibus

Turris, F., a tower.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> turr is	turr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> turr is	turr ium ³
<i>Dat.</i> turr i	turr ibus
<i>Acc.</i> turr em (-im) ¹	turr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> turr is	turr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> turr ē (-i) ²	turr ibus

Mare, N., the sea.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> mārē	mār iā ⁴
<i>Gen.</i> mār is	mār ium
<i>Dat.</i> mār i	mār ibus
<i>Acc.</i> mārē	mār iā
<i>Voc.</i> mārē	mār iā
<i>Abl.</i> mār i	mār ibus

Calcar, N., a spur.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> calcar	calcār iā
<i>Gen.</i> calcār is	calcār ium
<i>Dat.</i> calcār i	calcār ibus
<i>Acc.</i> calcar	calcār iā
<i>Voc.</i> calcar	calcār iā
<i>Abl.</i> calcār i	calcār ibus

Ignis, M., fire.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ign is	ign ēs
<i>Gen.</i> ign is	ign ium
<i>Dat.</i> ign i	ign ibus
<i>Acc.</i> ign em	ign ēs (-is)
<i>Voc.</i> ign is	ign ēs
<i>Abl.</i> ign ē (-i)	ign ibus

Animal, N., an animal.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ānīmal	ānīmāl iā
<i>Gen.</i> ānīmāl is	ānīmāl ium
<i>Dat.</i> ānīmāl i	ānīmāl ibus
<i>Acc.</i> ānīmal	ānīmāl iā
<i>Voc.</i> ānīmal	ānīmāl iā
<i>Abl.</i> ānīmāl i	ānīmāl ibus

Urbs, F., a city.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> urb s	urb ēs
<i>Gen.</i> urb is	urb ium
<i>Dat.</i> urb i	urb ibus
<i>Acc.</i> urb em	urb ēs
<i>Voc.</i> urb s	urb ēs
<i>Abl.</i> urb ē	urb ibus

¹ The following nouns have the acc. sing. in -im: Amussis, a carpenter's square; tussis, a cough; sitis, thirst; ravis, hoarseness; vis, force, strength; these nouns and also neuters in -e, -al, -ar have abl. sing. in -i.

² The following nouns have the acc. sing. in -im or -em, and abl. sing. in -i or -e: Clavis, a key; febris, fever; messis, harvest; navis, a ship; puppis, a stern of a vessel; restis, a rope; securis, an axe; sementis, sowing; strigilis, strigil.

³ The following nouns have the genitive plural in -ium: (1) Neuters in -e, -al, -ar; (2) monosyllables in -x or -s impure; (3) nouns in -es or -is, not increasing in the genitive; (4) nouns ending in -us or -rs.

⁴ Neuters in -e, -al, -ar have -ia in pl. nom., acc., voc.

Nox, F., *night*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> nox	noct ēs
<i>Gen.</i> noct is	noct ium
<i>Dat.</i> noct i	noct ibus
<i>Acc.</i> noct em	noct ēs
<i>Voc.</i> nox	noct ēs
<i>Abl.</i> noct ē	noct ibus

Amans, M. or F., *a lover*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> āman s	āmant ēs
<i>Gen.</i> āmant is	āmant ium
<i>Dat.</i> āmant i	āmant ibus
<i>Acc.</i> āmant em	āmant ēs
<i>Voc.</i> āman s	āmant ēs
<i>Abl.</i> āmant ē (-i)	āmant ibus

Bos, M., *an ox*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> bōs	bōv ēs
<i>Gen.</i> bōv is	{ bōv um bō um
<i>Dat.</i> bōv i	{ bō bus bū bus
<i>Acc.</i> bōv em	bōv ēs
<i>Voc.</i> bōs	bōv ēs
<i>Abl.</i> bōv ē	{ bō bus bū bus

Vis, F., *strength*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> v is	vīr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> v is ¹	vīr ium
<i>Dat.</i> v i ¹	vīr ibus
<i>Acc.</i> v im	vīr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> v is	vīr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> v i	vīr ibus

Sus, M. or F., *swine*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> sūs	sū ēs
<i>Gen.</i> sū is	sū um
<i>Dat.</i> sū i	{ sū ibus sū bus
<i>Acc.</i> sū em	sū ēs
<i>Voc.</i> sūs	sū ēs
<i>Abl.</i> sū ē	{ sū ibus sū bus

Nix, F., *snow*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> nix	nīv ēs
<i>Gen.</i> nīv is	nīv ium
<i>Dat.</i> nīv i	nīv ibus
<i>Acc.</i> nīv em	nīv ēs
<i>Voc.</i> nix	nīv ēs
<i>Abl.</i> nīv ē	nīv ibus

¹ The genitive and dative singular of vis are rare.

¹ Exc
needle
a tribe
store (v
² The
a joint
lacus, o

M. or F., *a lover*.

R. PLURAL.

s āmānt ēs
is āmānt ium
i āmānt ihus
em āmānt ēs
s āmānt ēs
ē (-i) āmānt ihus

, *strength*.

R. PLURAL.

vīr ēs
vīr ium
vīr ihus
vīr ēs
vīr ēs
vīr ihus

F., *snow*.

R. PLURAL.

nīv ēs
nīv ium
nīv ihus
nīv ēs
nīv ēs
nīv ihus

Senex, M., *an old man*.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. sēnex sēn ēs
Gen. sēn is sēn um
Dat. sēn i sēn ihus
Acc. sēn em sēn ēs
Voc. sēnex sēn ēs
Abl. sēn ē sēn ihus

Iupiter, M.,
Jupiter.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Iūpiter
Gen. Iōv is
Dat. Iōv i
Acc. Iōv em
Voc. Iūpiter
Abl. Iōv ē

Iter, N., *a journey*.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Nom. iter itinēr ā
Gen. itinēr is itinēr um
Dat. itinēr i itinēr ihus
Acc. iter itinēr ā
Voc. iter itinēr ā
Abl. itinēr ē itinēr ihus

GREEK PROPER NAMES.

Neocles, M.,
Neocles.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Nēocl es
Gen. Nēocl is (-i)
Dat. Nēocli
Acc. Nēocl em
Voc. Nēocl es
Abl. Nēocl ē

Themistocles, M.,
Themistocles.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Thēmistōcl ēs
Gen. Thēmistōcl is
Dat. Thēmistōcl i
Acc. Thēmistōcl em -ēn
Voc. Thēmistōcl ēs
Abl. Thēmistōcl ē

Salamis, F.,
Salamis.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Sālām is
Gen. Sālāmin is (-os)
Dat. Sālāmin i
Acc. Sālāmin ā
Voc. Sālām is
Abl. Sālāmin ē

IV.—FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nominative endings, -ūs, -ū.

Genitive ending, -ūs.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -ūs are masculine¹; those in -ū are neuter.Fructus, M., *fruit*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. fruct ūs fruct ūs Acc. fruct um fruct ūs
Gen. fruct ūs fruct ūum Voc. fruct ūs fruct ūs
Dat. fruct ūi fruct ihus² Abl. fruct ū fruct ihus

¹Exceptions to Gender of Fourth Declension.—The following are feminine: *Acus*, a needle; *colus*, a distaff (also of the 2nd); *domus*, a house; *porticus*, a portico; *tribus*, a tribe; *Idūs* (pl.), the Ides of the month; *Quinquātrūs*, the feast of *Minerva*; *penus*, store (when of this declension).

²The following have -*ibus* instead of -*ibus* in the dative and ablative plural: *Artus*, a joint; *portus*, a harbor; *tribus*, a tribe; *veru*, a spit; and all dissyllables in -*cus*: *as*, *lācus*, a lake.

Domūs, F., *a house.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> dōm ūs	dōm ūs
<i>Gen.</i> dōm ūs	dōm ūum (-ōrum)
<i>Dat.</i> dōm ūi (-ō)	dōm ūbus
<i>Acc.</i> dōm um	dōm ōs (-ūs)
<i>Voc.</i> dōm ūs	dōm ūs
<i>Abl.</i> dōm ō (-ū)	dōm ūbus

Cornu, N., *a horn.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Gen.</i> corn ūs	corn ūum
<i>Dat.</i> corn ū	corn ūbus
<i>Acc.</i> corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Voc.</i> corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Abl.</i> corn ū	corn ūbus

V.—FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nominative ending, -ēs.

Genitive ending, -ēi.

Gender Rule : Nouns are feminine.¹Rēs, F., *a thing.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> r ēs	r ēs
<i>Gen.</i> r ēi	r ērum
<i>Dat.</i> r ēi	r ēbus
<i>Acc.</i> r em	r ēs
<i>Voc.</i> r ēs	r ēs
<i>Abl.</i> r ē	r ēbus

Dies, M. or F., *a day.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> dī ēs	dī ēs
<i>Gen.</i> dī ēi	dī ērum
<i>Dat.</i> dī ēi	dī ēbus
<i>Acc.</i> dī em	dī ēs
<i>Voc.</i> dī ēs	dī ēs
<i>Abl.</i> dī ē	dī ēbus

Respublica, F., *the state.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēpublic ā	rēpublic ae
<i>Gen.</i> rēpublic ae	rērumpublic ārum
<i>Dat.</i> rēpublic ae	rēbuspublic is
<i>Acc.</i> rempublic am	rēpublic as
<i>Voc.</i> rēpublic ā	rēpublic ae
<i>Abl.</i> rēpublic ā	rēbuspublic is

¹ Exceptions to Gender of Fifth Declension. — Dies, *a day*, is masc. or fem. in sing.; in the plural masc.: *mēridies*, *mid-day*, only used in the singular, is masc.

VI.—IRREGULAR NOUNS.

INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter and are used only in the nominative and accusative and generally only in the singular. They are as follows:—*Fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *māne*, morning; *instar*, a model; *pondo*, weight; *sēcus*, sex; *nihil*, nothing; *opus*, need.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are used only in the *singular*:—

(1) Names of *persons and places*: as, *Roma*, Rome; *Cicero*, *Cicero*.

(2) *Abstract nouns*: as, *Fides*, faith; *iustitia*, justice.

(3) Names of *materials*: as, *Aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

(4) Single words: as, *Meridies*, mid-day; *specimen*, example; *supellēx* (ecclis), furniture; *ver*, spring; *vesper*, evening.

2. The following nouns are used only in the *plural*:—

(1) Class words: as, *Maiōres*, descendants; *gemini*, twins; *liberi*, children.

(2) Many names of cities: as, *Āthēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes, Delphi, Delphi.

(3) Many names of festivals: as, *Bacchanālia*, Olympia.

(4) Single words: as, *Arma*, arms; *divitiāe*, riches; *exsēquiae*, funeral rites; *exūviae*, spoils; *Idūs*, Ides of the month; *indūtiae*, a truce; *insidiae*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnia*, duties; *nuptiae*, a wedding; *rēliquiae*, remains.

3. The following words have *one meaning in the singular and a different one in the plural*:—

SINGULAR.

aedes (F.), Gen., *aedis*, a temple.

āqua (F.), water.

auxilium (N.), help.

bōnum (N.), a good thing.

PLURAL.

aedes, *aedium*, a house.

āquae, a watering-place.

auxilia, auxiliaries.

bōna, goods.

SINGULAR.

carcer (M.), a *dungeon*.
 castrum (N.), a *fort*.
 codicillus (M.), a *bit of wood*.
 comitium (N.), a *place of assembly*.

cōpia (F.), *plenty*.
 fides (F.), a *harp-string*.
 finis (M. or F.), an *end*.

fortūna (F.), *fortune*.
 grātia (F.), *favor*.
 hortus (M.), a *garden*.
 impēdimentum (N.), a *hindrance*.

littēra (F.), a *letter of the alphabet*.
 lōcus (M.), *place*; pl., lōca (N.).
 lūdus (M.), *sport*.
 nātālis (M.), *birthday*.
 ōpera (F.), a *task*.
 ōpis (F.), *genitive, help*.
 pars (F.), a *part*.

plāga (F.), *region*.
 rostrum (N.), a *beak, prow of a vessel*.
 sal (M. or N.), *salt*.
 tabella (F.), a *tablet*.

PLURAL.

carcēres, *barriers of a race-course*.
 castra, a *camp*.
 codicilli, *tablets*.
 comitia, a *political assembly, elections*.

cōplae, *troops*.
 fides, *lyre*.
 fines (M.), *boundaries or territories*.

fortūnae, *possessions*.
 gratiae, *thanks*.
 horti, *pleasure-grounds*.
 impēdimenta, *baggage of an army*.

littērae, *an epistle*.
 lōci (M.), *passages in books*.
 lūdi, *public games*.
 nātāles, *descent, ancestry*.
 ōpērae, *day laborers*.
 ōpes, *wealth, resources*.
 partes, a *part in a play or a party in politics*.

plāgae, *snares*.
 rostra, *political platform or hustings*.
 sāles (M.), *witticisms, wit*.
 tabellae, *documents*.

The following nouns are wanting in some of the cases :—

(1) Nom., Dat., Voc. Sing. : —, ōpis, —, ōpem, —, ōpe, *help*; —, vīcis, —, vīcem, —, vīce, *change*.

(2) Nom., Gen., Voc. Sing. : —, —, prēcī, prēcēm, —, prēcē, *prayer*.

(3) Nom. and Voc. Sing. : —, dāpis, dāpi, dāpem, —, dāpe, *food*; —, frūgis, frūgi, frūgem, —, frūge, *fruit*.

(4) Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plural : Most nouns of the fifth declension, except spēs, *hope*, and rēs, a *thing*. So also far, *corn*; mel, *honey*; fel, *bile*; pūs, *matter of a wound*; rus, *the country*; tus, *incense*.

(5) Genitive plural : many monosyllables : *Nex, murder* ; *pax, peace* ; *pix, pitch* ; *cor, heart* ; *cos, a whetstone* ; *ros, dew* ; *sal, salt* ; *sol, the sun* ; *lux, light*.

HETEROCLITIC NOUNS.

Some nouns have two or more forms of declension. Thus :

Cölus (F.), *a distaff*, and many names of plants and trees are of the second ; but they may have those forms that end in *-us* of the fourth decl. also.

Iūgërum (N.), *an acre*, is of the second declension in the singular, but of the third in the plural.

Vas (N.), *a vessel* (Gen., *vāsis*), is of the third declension in the singular and of the second in the plural.

Festivals in *-alia* (as *Bacchanālia*) are neuter plurals of the third declension, but have the genitive plural in *-ōrum*, not in *-ium*.

Ancile (N.), *a shield*, is of the third (like *māre, the sea*) ; but the genitive plural is *-ōrum*, instead of *-ium*.

Rēquies (F.), Gen. *rēquētis*, *rest*, is of the third, but has *rēquiem* and *rēquē* of the fifth.

Fāmes (F.), Gen. *fāmīs*, is regularly of the third, but has *fāmē* of the fifth, not *fāmē* of the third.

For *dōmus* (F.), *a house*, see p. 238.

Many words have two forms, one belonging to one declension and another to another. Thus :

Luxuria (F.), *luxury* ; *mātēria* (F.), *matter, timber* ; *saevitia* (F.), *cruelty*, are of the first ; while *luxuries* (F.), *mātēries* (F.), *saevities* (F.), are of the fifth. So also, *eventus* (M.), *an event* ; *cōnātus* (M.), *an attempt*, are of the fourth ; while *eventum* (N.), and *cōnātum* (N.), are of the second.

Iuventus (F.), Gen. *iuventūtis*, *the youth of a country* ; *iūventas* (F.), Gen. *iuventātis*, *goddess of youth* ; *iūventa* (F.), *time of youth*.

Sēnectus (F.), Gen. *senectūtis*, *time of old age* has the poetical form *senecta* (F.) ; so *paupertas* (F.), Gen. *paupertatis*, *poverty* has the poetical *paupēries* (F.), Gen. *-ēi*.

HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

Some nouns have two different genders in the singular. Thus :

The following have one form in *-us*, masculine, and one form in *-um*, neuter : *Baltéus*, or *-um*, *a belt* ; *iugulus*, *-um*, *the throat* ; *clipeus*, *-um*, *a shield* ; *collus*, *-um*, *neck* ; *baculus*, *-um*, *a staff* ; *cubitus*, *-um*, *elbow*.

The following have a different gender in the singular and plural respectively :

Balnëum (N. sing.), *balneae* (F. pl.), *bath* ; *caelum* (N. sing.), *caeli* (M. pl.), *heavens* ; *carbásus* (F. sing.), *carbása* (N. pl.), *sail* ; *delicium* (N. sing.), *deliciae* (F. pl.), *d-light* ; *rastrum* (N. sing.), *rastri* (M. pl.), *harrows* ; *epulum* (N. sing.), *epulae* (F. pl.), *banquet* ; *frënum* (N. sing.), *bit*, *frëni* (M.) or *frëna* (N.) ; *locus* (M. sing.), *lôca* (N. pl.), *places* ; *lôcus* (M. sing.), *jest* ; *lôci* (M. pl.), or *lôca* (N. pl.).

VII.—ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Bonus, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bôn ūs	bôn ā	bôn um
<i>Gen.</i>	bôn ī	bôn ae	bôn ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bôn ō	bôn ae	bôn ō
<i>Acc.</i>	bôn um	bôn am	bôn um
<i>Voc.</i>	bôn ē	bôn ā	bôn um
<i>Abl.</i>	bôn ō	bôn ā	bôn ō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bôn ī	bôn ae	bôn ā
<i>Gen.</i>	bôn ōrum	bôn ārum	bôn ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bôn īs	bôn īs	bôn īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bôn ōs	bôn ās	bôn ā
<i>Voc.</i>	bôn ī	bôn ae	bôn ā
<i>Abl.</i>	bôn īs	bôn īs	bôn īs

Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger	aegr ā	aegr um
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegr ā	aegr um
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ā
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr is	aegr is	aegr is
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr ā
<i>Voc.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ā
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr is	aegr is	aegr is

Tener, tender.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	tēner	tēnēr ā	tēnēr um
<i>Gen.</i>	tēnēr ī	tēnēr ae	tēnēr ī
<i>Dat.</i>	tēnēr ō	tēnēr ae	tēnēr ō
<i>Acc.</i>	tēnēr um	tēnēr am	tēnēr um
<i>Voc.</i>	tēner	tēnēr ā	tēnēr um
<i>Abl.</i>	tēnēr ō	tēnēr ā	tēnēr ō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	tēnēr ī	tēnēr ae	tēnēr ā
<i>Gen.</i>	tēnēr ōrum	tēnēr ārum	tēnēr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	tēnēr is	tēnēr is	tēnēr is
<i>Acc.</i>	tēnēr ōs	tēnēr ās	tēnēr ā
<i>Voc.</i>	tēnēr ī	tēnēr ae	tēnēr ā
<i>Abl.</i>	tēnēr is	tēnēr is	tēnēr is

IRREGULAR¹ ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Unus, *one*.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūn ūs	ūn ā	ūn um
<i>Gen.</i>	ūn ius	ūn ius	ūn ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūn ī	ūn ī	ūn ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūn um	ūn am	ūn um
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ūn ō	ūn ā	ūn ō

Uter, *which of two?*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūter	ūtr ā	ūtr um
<i>Gen.</i>	ūtr ius	ūtr ius	ūtr ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūtr ī	ūtr ī	ūtr ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūtr um	ūtr am	ūtr um
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ūtr ō	ūtr ā	ūtr ō

Alius, *other*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	āli ūs	āli ā	āli ud
<i>Gen.</i>	āli ūs	āli ūs	āli ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	āli ī	āli ī	āli ī
<i>Acc.</i>	āli um	āli am	āli ud
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	āli ō	āli ā	āli ō

¹Nine adjectives are irregular: Alius, -a, -ud, *another*; nullus, -a, -um, *no one*; solus, *alone*; tōtus, *whole*; ullus, *any*; unus, *one*; alter, ēra, -erum, *the other*; uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)*; neuter, -tra, trum, *neither*. The genitive of alter is alterius; otherwise it is declined like uter. In each the plural is regular.

Mas.
Nom.
Gen.
Dat.
Acc.
Voc.
Abl.

¹ All a
ings in
lum. B
Compar
tion fro
gen. pl.

RST AND

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

(1) Of three terminations :—

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācēr	ācr īs	ācr ǝ
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr īs	ācr īs	ācr īs
<i>Dat.</i>	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācr ēm	ācr ēm	ācr ǝ
<i>Voc.</i>	ācēr	ācr īs	ācr ǝ
<i>Abl.</i>	ācr ī ¹	ācr ī	ācr ī

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr iā
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr iā
<i>Voc.</i>	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr iā
<i>Abl.</i>	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

(2) Of two terminations :—

Mitis, mild.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	mīt īs	mīt ǝ	<i>Nom.</i>	mīt ēs	mīt iā
<i>Gen.</i>	mīt īs	mīt īs	<i>Gen.</i>	mīt ium	mīt ium
<i>Dat.</i>	mīt ī	mīt ī	<i>Dat.</i>	mīt ibus	mīt ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīt ēm	mīt ǝ	<i>Acc.</i>	mīt ēs	mīt iā
<i>Voc.</i>	mīt īs	mīt ǝ	<i>Voc.</i>	mīt ēs	mīt iā
<i>Abl.</i>	mīt ī	mīt ī ¹	<i>Abl.</i>	mīt ibus	mīt ibus

¹ All adjectives of three endings in the nom. like *acer* and all adjectives of two endings in the nom. like *mitis* have abl. singular in *-ī*; nom. neut. pl. in *-ia*; gen. pl. in *-ium*. But comparatives and adjectives of one ending in nom. have abl. sing. in *-ī* or *e*. Comparatives have nom. pl. neuter in *-a*, gen. pl. in *-um*. Adjectives of one termination from nominative in *x* or *s* impure like *audax* or *oriens* have the nom. pl. in *-ia* and gen. pl. in *-ium*. Plus is the only comparative irregular in declension.

-um, no one; solus,
e other; uter, utra,
of alter is alterius;

Mitior, milder.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. mitiōr	mitius	Nom. mitiōr ēs	mitiōr ā
Gen. mitiōr is	mitiōr is	Gen. mitiōr um	mitiōr um
Dat. mitiōr i	mitiōr i	Dat. mitiōr ibus	mitiōr ibus
Acc. mitiōr em	mitius	Acc. mitiōr ēs	mitiōr ā
Voc. mitiōr	mitius	Voc. mitiōr ēs	mitiōr ā
Abl. mitiōr ē (-i)	mitiōr ē (-i)	Abl. mitiōr ibus	mitiōr ibus

Plus, more.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. —	plus	Nom. plūr ēs	plūr ā
Gen. —	plur is	Gen. plūr um	plūr um
Dat. —	—	Dat. plūr ibus	plūr ibus
Acc. —	plus	Acc. plūr ēs	plūr ā
Voc. —	—	Voc. plūr ēs	plūr ā
Abl. —	plur e	Abl. plūr ibus	plūr ibus

(3) Adjectives of one termination :—

Audax, bold.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. audax	audax	Nom. audāc ēs	audāc iā
Gen. audāc is	audāc is	Gen. audāc ium	audāc ium
Dat. audāc i	audāc i	Dat. audāc ibus	audāc ibus
Acc. audāc em	audax	Acc. audāc ēs	audāc iā
Voc. audax	audax	Voc. audāc ēs	audāc iā
Abl. audāc i (-ē)	audac i (-ē)	Abl. audāc ibus	audāc ibus

Felix, bold.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. fēlix	fēlix	Nom. fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
Gen.* fēlic is	fēlic is	Gen. fēlic ium	fēlic ium
Dat. fēlic i	fēlic i	Dat. fēlic ibus	fēlic ibus
Acc. fēlic em	fēlix	Acc. fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
Voc. fēlix	fēlix	Voc. fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
Abl. fēlic i (-ē)	fēlic i (-ē)	Abl. fēlic ibus	fēlic ibus

Vetus, *old*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> vētūs	vētūs
<i>Gen.</i> vētēr īs	vētēr īs
<i>Dat.</i> vētēr ī	vētēr ī
<i>Acc.</i> vētēr em	vētūs
<i>Voc.</i> vētūs	vētūs
<i>Abl.</i> vētēr ī (-ē)	vētēr ī (-ē)

PLURAL.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> vētēr ēs	vētēr ā
<i>Gen.</i> vētēr um	vētēr um
<i>Dat.</i> vētēr ībus	vētēr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> vētēr ēs	vētēr ā
<i>Voc.</i> vētēr ēs	vētēr ā
<i>Abl.</i> vētēr ībus	vētēr ībus

Oriens, *rising*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ōriens	ōriens
<i>Gen.</i> ōrient īs	ōrient īs
<i>Dat.</i> ōrient ī	ōrient ī
<i>Acc.</i> ōrient em	ōriens
<i>Voc.</i> ōriens	ōriens
<i>Abl.</i> ōrient ē (-ī)	ōrient ē (-ī)

PLURAL.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ōrient ēs	ōrient iā
<i>Gen.</i> ōrient ium	ōrient ium
<i>Dat.</i> ōrient ībus	ōrient ībus
<i>Acc.</i> ōrient ēs	ōrient iā
<i>Voc.</i> ōrient ēs	ōrient iā
<i>Abl.</i> ōrient ībus	ōrient ībus

VIII.—NUMERALS.

For the declension of unus, see p. 244.

Duo, *two*.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dūo	dū ae	dūo
<i>Gen.</i> dū ōrum	dū ārum	dū ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> dū ōbus	dū ābus	dū ōbus
<i>Acc.</i> dū ōs (duo)	dū ās	dūo
<i>Voc.</i> dūo	dū ae	dūo
<i>Abl.</i> dū ōbus	dū ābus	dū ōbus

Trēs, *three*.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> trēs	tr iā
<i>Gen.</i> tr ium	tr ium
<i>Dat.</i> tr ībus	tr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> trēs	tr iā
<i>Voc.</i> trēs	tr iā
<i>Abl.</i> tr ībus	tr ībus

Mille, *a thousand*.

In the singular indeclinable. In plural: *Nom.* and *Acc.* Millīa or milia; *Gen.* millium or milium; *Dat.* and *Abl.* millibus or milibus.

IX.—PRONOUNS.

(i) PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

Ego, I.		Tu, thou, you (sing.).	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs	<i>Nom.</i> tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i> mēi	nostrum, nostrī	<i>Gen.</i> tui	vestrum, vestrī
<i>Dat.</i> mīhi	nōbīs	<i>Dat.</i> tibi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	<i>Acc.</i> tē	vōs
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	<i>Voc.</i> tū	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	<i>Abl.</i> tē	vōbīs

Sui, of himself.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> Wanting	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i> sui	sui
<i>Dat.</i> sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i> sē	sē
<i>Voc.</i> Wanting	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i> sē	sē

(ii) DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Hic, this (near the speaker).

SINGULAR.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> hic	haec	hōc
<i>Gen.</i> huius	huius	huius
<i>Dat.</i> huic	huic	huic
<i>Acc.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc
<i>Abl.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> hi	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i> hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i> hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, *that* (near you).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	istĕ	istă	istud
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	isti	istae	istă
<i>Gen.</i>	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istōs	istās	istă
<i>Abl.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, *that* (near him, her, it).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	illĕ	illă	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illă	illō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	illī	illae	illă
<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illos	illās	illă
<i>Abl.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs

PRONOUNS.

you (sing.).

PLURAL.

vōs
vestrum, vestri
vōbīs
vōs
vōs
vōbīs

PRONOUNS.

Neut.

hōc
hūius
huic
hōc
hōc

haec
hōrum
his
haec
his

Is, he, this, that.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ēā	īd
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius
<i>Dat.</i>	ēī	ēī	ēī
<i>Acc.</i>	ēum	ēam	īd
<i>Abl.</i>	ēō	ēā	ēō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ēī (īi)	ēae	ēā
<i>Gen.</i>	ēōrum	ēārum	ēōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ēīs (īīs)	ēīs (īīs)	ēīs (īīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	ēōs	ēās	ēā
<i>Abl.</i>	ēīs (īīs)	ēīs (īīs)	ēīs (īīs)

Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	ēādem	īdem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	ēīdem	ēīdem	ēīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	ēundem	ēandem	īdem
<i>Abl.</i>	ēōdem	ēādem	ēōdem

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	{ ēīdem īīdem	ēaedem	ēādem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēōrundem	ēārundem	ēōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	{ ēīsdem īīsdem	{ ēīsdem īīsdem	{ ēīsdem īīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	ēosdem	ēasdem	ēādem
<i>Abl.</i>	{ ēīsdem īīsdem	{ ēīsdem īīsdem	{ ēīsdem īīsdem

Ipsē, self, himself.

SINGULAR.

<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Id</i>	<i>Nom.</i> ipsē	ipsā	ipsum
<i>ēius</i>	<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsū	ipsius
<i>ēi</i>	<i>Dat.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>id</i>	<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>ēō</i>	<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL.

<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>ēā</i>	<i>Nom.</i> ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
<i>ēōrum</i>	<i>Gen.</i> ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>ēis (īis)</i>	<i>Dat.</i> ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>ēā</i>	<i>Acc.</i> ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>ēis (īis)</i>	<i>Abl.</i> ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

(iii) RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, who.

SINGULAR.

<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Idem</i>	<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod
<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>ēidem</i>	<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui
<i>idem</i>	<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod
<i>ēōdem</i>	<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō

PLURAL.

<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>ēōrundem</i>	<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quae
<i>ēisdem</i>	<i>Gen.</i> quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>īisdem</i>	<i>Dat.</i> quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>ēādem</i>	<i>Acc.</i> quōs	quās	quae
<i>ēisdem</i>	<i>Abl.</i> quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>īisdem</i>			

(iv) INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quis, *who?*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus

X.—REGULAR VERBS.

<i>Principal Parts</i>	1. Conjugation:	āmo,	āmārē,	āmāvī,	āmātum.
	2. "	mōnēo,	mōnērē,	mōnūī,	mōnitum.
	3. "	rēgo,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectum.
	4. "	audīo,	audīrē,	audīvī,	auditum.

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. ām o	mōn ēo	rēg o	aud īo
2. ām ās	mōn ēs	rēg īs	aud īs
3. ām āt	mōn ēt	rēg īt	aud īt

PLURAL.

1. ām āmus	mōn ēmus	rēg īmus	aud īmus
2. ām ātis	mōn ētis	rēg ītis	aud ītis
3. ām ant	mōn ent	rēg unt	aud iunt

NS.

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

*Neut.*quid
cuius
cui
quid
quō

1. ām ābam	mōn ēbam	rēg ēbam	audī ēbam
2. ām ābās	mōn ēbās	rēg ēbās	audī ēbās
3. ām ābāt	mōn ēbāt	rēg ēbāt	audī ēbāt

PLURAL.

quae
quōrum
quibus
quae
quibus

1. ām ābāmus	mōn ēbāmus	rēg ēbāmus	audī ēbāmus
2. ām ābātis	mōn ēbātis	rēg ēbātis	audī ēbātis
3. ām ābant	mōn ēbant	rēg ēbant	audī ēbant

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. ām ābo	mōn ēbo	rēg am	audī am
2. ām ābis	mōn ēbis	rēg es	audī es
3. ām ābit	mōn ēbit	rēg et	audī et

PLURAL.

māvi, āmātum.
mōnūi, mōnītum.
exi, rectum.
udīvi, auditum.

1. ām ābimus	mōn ēbimus	rēg ēmus	audī ēmus
2. ām ābitis	mōn ēbitis	rēg etis	audī etis
3. ām ābunt	mōn ēbunt	rēg ent	audī ent

MOOD.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

aud io
aud is
aud it

1. āmāv ī	mōnū ī	rex ī	audiv ī
2. āmāv isti	mōnū isti	rex isti	audiv isti
3. āmāv it	mōnū it	rex it	audiv it

PLURAL.

aud imus
aud itis
aud iunt

1. āmāv imus	mōnū imus	rex imus	audiv imus
2. āmāv istis	mōnū istis	rex istis	audiv istis
3. {āmāv ērunt {āmāv ēre	{mōnū ērunt {mōnū ēre	{rex ērunt {rex ēre	{audiv ērunt {audiv ēre

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>āmāv ēram</i>	<i>mōnū ēram</i>	<i>rex ēram</i>	<i>audīv ēram</i>
2. <i>āmāv ērās</i>	<i>mōnū ērās</i>	<i>rex ērās</i>	<i>audīv ērās</i>
3. <i>āmāv ērāt</i>	<i>mōnū ērāt</i>	<i>rex ērāt</i>	<i>audīv ērāt</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>āmāv ērāmus</i>	<i>mōnū ērāmus</i>	<i>rex ērāmus</i>	<i>audīv ērāmus</i>
2. <i>āmāv ērātis</i>	<i>mōnū ērātis</i>	<i>rex ērātis</i>	<i>audīv ērātis</i>
3. <i>āmāv ērant</i>	<i>mōnū ērant</i>	<i>rex ērant</i>	<i>audīv ērant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>āmāv ēro</i>	<i>mōnū ēro</i>	<i>rex ēro</i>	<i>audīv ēro</i>
2. <i>āmāv ēris</i>	<i>mōnū ēris</i>	<i>rex ēris</i>	<i>audīv ēris</i>
3. <i>āmāv ērit</i>	<i>mōnū ērit</i>	<i>rex ērit</i>	<i>audīv ērit</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>āmāv ērimus</i>	<i>mōnū ērimus</i>	<i>rex ērimus</i>	<i>audīv ērimus</i>
2. <i>āmāv ēritis</i>	<i>mōnū ēritis</i>	<i>rex ēritis</i>	<i>audīv ēritis</i>
3. <i>āmāv ērint</i>	<i>mōnū ērint</i>	<i>rex ērint</i>	<i>audīv ērint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>ām em</i>	<i>mōn ēam</i>	<i>rēg am</i>	<i>audī am</i>
2. <i>ām ēs</i>	<i>mōn ēās</i>	<i>rēg ās</i>	<i>audī ās</i>
3. <i>ām ēt</i>	<i>mōn ēāt</i>	<i>rēg āt</i>	<i>audī āt</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>ām ēmus</i>	<i>mōn ēāmus</i>	<i>rēg āmus</i>	<i>audī āmus</i>
2. <i>ām ētis</i>	<i>mōn ēātis</i>	<i>rēg ātis</i>	<i>audī ātis</i>
3. <i>ām ent</i>	<i>mōn ēant</i>	<i>rēg ant</i>	<i>audī ant</i>

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR.

audiv ēram
audiv ērās
audiv ērāt

1. ām ārem	mōn ērem	rēg ērem	aud irem
2. ām ārēs	mōn ērēs	rēg ērēs	aud irēs
3. ām ārēt	mōn ērēt	rēg ērēt	aud irēt

PLURAL.

audiv ērāmus
audiv ērātis
audiv ērant

1. ām ārēmus	mōn ērēmus	rēg ērēmus	aud irēmus
2. ām ārētis	mōn ērētis	rēg ērētis	aud irētis
3. ām ārent	mōn ērent	rēg ērent	aud irent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

audiv ēro
audiv ēris
audiv ērit

1. āmāv ērim	mōnū ērim	rex ērim	audiv ērim
2. āmāv ēris	mōnū ēris	rex ēris	audiv ēris
3. āmāv ērit	mōnū ērit	rex ērit	audiv ērit

PLURAL.

audiv ērīmus
audiv ērītis
audiv ērint

1. āmāv ērīmus	mōnū ērīmus	rex ērīmus	audiv ērīmus
2. āmāv ērītis	mōnū ērītis	rex ērītis	audiv ērītis
3. āmāv ērint	mōnū ērint	rex ērint	audiv ērint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

audī am
audī ās
audī āt

1. āmāv issēm	mōnū issēm	rex issēm	audiv issēm
2. āmāv issēs	mōnū issēs	rex issēs	audiv issēs
3. āmāv issēt	mōnū issēt	rex issēt	audiv issēt

PLURAL.

audī āmus
audī ātis
audī ānt

1. āmāv issēmus	mōnū issēmus	rex issēmus	audiv issēmus
2. āmāv issētis	mōnū issētis	rex issētis	audiv issētis
3. āmāv issent	mōnū issent	rex issent	audiv issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm ă</i>	<i>môn ă</i>	<i>ręg ă</i>	<i>aud i</i>
PLURAL.			
2. <i>ăm âte</i>	<i>môn ête</i>	<i>ręg lte</i>	<i>aud lte</i>

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm âto,</i> <i>you shall love.</i>	<i>môn êto</i>	<i>ręg lto</i>	<i>aud lto</i>
3. <i>ăm âto,</i> <i>he shall love.</i>	<i>môn êto</i>	<i>ręg lto</i>	<i>aud lto</i>

PLURAL.

2. <i>ăm âtôte,</i> <i>you shall love.</i>	<i>môn êtôte</i>	<i>ręg ltôte</i>	<i>aud ltôte</i>
3. <i>ăm anto,</i> <i>they shall love.</i>	<i>môn ento</i>	<i>ręg unto</i>	<i>aud lunto</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>ămă re</i>	<i>mônē re</i>	<i>ręgē re</i>	<i>audī re</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>ămāv isse</i>	<i>mônū isse</i>	<i>rex isse</i>	<i>audīv isse</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ămă tūrus</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>mônī tūrus</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>rec tūrus</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>audī tūrus</i> <i>esse</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>ămă ns</i>	<i>mōne ns</i>	<i>ręg ens</i>	<i>audī ens</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ămă tūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um</i>	<i>mônī tūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um</i>	<i>rec tūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um</i>	<i>audī tūrus</i> <i>-a, -um</i>

SUPINE.

<i>ămă tum</i>	<i>mônī tum</i>	<i>rec tum</i>	<i>audī tum</i>
----------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> <i>ămă ndi</i>	<i>mone ndi</i>	<i>ręg endi</i>	<i>audī endi</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ămă ndo</i>	<i>mone ndo</i>	<i>ręg endo</i>	<i>audī endo</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ămă ndum</i>	<i>mone ndum</i>	<i>ręg endum</i>	<i>audī endum</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ămă ndo</i>	<i>mone ndo</i>	<i>ręg endo</i>	<i>audī endo</i>

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

aud i	1. amo r	mōnē or	rēg or	audi or
aud ite	2. {āmā ris āmā re	{mōnē ris mōnē re	{rēgē ris rēgē re	{audi ris audi re
	3. āmā tur	mōnē tur	rēgī tur	audi tur

PLURAL.

aud ito	1. āmā mur	mōnē mur	rēgī mur	audi mur
aud ito	2. āmā mīni	mōnē mīni	rēgī mīni	audi mīni
	3. āmā ntur	mōne ntur	rēgu ntur	audi untur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

aud itōte	1. āmā bar	mōnē bar	rēgē bar	audi ēbar
aud iunto	2. {āmā bāris āmā bāre	{mōnē bāris mōnē bāre	{rēgē bāris rēgē bāre	{audi ēbāris audi ēbāre
audi re	3. āmā bātur	mōnē bātur	rēgē bātur	audi ēbātur

PLURAL.

audi re audi visse audi tūrus esse	1. āmā bāmur	mōnē bāmur	rēgē bāmur	audi ēbāmur
	2. āmā bāmīni	mōnē bāmīni	rēgē bāmīni	audi ēbāmīni
	3. āmā bantur	mōnē bantur	rēgē bantur	audi ēbantur

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

audi ens audi tūrus -a, -um	1. āmā bor	mōnē bor	rēgā r	audiā r
audi tum	2. {āmā bēris āmā bēre	{mōnē bēris mōnē bēre	{rēgē ris rēgē re	{audiē ris audiē re
	3. āmā bitur	mōnē bitur	rēgē tur	audiē tur

PLURAL.

audi endi audi endo audi endum audi endo	1. āmā bīmur	mōnē bīmur	rēgē mur	audiē mur
	2. āmā bīmīni	mōnē bīmīni	rēgē mīni	audiē mīni
	3. āmā buntur	mōnē buntur	rēge ntur	audiē ntur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>ămă tus sum</i>	<i>mōnī tus sum</i>	<i>rec tus sum</i>	<i>audi tus sum</i>
2. <i>ămă tus ēs</i>	<i>mōnī tus ēs</i>	<i>rec tus ēs</i>	<i>audi tus ēs</i>
3. <i>ămă tus est</i>	<i>mōnī tus est</i>	<i>rec tus est</i>	<i>audi tus est</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>ămă tī sūmus</i>	<i>mōnī tī sūmus</i>	<i>rec tī sūmus</i>	<i>audi tī sūmus</i>
2. <i>ămă tī estis</i>	<i>mōnī tī estis</i>	<i>rec tī estis</i>	<i>audi tī estis</i>
3. <i>ămă tī sunt</i>	<i>mōnī tī sunt</i>	<i>rec tī sunt</i>	<i>audi tī sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>ămă tus eram</i>	<i>mōnī tus eram</i>	<i>rec tus eram</i>	<i>audi tus eram</i>
2. <i>ămă tus erās</i>	<i>mōnī tus erās</i>	<i>rec tus erās</i>	<i>audi tus erās</i>
3. <i>ămă tus erat</i>	<i>mōnī tus erat</i>	<i>rec tus erat</i>	<i>audi tus erat</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>ămă tī erāmus</i>	<i>mōnī tī erāmus</i>	<i>rec tī erāmus</i>	<i>audi tī erāmus</i>
2. <i>ămă tī erātis</i>	<i>mōnī tī erātis</i>	<i>rec tī erātis</i>	<i>audi tī erātis</i>
3. <i>ămă tī erant</i>	<i>mōnī tī erant</i>	<i>rec tī erant</i>	<i>audi tī erant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>ămă tus ero</i>	<i>mōnī tus ero</i>	<i>rec tus ero</i>	<i>audi tus ero</i>
2. <i>ămă tus eris</i>	<i>mōnī tus eris</i>	<i>rec tus eris</i>	<i>audi tus eris</i>
3. <i>ămă tus erit</i>	<i>mōnī tus erit</i>	<i>rec tus erit</i>	<i>audi tus erit</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>ămă tī erīmus</i>	<i>mōnī tī erīmus</i>	<i>rec tī erīmus</i>	<i>audi tī erīmus</i>
2. <i>ămă tī eritis</i>	<i>mōnī tī eritis</i>	<i>rec tī eritis</i>	<i>audi tī eritis</i>
3. <i>ămă tī erunt</i>	<i>mōnī tī erunt</i>	<i>rec tī erunt</i>	<i>audi tī erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>ăm ăr</i>	<i>mōnē ăr</i>	<i>reg ăr</i>	<i>audi ăr</i>
2. <i>ăm ăris</i>	<i>mōnē ăris</i>	<i>reg ăris</i>	<i>audi ăris</i>
3. <i>ăm ăre</i>	<i>mōnē ăre</i>	<i>reg ăre</i>	<i>audi ăre</i>
3. <i>ăm ătur</i>	<i>mōnē ătur</i>	<i>reg ătur</i>	<i>audi ătur</i>

PLURAL.

1. ăm ămur	măně ămur	rěg ămur	audi ămur
2. ăm ămîni	măně ămîni	rěg ămîni	audi ămîni
3. ăm entur	măně antur	rěg antur	audi antur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. ămă rer	măně rer	rěg rer	audi rer
2. { ămă rēris	{ măně rēris	{ rěg rēris	{ audi rēris
{ ămă rēre	{ măně rēre	{ rěg rēre	{ audi rēre
3. ămă rētur	măně rētur	rěg rētur	audi rētur

PLURAL.

1. ămă rēmur	măně rēmur	rěg rēmur	audi rēmur
2. ămă rēmîni	măně rēmîni	rěg rēmîni	audi rēmîni
3. ămă rentur	măně rentur	rěg rentur	audi rentur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. ămă tus sim	măně tus sim	rec tus sim	audi tus sim
2. ămă tus sis	măně tus sis	rec tus sis	audi tus sis
3. ămă tus sit	măně tus sit	rec tus sit	audi tus sit

PLURAL.

1. ămă tī simus	măně tī simus	rec tī simus	audi tī simus
2. ămă tī sitis	măně tī sitis	rec tī sitis	audi tī sitis
3. ămă tī sint	măně tī sint	rec tī sint	audi tī sint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. ămă tus essem	măně tus essem	rec tus essem	audi tus essem
2. ămă tus essēs	măně tus essēs	rec tus essēs	audi tus essēs
3. ămă tus esset	măně tus esset	rec tus esset	audi tus esset

PLURAL.

1. ămă tī essēmus	măně tī essēmus	rec tī essēmus	audi tī essēmus
2. ămă tī essētis	măně tī essētis	rec tī essētis	audi tī essētis
3. ămă tī essent	măně tī essent	rec tī essent	audi tī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm âre</i>	<i>môn êre</i>	<i>ręg êrě</i>	<i>aud ire</i>
------------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

PLURAL.

2. <i>ăm âmîni</i>	<i>môn êmîni</i>	<i>ręg îmîni</i>	<i>aud îmîni</i>
--------------------	------------------	------------------	------------------

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm âtor,</i> <i>you shall be loved.</i>	<i>môn êtor</i>	<i>ręg îtor</i>	<i>aud itor</i>
3. <i>ăm âtor,</i> <i>he shall be loved.</i>	<i>môn êtor</i>	<i>ręg îtor</i>	<i>aud itor</i>

PLURAL.

3. <i>ăm antor,</i> <i>they shall be loved.</i>	<i>môn entor</i>	<i>ręg untor</i>	<i>aud iuntor</i>
--	------------------	------------------	-------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. ăm âri</i>	<i>môn êri</i>	<i>ręg i</i>	<i>audî ri</i>
<i>Perf. ămă tus esse</i>	<i>mônî tus esse</i>	<i>rec tus esse</i>	<i>audi tus esse</i>
<i>Fut. ămă tum iri</i>	<i>mônî tum iri</i>	<i>rec tum iri</i>	<i>audî tum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf. ămă tus</i>	<i>mônî tus</i>	<i>rec tus</i>	<i>audî tus</i>
<i>Fut. ăm andus</i>	<i>môn endus</i>	<i>reg endus</i>	<i>audî endus</i>

SUPINE.

<i>ămă tû</i>	<i>mônî tû</i>	<i>rec tû</i>	<i>audî tû</i>
---------------	----------------	---------------	----------------

XI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

Sum, I am. Possum, I am able, I can. Prosum, I help, I benefit.

<i>Principal parts</i>	<i>sum,</i>	<i>fûi,</i>	<i>esse.</i>
	<i>possum,</i>	<i>pôtûi,</i>	<i>posse.</i>
	<i>prosum,</i>	<i>profûi,</i>	<i>prodesse.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. sum	possum	prōsum
2. es	pōtes	prōdes
3. est	pōtest	prōdest

PLURAL.

1. sūmus	possūmus	prōsūmus
2. estis	pōtestis	prōdestis
3. sunt	possunt	prōsunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. eram	pōteram	prōderam
2. eras	pōteras	prōderas
3. erat	pōterat	prōderat

PLURAL.

1. erāmus	pōtērāmus	prōdērāmus
2. erātis	pōtērātis	prōdērātis
3. erant	pōtērant	prōdērant

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. ero	pōtēro	prōdēro
2. eris	pōtēris	prōdēris
3. erit	pōtērit	prōdērit

PLURAL.

1. erīmus	pōtērīmus	prōdērīmus
2. erītis	pōtērītis	prōdērītis
3. erunt	pōtērunt	prōdērunt

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fūi	pōtūi	prōfūi
2. fūisti	pōtūisti	prōfūisti
3. fūit	pōtūit	prōfūit

PLURAL.

1. fūimus	pōtūimus	prōfūimus
2. fūistis	pōtūistis	prōfūistis
3. { fūerunt	{ pōtūerunt	{ prōfūerunt
{ fūere	{ pōtūere	{ prōfūere

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fūeram	pōtūeram	prōfūeram
2. fūerās	pōtūerās	prōfūerās
3. fūerat	pōtūerat	prōfūerat

PLURAL.

1. fūeramus	pōtūerāmus	prōfūerāmus
2. fūerātis	pōtūerātis	prōfūerātis
3. fūerant	pōtūerant	prōfūerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fūero	pōtūero	prōfūero
2. fūeris	pōtūeris	prōfūeris
3. fūerit	pōtūerit	prōfūerit

PLURAL.

1. fūerimus	pōtūerimus	prōfūerimus
2. fūeritis	pōtūeritis	prōfūeritis
3. fūerint	pōtūerint	prōfūerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. sim	possim	prōsim
2. sis	possis	prōsis
3. sit	possit	prōsit

PLURAL.

1. simus	possimus	prōsimus
2. sitis	possitis	prōsitis
3. sint	possint	prōsint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. essem	possem	prodessem
2. essēs	possēs	prodessēs
3. esset	posset	prodesset

PLURAL.

1. essēmus	possēmus	prodessēmus
2. essētis	possētis	prodessētis
3. essent	possent	prodessent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fūerim	pōtūerim	prōfūerim
2. fūeris	pōtūeris	prōfūeris
3. fūerit	pōtūerit	prōfūerit

PLURAL.

1. fūerimus	pōtūerimus	prōfūerimus
2. fūeritis	pōtūeritis	prōfūeritis
3. fūerint	pōtūerint	prōfūerint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fūissem	pōtūissem	prōfūissem
2. fūissēs	pōtūissēs	prōfūissēs
3. fūisset	pōtūisset	prōfūisset

PLURAL.

1. fūissēmus	pōtūissēmus	prōfūissēmus
2. fūissētis	pōtūissētis	prōfūissētis
3. fūissent	pōtūissent	prōfūissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. ēs	None.	prōdes
-------	-------	--------

PLURAL.

2. estē	None.	prōdestē
---------	-------	----------

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. esto, <i>thou shall be.</i>	None.	prōdesto
3. esto, <i>he shall be.</i>	None.	prōdesto

PLURAL.

2. estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>	None.	prōdestōte
3. suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>	None.	prōsuntō

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	esse	posse	prōdesse
<i>Perfect.</i>	fuisse	pōtuisse	prōfuisse
<i>Future.</i>	fūturus esse	—	prōfūturus esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	—	pōtens	—
<i>Future.</i>	fūturus, -a, -um	—	prōfūturus, -a, -um

Defective Verbs.

mēmīnī,	mēmīnisse,	<i>I remember.</i>
coepī,	coepisse,	<i>I begin, or I began.</i>
ōdī,	ōdisse,	<i>I hate.</i>
nōvī,	nōvisse,	<i>I know.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	mēmīnī, -isti, etc.	coepī	ōdī	nōvī
<i>Pluperf.</i>	mēmīnēram, -ēras, etc.	coepēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	mēmīnēro, -ēris, etc.	coepēro	ōdēro	nōvēro

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	mēmīnērim, -ēris	coepērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	mēmīnissem, -issēs	coepissem	ōdissem	nōvissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Future.</i>	2. Sing. memento	Wanting.	Wanting.	Wanting.
	2. Plu. mementōte	"	"	"

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	mēmīnisse	coepisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
<i>Future.</i>	Wanting.	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	Wanting.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	} Wanting.	coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
<i>Pass.</i>				
<i>Fut.</i>	} Wanting.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus	Wanting.
<i>Act.</i>				

Irregular Verbs—VŌLO, NŌLO, MĀLO.

<i>Principal Parts</i>	vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, <i>I will, I wish, I am willing.</i>
	nŏlo, nolle, nŏlŭi, <i>I am unwilling.</i>
	mālo, malle, mālŭi, <i>I prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. vŏlo	nŏlo	mālo
2. vis	nŏn vis	māvis
3. vult	nŏn vult	māvult

PLURAL.

1. vŏlŭmus	nŏlŭmus	mālŭmus
2. vultis	nŏn vultis	māvultis
3. vŏlunt	nŏlunt	mālunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vŏlēbam	nŏlēbam	mālēbam
2. vŏlēbas	nŏlēbas	mālēbas
3. vŏlēbat	nŏlēbat	mālēbat

PLURAL.

1. vŏlēbāmus	nŏlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2. vŏlēbātis	nŏlēbātis	mālēbātis
3. vŏlēbant	nŏlēbant	mālēbant

FUTURE

SINGULAR.

1. vōlam
2. vōlēs
3. vōlet

nōlam
nōlēs
nōlet

mālam
mālēs
mālet

PLURAL.

1. vōlēmus
2. vōlētis
3. vōlent

nōlēmus
nōlētis
nōlent

mālēmūs
mālētis
mālent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vōlūi
2. vōlūistī
3. vōlūit

nōlūi
nōlūistī
nōlūit

mālūi
mālūistī
mālūit

PLURAL.

1. vōlūīmus
2. vōlūīstis
3. { vōlūērunt
vōlūēre

nōlūīmus
nōlūīstis
{ nōlūērunt
nōlūēre

mālūīmus
mālūīstis
{ mālūērunt
mālūēre

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vōlūēram
2. vōlūērās
3. vōlūērat

nōlūēram
nōlūērās
nōlūērat

mālūēram
mālūērās
mālūērat

PLURAL.

1. vōlūērāmus
2. vōlūērātis
3. vōlūērāt

nōlūērāmus
nōlūērātis
nōlūērāt

mālūērāmus
mālūērātis
mālūērāt

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vōlūēro
2. vōlūēris
3. vōlūērit

nōlūēro
nōlūēris
nōlūērit

mālūēro
mālūēris
mālūērit

PLURAL.

1. vōlūērīmus	nōlūērīmus	mālūērīmus
2. vōlūērītis	nōlūērītis	mālūērītis
3. vōlūērīnt	nōlūērīnt	mālūērīnt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. vēlim	nōlim	mālim
2. vēlis	nōlis	mālis
3. vēlit	nōlit	mālit

PLURAL.

1. vēlimus	nōlimus	mālimus
2. vēlītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3. vēlint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vellem	nollem	mallem
2. vellēs	nollēs	mallēs
3. vellet	nollet	mallet

PLURAL.

1. vellēmus	nollēmus	mallēmus
2. vellētis	nollētis	mallētis
3. vellent	nollent	mallent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. vōlūērim	nōlūērim	mālūērim
2. vōlūēris	nōlūēris	mālūēris
3. vōlūērit	nōlūērit	mālūērit

PLURAL.

1. vōlūērīmus	nōlūērīmus	mālūērīmus
2. vōlūērītis	nōlūērītis	mālūērītis
3. vōlūērīnt	nōlūērīnt	mālūērīnt

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. völäüissem	nöläüissem	mäläüissem
2. völäüissēs	nöläüissēs	mäläüissēs
3. völäüisset	nöläüisset	mäläüisset

PLURAL.

1. völäüissēmus	nöläüissēmus	mäläüissēmus
2. völäüissētis	nöläüissētis	mäläüissētis
3. völäüissent	nöläüissent	mäläüissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. None.	nōli	None.
----------	------	-------

PLURAL.

2. None.	nōlite	None.
----------	--------	-------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> velle	nolle	malle
<i>Perfect.</i> völäüisse	nöläüisse	mäläüisse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> völäns (used as an adj. = <i>willing</i> .)	nöläns (used as an adj. = <i>unwilling</i> .)	None.
--	--	-------

Fero, *I carry.**Principal Parts*—Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

PASSIVE.

SUBJ.

<i>Singular.</i>			
1. fēro	fēram	fēror	fērār
2. fers	fēras	{ ferris ferre	{ fērāris fērāre
3. fert	fērat	fertur	fērātur

Plural.

1. fērīmus	fērāmus	fērīmur	fērāmur
2. fertis	fērātis	fērīminī	fērāminī
3. fērunt	fērant	fēruntur	fērantur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

Singular.

1. fērēbam	ferrem	fērēbar	ferrer
2. fērēbās	ferrēs	fērēbāris	ferrēris
		fērēbāre	ferrēre
3. fērēbat	ferret	fērēbātur	ferrētur

Plural.

1. fērēbāmus	ferrēmus	fērēbāmur	ferrēmur
2. fērēbātis	ferrētis	fērēbāminī	ferrēmīnī
3. fērēbant	ferrent	fērēbantur	ferrentur

PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

Singular.

1. tūlī	tūlērim	lātus sum	lātus sim
2. tūlisti	tūlēris	lātus ēs	lātus sis
3. tūlit	tūlērit	lātus est	lātus sit

Plural.

1. tūlīmus	tūlērimus	lātī sūmus	lātī sīmus
2. tūlistis	tūlēritis	lātī estis	lātī sītis
3. tūlērunt	tūlērint	lātī sunt	lātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

Singular.

1. tūlēram	tūlissem	lātus ēram	lātus essem
2. tūlērās	tūlissēs	lātus ērās	lātus essēs
3. tūlērat	tūlisset	lātus ērat	lātus esset

Plural.

1. tūlērāmus	tūlissēmus	lāti ērāmus	lāti essēmus
2. tūlērātis	tūlissētis	lāti ērātis	lāti essētis
3. tūlērānt	tūlissent	lāti ērant	lāti essent

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

Singular.

1. fēram	None.	fērār	None.
2. fērēs		fērēris	
3. fēret		fērēre	
		fērētur	

Plural.

1. fērēmus	None.	fērēmur	None.
2. fērētis		fērēmīni	
3. fērent		fērentur	

FUTURE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

Singular.

1. tūlēro	None.	lātus ēro	None.
2. tūlēris		lātus ēris	
3. tūlērit		lātus ērit	

Plural.

1. tūlērīmus	None.	lāti ērīmus	None.
2. tūlērītis		lāti ērītis	
3. tūlērīnt		lāti ērunt	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

2. fer

Singular.

ferre

2. ferte

Plural.

fērīmīni

1. fio
2. fis
3. fit

1. fīmo
2. fītis
3. fīunt

lāti essēmus
lāti essētis
lāti essent

E.

SUBJ.

None.

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.

Singular.

2. *ferto, you shall carry.*
3. *ferto, he shall carry.*

PASSIVE.

fertor
fertor

Plural.

2. *fertōte, ye shall carry.*
3. *fērunto, they shall carry.*

Wanting.
fēruntor

INFINITIVE.

ACTIVE.

Present. *ferre*
Perfect. *tūlissee*
Future. *lātūrus, a, um, esse*

PASSIVE.

ferri
lātus esse
lātum iri

None.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. *fērens*
Perfect. *Wanting.*
Future. *lātūrus, -a, -um*

Wanting.
lātus, -a, -um
fērendus, -a, -um

E.

SUBJ.

None.

SUPINE.

Active. *lātum.**Passive.* *lātū.**Fio, I become.**Principal Parts—Fio, fieri, factus sum.*

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>fio</i> | <i>fiam</i> | <i>factus sum</i> | <i>factus sim</i> |
| 2. <i>fis</i> | <i>fiās</i> | <i>factus es</i> | <i>factus sis</i> |
| 3. <i>fit</i> | <i>fiat</i> | <i>factus est</i> | <i>factus sit</i> |

Plural.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>fīmus</i> | <i>fiāmus</i> | <i>facti sūmus</i> | <i>facti sīmus</i> |
| 2. <i>fitis</i> | <i>fiātis</i> | <i>facti estis</i> | <i>facti sitis</i> |
| 3. <i>fiunt</i> | <i>fiant</i> | <i>facti sunt</i> | <i>facti sint</i> |

VE.

ni

IMPERFECT.

INDIC. SUBJ.

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1. fiēbam | fiērem |
| 2. fiēbās | fiērēs |
| 3. fiebat | fiēret |

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1. fiēbāmus | fiērēmus |
| 2. fiēbātis | fiērētis |
| 3. fiēbant | fiērent |

PLUPERFECT.

INDIC. SUBJ.

Singular.

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| factus ēram | factus essem |
| factus ērās | factus essēs |
| factus ērat | factus esset |

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| facti ērāmus | facti essēmus |
| facti ērātis | facti essētis |
| facti erant | facti essent |

FUTURE.

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. fiam | None. |
| 2. fiēs | |
| 3. fiet | |

- | |
|-----------|
| 1. fiēmus |
| 2. fiētis |
| 3. fient |

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular.

- | | |
|-------------|-------|
| factus ēro | None. |
| factus ēris | |
| factus ērit | |

Plural.

- | |
|--------------|
| facti ērīmus |
| facti ēritis |
| facti ērunt. |

IMPERATIVE.

fi

fite

INFINITIVE.

Present. fiērī*Perfect.* factus esse*Future.* factum irī

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. factus, -a, -um*Future.* faciendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

factū

FECT.

SUBJ.

factus essem
factus essēs
factus esset

facti essēmus
facti essētis
facti essent

FECT.

None.

factum iri

us, -a, -um

Eo, I go.

Principal Parts—Eo, ire, ivi or ii, itum.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		<i>Singular.</i>	
1. eo	eam	ivi or ii	ivērim or iērim
2. is	ēas	ivisti or iisti	ivēris or iēris
3. it	eat	ivit or iit	ivērit or iērit
		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. imus	eamus	ivimus or imus	ivērimus or iērimus
2. itis	eatīs	ivistis or iistis	ivēritis or iēritis
3. eunt	ēant	ivērunt or iērunt ivēre or iēre	ivērint or iērint

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		<i>Singular.</i>	
1. ibam	irem	ivēram or iēram	ivissem or iissem
2. ibās	irēs	ivērās or iērās	ivissēs or iissēs
3. ibat	iret	ivērat or iērat	ivisset or iisset
		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. ibāmus	irēmus	ivērāmus or iērāmus	ivissēmus or iissēmus
2. ibātis	irētis	ivērātis or iērātis	ivissētis or iissētis
3. ibant	irent	ivērant or iērant	ivissent or iissent

FUTURE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		<i>Singular.</i>	
1. ibo	None.	ivēro or iēro	None.
2. ibis		ivēris or iēris	
3. ibit		ivērit or iērit	
		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. ibimus		ivērimus or iērimus	
2. ibitis		ivēritis or iēritis	
3. ibunt		ivērint or iērint	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.

2. ī

2. īto

3. īto

Plural.

2. īte

2. ītōte

3. ēunto

FUTURE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Ire*Perf.* ivisse or iisse*Fut.* itūrus, -a, -um, esse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Act. iens (gen. ēuntis)*Fut. Act.* itūrus, -a, -um*Fut. Pass.* ēundus, -a, -um

SUPINES.

Active. Itum.*Passive.* ItūEdo, *I eat.**Principal Parts*—Edo, ēdēre, ēdī, ēsum.

PRESENT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

- | | |
|------------------|--------|
| 1. ēdo | ēdam |
| 2. ēdis, ēs | ēdās |
| 3. ēdit, est | ēdat |
| 1. ēdīmus | ēdāmus |
| 2. ēdītis, estis | ēdātis |
| 3. ēdunt | ēdant |

Singular.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| ēdī | ēdērim |
| ēdisti | ēdēris |
| ēdit | ēdērit |
| ēdīmus | ēdērimus |
| ēdistis | ēdēritis |
| ēdērunt | ēdērint |
| ēdēre | |

Plural.

IMPERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 1. ēdēbam | ēdērem or essem |
| 2. ēdēbās | ēdērēs or essēs |
| 3. ēdēbat | ēdēret or esset |
| 1. ēdēbāmus | ēdērēmus or essēmus |
| 2. ēdēbātis | ēdērētis or essētis |
| 3. ēdēbant | ēdērent or essent |

Plural.

PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| ēdēram | ēdissem |
| ēdērās | ēdissēs |
| ēdērat | ēdisset |
| ēdērāmus | ēdissēmus |
| ēdērātis | ēdissētis |
| ēdērant | ēdisSENT |

FUTURE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

Singular.

1. ēdam

None.

ēdēro

None.

2. ēdēs

ēdēris

3. ēdet

ēdērit

Plural.

1. ēdēmus

None.

ēdērīmus

None.

2. ēdētis

ēdērītis

3. ēdent

ēdērīnt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

Plural.

2. ēdē

ēdīte

FUTURE.

Singular.

Plural.

2. ēdīto

ēdītōte

3. ēdīto

ēdūnto

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. ēdēre or esse

Pres. ēdens

Perf. ēdisse

Fut. ēsūrus, a, um

Fut. ēsūrus, a, um, esse

Aio, I say, or I affirm.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. āio,

āis,

āit,

—

—

āiunt

Impf. āiēbam,

āiēbās,

āiēbat,

āiēbāmus,

āiēbātis,

āiēbant

Perf. —

—

āit

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. —

—

āiat

—

—

āiant

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. āiens

RULES OF SYNTAX.

ACCUSATIVE.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative : as, *Puella rosam laudat*, *The girl praises the rose.*

2. Many verbs that are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, especially verbs of *emotion, taste and smell* : as, *Sequani Ariovisti crudelitatem horrebant*, *The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.* *Haec oratio antiquitatem olet*, *This speech stinks of antiquity.* *Piscis mare sapit*, *The fish tastes of the sea.*

3. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming, regarding and showing*, take two accusatives in the active : as, *Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit*, *The Roman people elected Cicero consul.* Here *Ciceronem* is the direct object and *consulem* is a part of the predicate, and is called the *predicate accusative*.

In the passive these verbs take two nominatives : the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative : as, *Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est*, *Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people.*

4. Verbs of *asking*,¹ *teaching*, and *concealing*, take two accusatives in the active, one of the person and another of the thing : as, *Pater filium musicam docuit*, *The father taught his son music.*

In the passive the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained : as, *Filius musicam a patre doctus est*, *The son was taught music by his father.*

5. Many verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred origin or meaning (*cognate accusative*) : as, *Turpissimam vitam vivit*, *He lives a very base life.* *Mirum somnium somniavit*, *He dreamed a wonderful dream.* *Proelium pugnat*, *He fights a battle.*

¹*Peto*, *I ask*, and *postulo*, *I demand*, take the accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with *a* or *ab*, *from* : as, *Pacem a Romanis petiverunt*, *They asked peace from the Romans*, or *They asked the Romans for peace.* *Librum ab amicis postulavit*, *He demanded a book from his friends.* *Quaero*, *I ask*, takes an accusative of the thing and an ablative of the person with *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*), *de* : as, *Causam e viro quaesivit*, *He asked a reason from the man* (or, *He asked the man for a reason*).

6. The accusative neuter of a pronoun or of a numeral adjective, is sometimes joined to an intransitive verb to denote, not the proper object, but the compass and extent of the action : as, *Idem gloriatur, He makes the same boast. Id lætor, I rejoice at this.*

7. Many intransitive verbs, especially those that express motion, compounded with the prepositions *ad (to), circum (around), per (through), præter (past), trans (across), or super (above)*, take an accusative after them : as, *Cato rostra advolat, Cato flies to the hustings.* The accusative depends on the preposition and the sentence might be written, *Cato ad rostra volat.*

8. Transitive verbs compounded with *trans (transduco, transporto, traicio)* may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb, and the other on the preposition : as, *Hannibal copias Ibærum traduxit, Hannibal led his forces across the Iberus.* This might also be expressed, *Hannibal copias trans Iberum duxit, or Hannibal copias trans Iberum traduxit.* In the passive the direct object of the verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active becomes the ablative of agent with *a* or *ab* : as, *Ab Hannibale copiae Iberum tractæ sunt, His forces were led across the Iberus by Hannibal.*

9. An adjective or a verb may take an accusative to define its meaning : as, *Puer caput vulneratur, The boy is wounded in the head. Imperator dextram manum ictus est, The general was struck on the right hand. Ille est patri vultum similis, He is like his father in face.* This is called the *accusative of specification* or *nearer definition.*

10. The accusative is used in exclamations with or without an interjection : as, *Me miserum, O wretched me! O malam fortunam, What evil fortune!*

DATIVE.

1. The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative : as, *Puer epistolam puellæ donat, The boy gives the girl a letter (a letter to the girl).*

2. Adjectives implying *nearness, likeness, fitness, kindness*, or the opposite idea, take a dative : as, *Urbs propinqua flumini est, The city is near a river. Canis similis lupo est, A dog is like a wolf.*

Castris idoneus locus est, The place is suitable for a camp. Erat vir mihi amicitissimus, He was a man very friendly to me. Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every time of life.

3. The dative is used in Latin with many verbs that in English have a direct object. This is most common with verbs signifying *to please, favor, trust, assist* and their opposites; also *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, be angry*: as, *Res omnibus placuit, The affair pleased all. Fortuna fortibus favet, Fortune favors the brave. Pareat legibus consul, As consul he obeys the laws. Tibi irascor, I am angry with you.*¹

4. A verb that governs a dative in the active can only be used impersonally in the passive: as, *Tibi imperatur, You are commanded* (literally, *It is commanded to you*). *Mihi creditur, I am believed* (Do not say *Imperaris* or *credor*).

5. Verbs compounded with *bene, male*, and *satis*, govern a dative: as, *Optimo viro male dixit, He reviled a most excellent man. Mihi nunquam satisfacit, He never satisfied me.*

6. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, con* (for *cum*), *in, inter, ob* (*on, against*), *post, prae* (*before*), *sub* (*under*), or *super* (*above*), often govern the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect: as, *Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit, The Roman people made war on the Gauls.*

In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, and the indirect object is retained: as, *Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illatum est, War was made on the Gauls by the Roman people.*

7. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-named prepositions often take a dative: as, *Caesar exercitui praeerat, Caesar*

¹The chief verbs that govern a dative are: *Placeo* (please), *displaceo* (displease), *libet* (it pleases), *faveo* (favor), *fido* and *confido* (trust: dat. of person but abl. of thing), *resisto* (resist), *obsto* (stand in the way of), *credo* (trust, with dat. of person and accusative of thing; in sense of believe, dat. of person), *persuadeo* (persuade), *suadeo* (recommend), *impero* (command), *mando* (entrust), *obedio* (obey), *pareo* (obey), *repugno* (oppose), *obsisto* (meet), *occurro* (meet), *nubo* (wed, said of a woman; properly to veil one's self for), *servio* (be a slave to), *minor* (threaten: dat. of person and acc. of thing, or acc. of person and abl. of thing), *parco* (spare), *ignosco* (pardon). Exceptions:—*Iuvo, adiuvo* (help), *delecto* (delight), *laedo, offendo* (harm), *iubeo* (order), *veto* and *prohibeo* (forbid), *rego, guberno* (rule, direct), govern the accusative.

commanded the army. Consulis consillis obstat, *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

8. The dative is used with the verb *sum*, *I am*, to express possession : as, *Mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally, *There is a book to me*).

9. The compounds of *sum* (except *possum*, *I can*) govern the dative : as, *Tibi adsum*, *I aid you*. *Amicis prodest*, *He helps his friends*.

10. *Opus est*, and *usus est* (*there is need*), are generally used impersonally with the dative of the person to whom there is need, and the ablative of the thing needed : as, *Cibo mihi opus est*, *I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*). *Viginti denariis tibi usus est*, *You have need of twenty denarii*.

11. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative : as, *Parentes nobis amandi sunt*, *Our parents should be loved by us*. (See p. 172, 3.)

12. The dative is used to express *purpose, intention*, or *destination* : as, *Malo est hominibus avaritia*, *Avarice is an evil* (literally, *for an evil*) *to men*. *Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit*, *He left five cohorts to guard the camp* (literally, *for a guard to the camp*). This is called the *dative of purpose*.

13. The dative is often used in Latin instead of the English possessive : as, *Omnes fientes Caesari sese ad pedes proiecerunt*, *All threw themselves at Caesar's feet in tears*.

14. A dative is often used of the person specially interested in an action : as, *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Tell me, what is Celsus about?* This use is confined to personal pronouns. It is called the *ethic dative*.

GENITIVE.

1. A noun used to limit or define another noun, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the genitive. This relation is generally expressed in English by the preposition *of* : as, *Libri Ciceronis*, *The books of Cicero*. *Libra auri*, *A pound of gold*.

2. The genitive is often used in the predicate with *sum* to express possession : as, *Haec domus est mei patris*, *This house belongs to*

my father. This genitive may be used to express our *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token*: as, *Iudicis est verum sequi, It is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (literally, *To follow the truth is of a judge*). *Hoc est praeceptōis, This is the task of an instructor.* *Sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, It is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (literally, *with an even mind*).¹

3. The genitive expresses the whole of which a part is taken: as, *Pars militum, A part of the soldiers.* *Unus militum, One of the soldiers.* *Decem millia passuum, Ten thousand paces* (= ten Roman miles). *Decem vestrum, Ten of you.* *Quinque nostrum, Five of us.* This is called the *partitive genitive*. (Do not use *nostri* and *vestri* in partitive genitive. See p. 104, note.)

4. A noun in the genitive (called the *genitive of quality*) is often added to another noun to denote a quality: as, *Vir est summæ fortitudinis, He is a man of the highest courage.* The word in the genitive expressing the quality has invariably an adjective with it. Thus, *A man of wisdom* is not *Vir sapientiae*, but *Vir sapiens*. When a word expressing quality is without an adjective and cannot be turned as in the last example, *praeditus* (*endowed with*) is used with the ablative: as, *Homo virtute praeditus, A man of valour* (literally, *A man endowed with valour*).

5. When the price for which a thing is *bought* or *sold* is not stated definitely, price is usually expressed by the genitive, especially with the words *magni* (*at a great price*), *maximi* (*at a very great price*), *parvi* (*at a low price*), *pluris* (*at a greater price*), *minoris* (*at a less price*), *tanti* (*at so great a price*), *quantī* (*at as high a price* or *at how high a price*): as, *Hortos tanti quanti tu emit, He bought gardens at as high a price as you.* *Frumentum pluris vendo, I sell corn at a higher price.*²

6. The genitive is used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the subject of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, *Morsus*

¹ With possessive pronouns this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, *Tuum* (not *tui*) *est vidēre, It is your duty to see.*

² Do not use *multi* or *maioris* or *plurimi*, for *At a high, at a higher, at a very high, price.*

canis
mord

7.
denot
Timo
implic

8.
as, V
geniti

9.
plenty
enemy
derive
Cupid

10.
He is

11.
(remem
(pity),
laboru
ber thi

12.
admon
the gen
impiety
ditionis

In th
impiety
accusa

13.
(it shan
sonally

¹ Verbs
Record
² Miser
suum m

canis, *The bite of a dog*. Here *canis* is the subject of the implied mordet, *he bites*. This is called the *subjective genitive*.

7. The genitive is also used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the object of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, *Timor mortis*, *The fear of death*. Here *mortis* is the object of the implied *timet*, *he fears*. This is called the *objective genitive*.

8. A genitive is often added to another noun to define and limit: as, *Virtus iustitiae*, *The virtue of justice*. This is called the *genitive of definition*.

9. Adjectives are followed by a genitive when they express plenty, want, or the opposite: as, *Plenus hostium*, *Full of the enemy*. *Expers rationis*, *Devoid of reason*. So, also, adjectives derived from verbs: as, *Tenax propositi*, *Firm of purpose*. *Cupidus pecuniae*, *Eager for money*.

10. Verbs of plenty and want take the genitive: as, *Eget pecuniae*, *He is in need of money*.

11. Verbs signifying to remember,¹ forget, pity², like *memini* (*remember*), *reminiscor* (*remember*), *obliscor* (*forget*), *miserer* (*pity*), *miseresco* (*pity*), often take the genitive: as, *Miserere laborum*, *Pity our sufferings*. *Huius diei meminero*, *I shall remember this day*.

12. Verbs of accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding and admonishing take, in the active, the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing: as, *Te impletatis absolvo*, *I acquit you of impiety*. *Arguit me furti*, *He accuses me of theft*. *Cives eum prodicionis accusaverunt*, *The citizens accused him of treachery*.

In the passive, these constructions become respectively, *Tu ab me impletatis absolvēris*, *Furti ab eo arguor*, *Ab civibus is prodicionis accusatus est*.

13. *Miseret* (*it excites pity*), *poenitet* (*it makes repent*), *pudet* (*it shames*), *taedet* (*it wearies*), *piget* (*it annoys*), are used impersonally with the accusative of the person affected and the genitive

¹Verbs of forgetting and remembering often take the accusative, especially of things. *Recordor*, *I recollect*, has usually the accusative.

²*Miseror*, *-āri*, *-ātus sum* (*express pity for*) takes the accusative: as, *Casum suum miseratur*, *He bewails his misfortune*.

of the object causing the feeling : as, *Eorum nos miseret, We pity them* (literally, *It pities us of them*).

14. The impersonals *interest* and *refert*, *it is of importance*, take the genitive of the person to whom the matter is of importance : as, *Clodii intererat Milonem perire, It was of importance to Clodius that Milo should die*. But if the person is represented in English by a personal pronoun, the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used in Latin : as, *Id meā interest, This is of importance to me*. The degree of importance is expressed either by an adverb (*multum*, *plurimum*, *much*, *very much*), or by the genitive of price (as, *magni*, *parvi*, *pluris*, etc.) : as, *Multum meā interest, It is of great importance to me*. *Magni tuā interest, It is of great importance to you*.

ABLATIVE.

1. The ablative expresses *separation* or *motion from* ; hence it is used with verbs signifying to *desist from*, *relieve from*, *deprive of*, *need*,¹ *be without*, *free from* ; as, *Conatu destitit, He desisted from the attempt*. *Levā me hoc onere, Relieve me of this burden*. *Se oculis privavit, He deprived himself of his eyes*. *Non egeo medicinā, I do not want medicine*. *Cibo caret, He is without food*.

2. Adjectives signifying *want* or *freedom from* take the ablative : as, *Animus liber curā, A mind free from care*. *Puer est expers² metu, The boy is without fear*. *Urbs est nuda praesidio, The city is destitute of defence*.

3. The ablative of origin is used with verbs (chiefly participles like *natus*, *satus*, *born from* ; *editus*, *genitus*, *descended from* ; *ortus*, *sprung from*) with the preposition *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*), *de* when implying remote ancestry, or with the simple ablative for immediate ancestry : as, *Belgae a Germanis orti sunt, The Belgae are descended from the Germans*. *Ille optimis parentibus ortus est, He is born of very noble parents*.

4. The agent after a passive verb is regularly expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab* : as, *Vir a sociis laudatur, The man is praised by his comrades*.

¹ *Egeo* and *indigeo* govern also the genitive. (See p. 281, 10.)

² This governs the genitive also. (See p. 281, 9.)

5. Cause, manner, means and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition : as, *Puer pallidus irā fuit*, *The boy was pale with rage* (abl. of cause ; not often used without an adj.). *Magno fletu Caesarem orant*, *they beseech Caesar with much weeping* (abl. of manner ; not often used without an adj.). *Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit*, *He encouraged the minds of the Gauls by his words* (abl. of means). *Puerum gladio vulneravit*, *He wounded the boy with a sword* (abl. of instrument).

6. The ablative is used with an adjective in the comparative when *quam* (*than*) is omitted : as, *Lupus saevior cane est*, *The wolf is fiercer than the dog*. *Lupum saeviozem cane aestimo*, *I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog*.

Note that *quam* can only be omitted when the word after it would be in the nominative or accusative, if *quam* were expressed.

7. The ablative is used with the comparative of the adjective to express the amount of difference : as, *Puer uno anno senior quam frater erat*, *The boy was one year older* (literally, *older by one year*) *than his brother*. This is called the *ablative of difference*.

8. Price with verbs of *buying* and *selling* is expressed by the ablative when the price is definitely stated : as, *Viginti talentis unam orationem vendidit Isocrates*, *Isocrates sold one speech at twenty talents*. *Multo sanguine haec victoria nobis stat*, *This victory costs us much blood* (literally, *Stands to us at much blood*).

9. The following adjectives govern the ablative : *Dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus* (*unworthy*), *contentus* (*contented*), *praeditus* (*endowed with*), *frētus* (*relying on*), *liber* (*free from*) : as, *Miles coronā dignus est*, *The soldier is worthy of a crown*. *Puer est ingenio praeditus*, *The boy is endowed with ability*.

10. The deponents *utor* (*I use*), *fruo* (*I enjoy*), *fungor* (*I discharge*), *potior* (*I obtain*), *vescor* (*I eat*), govern the ablative : as, *Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur*, *We enjoy and use many things*. *Magnā praedā est potitus*, *He obtained large booty*. *Lacte et carne vescebantur*, *They used to live on milk and flesh*.

11. *Opus est* and *usus est* (*there is need*) are generally used impersonally with the *dative of the person* to whom there is need, and the *ablative of the thing* needed : as, *Cibo mihi opus est*, *I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*).

12. An ablative (called the *abl. of quality*) is often used, like the genitive,¹ to express *quality*, especially when external qualities of dress or appearance are mentioned: as, *Homo magno capite, ore rubicundo, magnis pedibus*, *A man with a big head, red face, and big feet. Caesar erat excelsâ staturâ*, *Caesar was of lofty stature.* The abl. of quality should not be used without an adjective.

13. An ablative (called the *abl. of respect*) is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true: as, *Pauci numero erant. They were few in number. Est Medus genere, He is a Mede by birth.*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

14. The *ablative absolute* is a phrase consisting of a noun in the ablative case with a participle, adjective, or noun in agreement with it: as, *Conjuratio facta est Tarquinio regnante, A conspiracy was formed in the reign of Tarquin. His rebus dictis rediit, He returned after saying these things. Consule Planco, In the consulship of Plancus.*

RULES FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

1. *A point of time* is expressed by the ablative: as, *Hîeme noctes sunt longae, In winter the nights are long.*

2. *Within a period of time* is expressed either by the simple ablative or by the accusative with *inter* or *intra*: as, *Paucis diebus, inter paucos dies, intra paucos dies, Within a few days.*

3. *Many years after* is *multis annis* (abl.) *post*,² or *post*³ *multos annos*; *many years before* is *multis annis* (abl.) *ante*,² or *ante*³ *multos annos*: as, *Multis annis post urbs expugnata est, The city was taken many years after.*

4. *Duration of time* is expressed by the accusative: as, *Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit, Romulus reigned for thirty-seven years.* Often *per*, *through*, is used if definite duration is to be expressed: as, *Per totam noctem dormiebat, He slept the live-long night.*

5. *Ago* is expressed by *abhinc*, followed by the words expressing time in the accusative or ablative: as, *Abhinc decem dies* (or

¹See Genitive (p. 280, 4).

²In these cases *post* and *ante* are adverbs.

³In these cases *post* and *ante* are prepositions.

abhinc decem diebus) Caesar castra movit, *Ten days ago Caesar moved his camp.*

6. *Old or of age* is expressed by the participle *natus* with the accusative: as, *Homo est triginta annos natus*, *The man is thirty years old* (literally, *has been born thirty years*); or without *natus*, as *Homo est triginta annorum* (p. 280, 4). *More than thirty years* may be expressed by *Natus plus (quam) triginta annos*.

RULES FOR EXPRESSING PLACE.

1. *Place to which* is generally expressed by the *accusative* with the prepositions *ad* or *in*, unless before the names of towns or small islands: as, *Ad Galliam, in urbem contendit*, *He hastens to Gaul, to the city*. With the names of towns and small islands *place to which* is regularly expressed by the *accusative* without a preposition¹: as, *Romam, Corinthum, Karthaginem, Aeginam contendit*, *He hastens to Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina*. So also *domum* (*home*), *rus* (*to the country*), are used without a preposition: as, *Domum, rus ambulat*, *He walks home, to the country*. *Ad domum Ciceronis ambulat* would mean *He walks to the house of Cicero*.

2. *Place from which* is regularly expressed by the *ablative* with the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*, or *de*, unless before the names of towns and small islands: as, *Ab Gallia, ex urbe, de provincia excessit*, *He departed from Gaul, out of the city, from the province*. But, with the names of towns and small islands, *from* is regularly expressed by the *ablative* without a preposition: as, *Romā, Corintho, Karthagine, Aeginā, contendit*, *He hastens from Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina*. So also: *Domo, from home; rure, from the country*.

3. To express *place in which*, a preposition is required, unless with the names of towns and small islands: as, *In Gallia, in urbe vivit*, *He lives in Gaul, in the city*. But to express *place in which* with the names of towns or small islands, the so-called *locative*²

¹ When *ad* is used before the name of a town it means *towards*, or in the neighborhood of: as, *Ad Romam contendit*, *He hastens towards Rome*. *Ad Romam pugnatum est*, *The battle was fought in the neighborhood of Rome*.

² A case which became obsolete in later Latin

case is used. This case has the form of (a) the genitive, if the noun is of the first or second declension singular; (b) the ablative, if the noun is of the third declension singular or if the noun is plural: as, *Romae, at Rome; Corinthi, at Corinth; Karthagine, at Carthage; Athenis, at Athens* (from *Athenae*, nom. pl.); *Delphis, at Delphi* (*Delphi*, nom. pl.); *Curibus, at Cures* (*Cures*, nom. pl.). So also: *Domī, at home; humi, on the ground; belli, in war; ruri, in the country; militiae, on military service, abroad.*

4. When *urbs* or *oppidum* is used in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition should be expressed: as, *Ad urbem Romam contendit, He set out for the city of Rome. Ex urbe Romā properavit, He hastened from the city of Rome. In urbe Romā vixit, He lived in the city of Rome.* (Note.—The *City of Rome* is *Urbs Roma*, not *Urbs Romae*.)

EXTENT OF SPACE.

1. *Space over which* motion takes place is expressed by the accusative: as, *Tria millia passuum ambulavit, He walked three miles.*

2. *Space of measurement* answering to the questions, *How high? how deep? how broad? how long?* may be expressed by the acc. or gen. Thus: *A tree a hundred feet high, Arbor alta centum pedes* (acc. of extent of space) or *Arbor centum pedum* (gen. of qual.).

3. *Space which lies between* is expressed by the accusative or ablative: as, *Abest decem millia passuum, It is ten miles off. Quinque millibus passuum distat, It is five miles distant* (lit. by five miles).

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Is the soldier here?* is *Adestne miles? Is not the soldier here?* is *Nonne miles adest? The soldier is not here, is he?* is *Num miles adest?*

Questions not introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs are usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles *-ne, nōne, num.* *-ne* simply asks for information; *nonne* expects the answer *Yes*, and *num* the answer *No*.

2. Questions introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs do

not require an interrogative particle: as, *Why are you laughing?* *Quid rides?* *Where are you coming from?* *Unde venis?*

3. *Yes* or *no* in answer to a question is usually expressed by repeating some word in the question: as, *Is the soldier present?* *Yes (No).* *Adestne miles?* *Adest (Non adest).*

4. *An* is often used to introduce a rhetorical question: as, *Have you doubts of their honor?* *An de eorum fide dubitatis?*

5. *Whether . . . or* is *Utrum* (rarely *-ne*) . . . *an*, and *whether . . . or not*, *utrum . . . annon*: as, *Whether is he reading or writing?* *Utrum legit an scribit?* *Are you slaves or freemen?* *Servine estis an liberi?* *Whether will he come or not?* *Utrum veniet annon?*

6. *Tell me who you are* is *Dic mihi quis sis.* *I will ask him what he is reading,* *Rogabo eum quid legat.*

N.B.—A question dependent upon a verb of *saying* or *asking* has the verb in the subjunctive. Such a question is called an *indirect question*, while an independent question is called a *direct question*.

7. *Whether* in an indirect question is *num*: as, *He is asking me whether I am tired,* *Rogat num fessus sim.* *Whether . . . or not* in an indirect question is *Utrum . . . necne*: as, *Ask him whether he will come or not,* *Roga eum utrum venturus sit necne.*

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

1. Commands are expressed by the imperative mood: as, *Consult for yourselves,* *Vos vobis consulite.*

2. Prohibitions (addressed to individuals) are expressed most usually by *noli* or *nolite* with the infinitive, or by *nē* with the perfect subjunctive: as, *Don't scold,* *Nōli obiurgare* (*Noli* is the imperative of *nolo*, *I am unwilling*). *Don't do it,* *Ne hoc feceris.*

NOTE.—*Ne* with the imperat. or with the pres. subjunc. is common in poetry and in general prohibitions: as, *Be not wroth, great priestess,* *Ne saevi, magna sacerdos.* *Do not learn many things, but much,* *Ne multa discas sed multum.*

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. The subjunctive is used in exhortations: as, *Let us always be the same,* *Semper iidem simus.*

2. The subjunc. is used in commands: as, *Let him come to-morrow, Cras veniat.* (See last section.)

3. The subjunc. is used where a question is asked in doubt: as, *What shall I say? Quid dicam? What should I have said? Quid dicerem?* This is called the *deliberative subjunctive*.

4. The subjunc. is used to soften an assertion: as, *You would ask me what God is, Roges me quid sit deus. Then you would have said, Tunc diceres.*

5. Wishes and prayers are expressed by the subjunc. usually preceded by *utinam* (*O that*). The negative is *nō*. Thus: *Utinam veniat, May he come* (future and possible). *Utinam adesset, O that he were here now* (unaccomplished in present). *Utinam ne copias eduxisset, O that he had not led out his forces* (unaccomplished in past).

THE INFINITIVE.

1. Many verbs take an inf. to complete their meaning: as, *He had learned to talk, Loqui didicerat. You know how to win, Hannibal; you do not know how to use a victory, Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoriā ūti nescis.* Such verbs are called *modal verbs*.

The principal modal verbs are:

Audeo (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *conor* (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *debeo* (*ought*), *desiño* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *dubito* (*hesitate*), *incipio* (*begin*), *mālo* (*prefer*), *nescio* (*not know how*), *nōlo* (*be unwilling*), *obliviscor* (*forget*), *patior* (*allow*), *paro* (*prepare*), *possum* (*be able*), *scio* (*know how*), *soleo* (*be accustomed*), *vereor* (*fear*), *volo* (*be willing*).

2. The subject of the inf. is in the acc.: as, *Your coming is very pleasing to me, Te venire mihi pergratum est.*

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The English *that*-clause after a verb meaning to say or think is expressed in Latin by the acc. with the inf.: as, *He says that he is coming, Dicit se venire. He said that he was coming, Dixit se venire. He says that he came, Dicit se venisse. He said that he came (or had come), Dixit se venisse. He says that he will come, Dicit se venturum. He said that he would come, Dixit se venturum.*

N.B.—The *esse* of the fut. inf. act. may be omitted.

2. Such a statement, depending upon a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration* (as opposed to the simple form, which is called *direct narration*).

3. The tense of an inf. in oblique narration is the tense of the verb it represents in direct narration.

NOTE.—This idiom is quite different from the English and should be carefully mastered. The rule for finding the tense of the inf. may be stated thus: In turning English oblique into Latin, find first the English direct. *The tense of the English main verb in direct, is the tense of the Latin inf. in indirect.* Thus: *He said that all men erred*, *Dixit omnes homines errare* (direct = *all men err*). *He said that he was a Roman citizen*, *Dixit se civem Romanum esse* (direct = *I am a Roman citizen*, *Civis Romanus sum*).

4. Verbs meaning to *hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, have in Latin the fut. inf. and not as in English the pres.: as, *He hopes to live long*, *Sperat se diu victurum*. *I promised to come soon*, *Pollicitus sum me brevi venturum*.

Note that the proper pronoun must be expressed before the inf.

5. *He said that he would not come* is *Negavit se venturum* (not *dixit non*).

Note that the *he* of the *that*-clause, when referring to the subject of the principal clause, is *se*; referring to some one else, it would be *eum*: as, *They said that he would come*, *Dixerunt eum venturum*.

6. *He is said to be rich* is *Dicitur esse dives*, not *Dicitur eum esse divitem*.

SUPINE. GERUNDIVE.

1. The supine in *-um* is used to express *purpose*, but only with verbs of motion: as, *Ludos visum ierunt*, *They went to see the games*. *Questum iniurias eo*, *I am going to complain of wrongs*.

2. The gerundive of verbs that govern the acc. is to be used instead of the gerund with an object: as, *Consilium inibant urbis delendae*, *They formed a plan for destroying the city* (not *urbem delendi*).

But the gerund is used if the verb does not govern the acc.: as, *Magnam gloriam victis parcendo paravit*, *He won great glory by sparing the vanquished*.

3. To express *duty, obligation, or necessity* use the gerundive + *sum* (*passive periphrastic*): as, *Urbs defendenda est*, *The city must be defended.* *Est mihi ambulandum*, *I must walk* (agent usually in dat.). *Nonne inimicis a nobis parcendum est?* *Ought we not to spare our enemies?* (agent expressed by *a* or *ab* to avoid ambiguity).

PARTICIPLES.

1. Use the pres. participle, only of an action simultaneous with that of the main verb: as, *Haec moriens dixit*, *This he said while dying.*

2. The fut. part. act. is used to express a *purpose*: as, *Venio agros visurus*, *I am coming to see the lands.*

3. Use the fut. part. act. + *sum* to express *I am about to, intend to*: as, *Dic mihi quid facturus sis*, *Tell me what you intend to do.* (*active periphrastic*).

4. For the perf. part. act. (which is wanting) use (a) abl. absolute or (b) *cum* + subjunc. or (c) *postquam* + perf. ind.: as, *Having killed his enemy he spoke thus*, *Hoste interfecto* (or *Hostem cum interfecisset* or *Hostem postquam interfecit*), *haec locutus est.*

NOTE. - *He killed and stripped his enemy*, is *Hostem interfectum spoliavit* (not *Hoste interfecto eum spoliavit*).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

1. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows:—

Primary Tenses.	Pres.,	<i>āmat</i> , he loves.
	Perfect,	<i>āmāvit</i> , he has loved.
	Futufe,	<i>āmābit</i> , he will love.
	Future Perf.,	<i>āmāverit</i> , he will have loved.
Secondary (or Historical) Tenses.	Imperf.,	<i>āmābat</i> , he was loving.
	Perfect,	<i>āmāvit</i> , he loved.
	Pluperf.,	<i>āmāverat</i> , he had loved.

2. A primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the principal clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause: as, *Venio ut urbem videam*, *I am coming that I may see*

the city (primary sequence). *Veniebam ut urbem vidērem, I was coming that I might see the city* (secondary sequence). This is called the *Law of the Sequence of Tenses*.

NOTE.—The Latin perfect has the force both of the English present perfect (*i.e.*, perf. with *have*) and of the English past. When the Latin perfect is a pres. perf., it is a *primary* tense; when a past, a *secondary*: as, *Veni ut urbem videam, I have come to see the city* (primary). *Veni ut urbem viderem, I came to see the city* (secondary).

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. A clause joined to a principal verb by an interrogative pronoun or conjunction is called an *indirect question*, and an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive: as, *Quaesivit cur haec fecissem, He inquired why I had done this*.

2. For the fut. subjunc. act. in an indirect question, use the fut. part. + *sum*: as, *Scio quid facturus sit, I know what he will do*. *Sciebam quid facturus esset, I knew what he would do* (secondary sequence.)

3. For a fut. subjunc. pass. use *futurum sit* (or *esset*) + *ut*: as, *Sciunt quare futurum sit ut is necetur, They know why he will be killed*. *Rogaverunt quando futurum esset ut pons conficeretur, They asked when the bridge would be finished* (secondary sequence).

NOTE.—Use *quando*, not *cum*, for *when* in an interrogative sentence.

4. *Whether* in an indirect question is *num* or (rarely) *-ne*: as, *Dic mihi num eādem quae ego sentias, Tell me whether you have the same opinion as I*. *Quaesivi salvusne esses, I inquired whether you were safe*.

5. *Whether . . . or* in alternative questions is *Utrum* (rarely *-ne*) . . . an in indirect as well as in direct questions (see p. 287,5); but *or not* is *necne* in indirect, *annon* in direct. Thus:

*I know whether this is true
or false,*

*Scio { utrum hoc verum an falsum sit.
 verumne sit an falsum.*

I ask whether he intends to go or not, Rogo utrum iturus sit necne.

6. *Tell me if he is well* is *Dic mihi num (not si) valet*.

7. *I told them what he ought to do* is *Eis dixi quid* (not *quod*) *ei faciendum esset*, because the dependent clause (*quid ei faciendum esset*) implies in direct narration the question, *What ought he to do?*

8. An English abstract noun is often expressed by an indirect question: as,

I know { *the size of the island.*
the extent of the danger.
the nature of the soil.
the origin of the war.
the position of the enemy.

Scio { *quanta insula sit.*
quantum periculum sit.
quale solum sit.
unde bellum ortum sit.
in quo loco hostes sint.

UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs of *asking, commanding, striving* and *effecting* take in English an infinitive, but in Latin a clause introduced by *ut* with the subjunctive: as, *Oro te ut hoc facias, I beg you to do this.*

2. If there is a *not* with the infinitive in English, *nē* is used for *ut non*: as, *Puero imperavi ne domo exiret, I ordered the boy not to go from home* (secondary sequence).

3. So also that *no one*, is *ne quis*; *that no*, *ne ullus*; *that nothing*, *ne quid*; *that never*, *ne unquam*; as, *Orant ne quis excedat, They beg that no one may leave.*

4. *Neve* or *neu* is used in a second such clause; as, *Te rogo ut bono animo sis neve perturbéris, I beg you to be of good cheer and not to be troubled. Neither . . . nor* would be *neve* (*neu*) . . . *neve* (*neu*): as, *Rogo te neve dōles materiam neve caedas, I beg of you neither to hew timber nor cut it.*

5. *Iubeo* (*I order*), *veto* (*I forbid*), *prohibeo* (*I prevent*), *patior* (*I suffer*), *volo* (*I wish*), *cogo* (*I compel*), *nolo* (*I am unwilling*), *sino* (*I allow*), *cupio* (*I desire*), take the infinitive: as, *Puerum iussi domo non exire, I ordered the boy not to go away from home. Vetuit me hoc facere, He forbade me to do this.*

6. *Statuo, constituo, decerno* (*I determine*), take the infinitive when the infinitive is used in English, otherwise *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive: as, *Caesar statuit in Italiam redire, Caesar decided to return to Italy*; but *Caesar statuit ut legiones in Italiam redirent, Caesar decided that his legions should return to Italy*. *Imperator decrevit ne quis ex castris exiret, The commander resolved that no one should leave the camp.*

7. *He persuaded them to come*, is *Eis ut venirent persuasit*.
But: *He persuaded them that the enemy was near*, is *Adesse hostes eis persuasit*.

NOUN CLAUSES.

1. A noun-clause introduced by *ut* is used as the subject of an impersonal verb like *accidit*, *fit*, *it happens*; *futurum est*, *the result will be*; *accedit*, *it is added*; *sequitur*, *proximum est*, *it follows*; *feri* (non) *potest*, *it is (im) possible*; *reliquitur est*, *restat*, *it remains*; *tantum abest* (see p. 297,7): as, *Accidit ut nemo abesset*, *It happened that no one was absent*. *Ad Appi Claudii senectutem accedebat ut caecus esset*, *There was added to the old age of Appius Claudius the fact that he was blind*. *Sequitur ut erres*, *It follows that you are wrong*.

2. Noun clauses are often introduced by *quod* (= *the fact that*) with the indicative expressing an admitted fact: as, *Magnum est hoc quod victis pepercit*, *This is an important matter that he spared the vanquished*. *Gaudeo quod vales*, *I rejoice that you are well*.

3. Nouns akin in meaning to the verbs of p. 292, 1, may take an appositive *ut*-clause to define them: as, *Vetus est lex ut idem amici semper velint*, *It is an old law that friends should always have the same aim* (literally, *wish the same thing*). Such nouns are: *animus*, *consilium* (*purpose*), *condicio* (*condition*), *negotium* (*business*), *sententia* (*view*).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

A. FINAL CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause introduced by *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive, is used in Latin to express a purpose: as, *Edo ut vivam*, *I eat to live*. *Hoc dico ne te laedam*, *I say this not to offend you*.

Such clauses of purpose are called *final clauses*.

2. In final clauses the present is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary: as, *Occludit portas ut hostes excludat*, *He shuts the gates to keep out the enemy* (primary sequence). *Occludit portas ut hostes excluderet*, *He shut the gates to keep out the enemy* (secondary sequence).

3. For *That no one, that no, that nothing, that never*, use *Ne quis, ne ullus, ne quid, ne unquam*: as, *Porta clausa est ne quis exiret, The gate was shut that no one might go out. Clamant ne ullum verbum audiat, They are shouting that no word may be heard. Abi ne quid vidērem, I went away that I might see nothing. Hoc facite ne unquam vituperent, Do this that they may never revile.*

4. *Quo* is used for *ut* when there is a comparative in the final clause: as, *Puto aliquid puero dandum esse quo sit studiosior, I think that something should be given to the boy that he may be more zealous. Caesar castella communit quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit, Caesar erects forts that he may the more easily keep back the Helvetii.*

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui final*) is used with the subjunc. to express a *purpose*: as, *Misit legatos qui pacem peterent, He sent ambassadors to sue for peace (qui=ut il).* So also relative adverbs like *ubi* (*where*), *unde* (*whence*), often express a purpose: as, *Domum ubi habitaret legit, He chose a house where he might dwell (or to dwell in; ubi=ut ibi).*

6. With verbs of *preventing*, a final clause is often introduced by *quominus* (=by which the less=in order that not) with the subjunc.: as, *Nihil obstat quominus scribas, Nothing prevents you from writing (i.e., by which you should the less write).* Notice, however, that *prohibeo* (the common word for *to prevent*) takes the inf.: as, *Eos egredi prohibuit, He prevented them from going out.*

7. After verbs of *preventing*, *quin* may be used in the same sense as *quominus*, if there is a negative or a virtual negative in the sentence: as, *Non prohiberi poterat quin hoc faceret, He could not be prevented from doing this. Vix inhiberi potuit quin saxa iaceret, He could not be restrained from throwing stones.*

8. After verbs of *fearing*, a final clause is used, introduced by *ut* or *ne*: as, *Vereor ut veniat, I am afraid that he will not come. Vereor ne veniat, I am afraid that he will come.* (Here *ut* and *ne* apparently change their meanings, *ut=that . . . not; ne=that.*) Note that the English future after a verb of *fearing* is expressed by the subjunctive—in the present if the main verb is in a primary tense, in the imperfect if the main verb is in a secondary tense: as, *Timeo*

ut lab
suffer
things

9. I
follow

(1)

(2)

(3)

(4)

(5)

(6)

(7)

(8)

10.

(p. 292)

1. A

is desc
tive cla
omnes
king h
blind th

2. T

the sar
the im
Tantus
all tha
Romān
the Rom

3. T

(p. 293,
I was f
lus, ut

ut labores sustineas, *I am afraid that you will not endure your sufferings.* Timēbam ne ea evenirent, *I was afraid that these things would happen.*

9. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* may be expressed as follows :—

- (1) Legatos misit ut pacem peterent (ut final).
- (2) Legatos misit qui pacem peterent (qui final).
- (3) Legatos misit ad pacem petendam (ad with accusative of gerundive).
- (4) Legatos misit pacis petendae causā (causā with the genitive of gerundive).
- (5) Legatos misit ad pacem petendum (ad with gerund).
- (6) Legatos misit pacem petendi causā (causā with genitive of gerund).
- (7) Legatos misit pacem petitum (supine after verb of motion).
- (8) Legatos misit pacem petituros (future participle active expressing a purpose).

10. For *et ne* in a second clause of purpose use *neu* or *neve* (p. 292,4).

B. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause is often used to express the *result* of what is described in the main clause. Such clauses are called consecutive clauses, or clauses of consequence or result : as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit, Such fear seized all that the king himself fled.* *Tam caecus fuit ut me non videret, He was so blind that he did not see me.*

2. The rule for the sequence of tenses in consecutive clauses is the same as in English, except that (after a secondary tense) the imperfect subjunctive is used of a continuous act : as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut perturbati sint, Such fear seized all that they were panic stricken.* But : *Tam callidus erat ut Romānos saepe eluderet, He was so skilful that he often eluded the Romans.*

3. *That not* in a consecutive clause is not *ne*, as in a final clause (p. 293, A, 1), but *ut... non* : as, *Longe aberam ut me non videret, I was far away so that he did not see me.* So, too, *Ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nihil, ut nunquam*, are used for *That no one, that no, that*

never, that nature. Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet, *He was of such a character that no one believed him.* Verres Sicillam per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit, *Verres so harried Sicily for three years that it could not in any way be restored to its original condition.* Ita improbus fuit ut nihil eum a se revocaverit, *He was so wicked that nothing ever called him away from crime.*

4. Consecutive clauses are often used after demonstrative words like *talis, such; tantus, so great; sic, ita, tam, so; adeo, to such a degree*: as, *Tanta vis probitatis est ut etiam in hoste diligamus, So great is the force of honesty that we love it even in an enemy.* Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo haberetur filius, *Tarquin so loved Servius that the latter was commonly regarded as his son.* Hoc eum adeo terruit ut vix hodie prodire audeat, *This so terrified him that he scarcely now ventures to go forth.*

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause: as, *Non is sum qui hoc faciam, I am not the one to do this (qui=ut ego).* The consecutive relative is found in the following constructions:—

(a) With certain *indefinite expressions* like *sunt qui (there are some who); reperiuntur qui (there are found those who)*: as, *Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse, There are some who think that they have no need of literature.* Nihil est quod dicere velim, *There is nothing that I wish to say.*

(b) After *dignus (worthy), indignus (unworthy), and idoneus or aptus (fit)*: as, *Dignus est qui ametur, he is worthy to be loved.*

(c) After *quam* with a comparative: as, *Maiores quam cui resisti possit, He is too great to be resisted (=greater than to whom it can be resisted).* [Possum is used impersonally only when an infinitive passive is joined to it.]

6. Instead of *qui non, qui non*, often used when the verb in the principal clause has a negative or a 'qual negative': as, *Nemo est quin sciat, There is no one but knows.* Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere, *It cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to*

¹ Words like *vix, scarcely*, and question forms that expect the answer 'No.'

¹ Quis
² Quod
rejoice),

break one's word. Non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis, He does not doubt that the soul is immortal. Num quis ignorat quin hæc vera sint? Is any one ignorant that this is the truth?

NOTE.—*Dubito* has two meanings in Latin: (1) *Hesitate*, (2) *doubt*: as, *Dubitat loqui, He hesitates to speak. Desinite dubitare num hoc utile sit, Cease to doubt whether this is expedient. Non dubito quin vir summo ingenio sit, I do not doubt that he is a man of the highest ability.*

7. A consecutive *ut*-clause sometimes depends on the phrase *tantum abest* followed by a noun-clause introduced by *ut*: as, *Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut nobis non satisfaciatur ipse Demosthenes, So far am I from admiring my own productions that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy me.*

C. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the cause or reason for a fact mentioned in the principal clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because*: as, *Tacent quia periculum metuunt, They are silent because they fear danger.*

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by *quod, quia (because), quoniam (=quum iam, since now, seeing that),* and by *quum (since).*

3. *Quia, quoniam* are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive, when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of some one else, or is not a reason assigned by the speaker (p. 307, 11): as, *Patriâ expulsus est quia iustus erat, He was banished from his country because he was just.* (The reason given is vouched for by the historian as being the true one.) But, *Patriâ expulsus est quia iustus esset, He was banished because (as was alleged) he was just. Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere iuventutem, Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. [Corrumpebat would mean that the historian vouched for the truth of the charge.]*

4. *Quum (cum),* in the sense of *since*, always takes the subjunctive: as, *Hæc quum ita sint, abibo, Since this is so, I shall go away.*

¹ *Quis* is any after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.*

² *Quod* is common after *queror (I complain), laudo (I praise), gaudeo (I rejoice), doleo (I grieve).*

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a *causal* clause: as, *Pecasse videor qui a te decesserim*, *It seems that I have done wrong since I have departed from you* [qui=cum ego]. *Qui* is often strengthened by *quippe*, *utpote*, *indeed*, *as being*: as, *Multa de me questus est, quippe qui a me incensus esset*, *He complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated by me*. *Qui causal* is often used after exclamations: as, *Me miserum qui haec fecerim*, *Wretched that I am for doing this*.

6. *Non quod, non quo* with the subjunctive are often used to introduce a rejected reason: as, *Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est*, *I praise this not because it is honorable, but because it is expedient*. So, *De consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset, sed quia, etc.*, *I did not write to you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed, but because, etc.* So, too, *non quin, not but that*: as, *Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio*, *Not but that you love me, but because I wish to go*.

D. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. Temporal adverbial clauses define the *time* of the action of the main verb: as, *Haec feci dum potui*, *I did this while I could*.

2. The temporal conjunctions *ubi, ut* (*when*), *postquam* or *posteaquam* (*after*), *simul ac* (or *simul atque* before a vowel or *h*), *ut primum, quum primum* (*as soon as*), are followed by the indicative (usually the perfect or historical present). The English commonly requires the pluperfect: as, *Simul atque haec audivit, abiit*, *As soon as he had heard this, he went away*. *Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar in proximum collem copias subducit*, *After he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill*. *Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt*, *When they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns*. *Ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coegerunt*, *When this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause*. *Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, impetum fecerunt*, *Our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry ground, made an attack*.

3. *Dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad*, meaning *while, as long as*, take the indicative: as, *Dum vivo, spero*, *While I live, I hope*. *Vixit,*

dum.
restitit

4. I
presen
dum-c
Dum
Roman
being t

5. I
they ex
long as
There
quoad
till it w

6. D
some fu
veniren
(Purpos
till Kae
ira defe
Impetun
He with
(Purpos

7. Pri
simple p
before i
called hi

8. Pri
express
Priusqua
battle w
terrore
enemy re
tories (In

NOTE.-
as, Ante

dum vixit, bene, He lived well, while he lived. Quoad potuit, restitit, He held out, as long as he could.

4. *Dum* (not *donec*, *quoad*, or *quamdiu*) is often used with a present indicative instead of the English past when the time of the *dum*-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb: as, *Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur, While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

5. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, meaning *until*, take the indicative, when they express *time alone*: as, *Hoc feci dum mihi licuit, I did this as long as it was allowed me. Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, There was silence till Marcellus returned. Milo in Senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est, Milo was in the senate on that day till it was dismissed.*

6. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad* take the subjunctive when they express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation*: as, *Dum naves convenirent, exspectavit, He waited till the ships should assemble* (Purpose). *Expectate dum consul aut dictator fiat Kaeso, Wait till Kaeso become consul or dictator* (Expectation). *Differant dum ira defervescat, Let them put off till their anger cools* (Purpose). *Impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interrumperent, He withstood the attack till the rest should break down the bridge* (Purpose).

7. *Prisquam* and *antequam* take the indicative when they mark simple *priority* of time: as, *Prisquam lucet, adsunt, They are here before it is light. Filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, He called his sons together before he died.*

8. *Prisquam* and *antequam* take the subjunctive when they express some further notion of *intention* or *prevented result*: as, *Prisquam pugnaretur, nox intervenit, Night came on before the battle was fought* (Result prevented). *Prisquam se hostes ex terrore recipere, in fines eorum exercitum duxit, Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territories* (Intention).

NOTE.—*Antequam* and *prisquam* are often written in two words: as, *Anteorat quam pluit, It drops before it rains.*

9. Quum (eum) takes the *indicative*

(a) When denoting *contemporaneous* time : as, *Quum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui*, When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of one of the two parties. *Quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt*, When they speak, they extol their ancestors. *Nondum profectus erat, quum haec gerebantur*, He had not yet departed when these things were taking place. *Veniam quum potero, I shall come, when I can*. When the verb in the main clause is future, the fut. perf. is used in the dependent clause if the act in the dependent clause is over before that described in the main clause begins : as, *Quum epistolam tuam accepero, ad te scribam*, I shall write you when I get your letter.

In these sentences *quum* is a relative adverb of time corresponding to a suppressed *tum* in the main clause.

(b) When equivalent to *quoties, as often as, whenever* : as, *Quum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogeantur*, Whenever they made an attack, the enemy were forced to retire. *Quum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror, whenever I see a rose, then I judge that it is spring*. Note that in this sense *quum* takes the perfect indicative for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past.

10. *Quum*¹ takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in historical narrative (*i.e.*, when the verb in the principal clause is in the perfect or historical present) : as, *Decessit Agesilaus quum in portum venisset, Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbour*. *Cum hostes adessent, in urbem pro se quisque ex agris demigrant*, On the approach of the enemy, they move each as he best can from the country to the city.

E. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. Conditional clauses express a condition on which the statement of the main clause depends. The conditional clause is usually introduced by *si* (*if*) or *nisi* (*unless*).

¹ Note that *quum* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is a substitute for the perfect participle active. Thus: *Having said this, he went away*=(1) *Quum haec dixisset, abiit*. (2) *His rebus dictis abiit*. (3) *Postquam haec dixit abiit*. (4) *Haec locutus abiit*.

2. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:—

(1) *Present and past conditions.* In these nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. They have usually the indicative in both clauses, but they may have the imperative in the main clause or the subjunctive used imperatively: as,

<i>Pecuniam si habet, dat,</i>	<i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>
<i>Pecuniam si habes, da,</i>	<i>If you have money, give it.</i>
<i>Pecuniam si habet, det,</i>	<i>If he has money, let him give it.</i>
<i>Pecuniam si habebat, dabat,</i>	<i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>

(2) *Future conditions.* These are divided into two classes:—

(a) Where the condition is likely to be fulfilled. Here the future indicative is used in both clauses, but the future-perfect indicative is used in the *si*-clause if the action of the verb in that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as,
Pecuniam si habebit, dabit, If he has (literally shall have) money, he will give it.

Litteras si accepero, ad te scribam, If I get (literally shall have got) a letter, I shall write you.

(b) Where the condition is unlikely to be fulfilled: as,
Pecuniam si habeat, det, If he should (in the future) have money, he would give it.

(3) *Conditions contrary to fact.* This class contains all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. There are two types:—

(a) When the condition is not fulfilled in the present: as,
Pecuniam si haberet, daret, If he had money (now), he would give it (now).

(b) When the condition was not fulfilled in the past: as,
Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset, If he had had money (in the past), he would have given it (in the past).

Often (a) and (b) are combined: as,
Si id fecisset, viveret, If he had done this (in the past), he would be living (now).

3. The indicative, not the subjunctive, must be used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the principal verb in the conditional clause is

(a) In the periphrastic conjugation, active or passive (p. 172, 174): as, *Id facturus fuit, si adfuisset, He would have done it, if*

he had been here. *Nisi litteras misisset, agros relicturi erant, If he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands. Consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit, If the plans had succeeded, he must have been put to death.*

(b) *Possum (I can), debeo (I ought), oportet (it is needful): as, Totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores, The whole army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up.*

4. *Sive . . . sive (seu . . . seu)* are used for alternative conditions: as, *Seu credis seu non credis, verum est, Whether you believe it or not, it is true.*

CAUTION. — Distinguish *whether . . . or* in alternative questions, and *whether . . . or* in alternative conditions. Thus: *Utrum credam necne, tu nescis, Whether I believe or not, you do not know* (noun clause, object of *nescis*). But: *Sive credo, sive non credo, tu quidem credis, Whether I believe or not, you at least believe* (alternative adverbial conditions).

5. *Nisi* negatives a whole clause, *si non*, some particular word: as, *Nemo saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit, No one dances when he is sober unless perchance he is insane. Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo, If he stays, I shall praise him; if he does not stay, I shall blame him.*

6. A second conditional clause of contrary meaning to the first is introduced, if affirmative, by *sin (but if)*; if negative, by *si non*, with a verb, or with *si minus (if not)* without a verb: as,

Si manebit, laudabo; sin abibit, culpabo, If he stays I will praise him; but, if he goes, I will blame him.

Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo.

Si manebit, laudabo; si minus, culpabo, If he stays I will praise him; if not, I will blame him.

7. *Provided that* is expressed by *dum, modo, or dummodo*, with the subjunctive (with *ne, not*, in negative clauses): as, *Oderint, dum metuant, Let them hate provided that they fear. Veniant dummodo ne maneant, Let them come, provided they do not stay.*

F. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Concessive clauses are those that make some concession in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are

usually introduced in English by *though*. These clauses may be divided into those which state

(a) An admitted fact. These are introduced by *quamquam* with the indicative : as, *Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt*, *The Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance*. *Caesar, quamquam eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur*, *Caesar, though he had not yet learned their plans, was nevertheless suspicious*.

(b) A mere supposition. These are introduced by *licet*, *ut*, *quamvis*, which always have the subjunctive : as, *Quamvis pericula impendeant tamen ea subibo*, *Though dangers may threaten still I will encounter them*.

2. *Etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* follow the rules for *si*. (See p. 300-302.)

3. Note that *quamvis* has often an adverbial force : as, *Quamvis facētus sit, ille est odio*, *However witty he is, he is hated*.

Note that *odio esse* is used for the passive of *odisse*, *to hate*.

4. The relative *qui* with the subjunc. (called *qui concessive*) is often used concessively : as, *Caesar, qui haec vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit*, *Though Caesar saw this, he drew up his line*.

5. *Quum* with the subjunc. sometimes has a concessive force : as, *Quum dicas te esse Graecum, es Romanus*, *Though you say that you are a Greek, you are a Roman*.

G. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses agreement (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause : as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, *You shall reap according as you do* (literally *shall have done*) *your sowing*.

2. There are two classes of comparative sentences :

(a) When the comparison is stated as a *fact* : as, *Omnia sicut acta sunt, memoravit*, *He narrated everything just as it was done*.

(b) When the comparison is stated as a mere supposition : as, *Honores petunt quasi honesti sint*, *They seek office as if they were honorable* (which they are not).

Those of the (*a*) type take the indicative, those of the (*b*) type, the subjunctive.

3. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually found with the subjunctive: *Tanquam, tanquam si, quasi, velut* or *velut si* (*as if*): *as, Tanquam hoc difficile sit, As if this were hard. Velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos, Just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us.*

NOTE.—These conjunctions prefer the subjunc. of 2 (*b*), p. 301, to that of 3 (*a*), p. 301.

4. *The . . . the* before comparatives is expressed by (*a*) *Quo . . . eo*, or by *quanto . . . tanto*: *as, Quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilius suspicatur, The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting*, or by (*b*) *Ut quisque . . . ita*, with superlatives: *as, Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. This may also be rendered, In proportion to a man's goodness, he has difficulty in suspecting.*

5. Distinguish the use of *as* in the following:

He did as he was told, Ut imperatum est, sic fecit. Eadem ac tu peto, I have the same object as you (comparative clause).

He is not so mad as to think this, Non tam insanus est ut hoc putet (consecutive clause).

He ran fast so as to be in time, Celeriter cucurrit ut tempori veniret (ut final).

He collected as many forces as possible (or as he could), Quam maximas copias (potuit) coegit.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Adjective clauses stand in the relation of adjectives to some word in the principal sentence. They are introduced by the relative pronoun (*qui, quae, quod*), or by correlatives (*qualis, quantus, quot*), or by adverbs (*unde, ubi*).

2. The relative clause in its simple use takes the indicative: *as, Nuntii qui missi erant, redierunt, The messengers who had been sent returned.*

So also the correlatives *qualis, quantus, quot*, and the adverbs *ubi, unde*: as, *Non sum qualis eram, I am not what I was. Ad locum redierunt unde profecti erant, They returned to the spot from which they had set out. In eodem oppido est sepultus ubi natus erat, He was buried in the same town in which he had been born.*

3. The relative pronoun is often omitted in English when it is the object of a verb, but is never so omitted in Latin: as, *Verba quae locutus es, vera sunt, The words you have spoken are true.*

4. The antecedent of the relative is often omitted: as, *Sunt qui putent hoc esse verum, There are some who think that this is true.*

5. *He was the first to come* is *Primus venit. This is the goal I am aiming at, Hoc peto. Such a great danger as this, Hoc tantum periculum.*

INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing*, or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique* narration. Thus:

DIRECT.

Ego civis Romanus sum.

I am a Roman citizen.

Romulus, inquit, urbem condidit.

"Romulus," he said, "founded a city."

INDIRECT.

Dixit se civem Romanum esse.

He said that he was a Roman citizen.

Dixit Romulum urbem condidisse.

He said that Romulus had founded a city.

NOTE.—If the actual words of a speaker or writer are quoted, they are introduced by *inquit, he says* or *he said*, usually following the first word. If the speech is reported in indirect narration, *dicat, dixit, or ait* is used.

2. All dependent adjectival and adverbial clauses are in the subjunctive in indirect narration: as,

DIRECT.

Darius, qui rex Persarum est, advenit.

Darius, who is the king of the Persians, is approaching.

INDIRECT.

Darium, qui rex Persarum esset, advenire dixit.

He said that Darius, who was the king of the Persians, was approaching.

(For tense of *advenire* see p. 289, 3, note, and for tense of *esset* see p. 290, 2.)

NOTE.—The future-perf. ind. of direct becomes plupf. subjunc. in indirect after a past tense: as, *Dixit eum, qui id fecisset, poenas daturum, He said that the man who did that, would be punished* (direct=*qui id fecerit, the man who does that*, see p. 301, 2, (2), (a).

3. Indirect commands are in the subjunctive (usually the imperfect; but sometimes the present takes the place of the imperative of the direct command): as,

DIRECT.

Ite, inquit, create consules.

"Go," says he, "elect consuls."

INDIRECT.

Irent, crearent consules.

He ordered them to go and elect consuls.

4. Indirect questions asking for information (and representing the second person in direct), are usually in the subjunctive (the imperfect or pluperfect when the principal verb is secondary): as,

DIRECT.

Quid agis? inquit; cur non antea pugnam commisisti?

"What are you about?" says he.

"Why have you not begun the battle before?"

INDIRECT.

(Dixit) quid ageret? cur non antea pugnam commisisset?

(He asked) what was he about? Why had he not begun the battle before?

5. Indirect rhetorical questions representing the first or third person in direct are generally expressed by the accusative and infinitive: as,

DIRECT.

Num Romam repulsi ibimus? Num se Romam repulsos esse ituros?
Shall we if repulsed go to Rome? Would they if repulsed go to Rome?

INDIRECT.

6. Pronouns of the first and second persons are usually changed to those of the third person. Thus:

ego, nos	become	se
meus, noster	"	suus
tu, vos	"	ille, illi
tuus, vester,	"	illius, illorum
hic, iste	"	ille, is

7. Adverbs of present time become after a secondary tense adverbs of past time : as,

nunc (<i>now</i>)	becomes	iam, tunc (<i>then</i>).
heri (<i>yesterday</i>)	"	pridie (<i>the day before</i>).
hodie (<i>to-day</i>)	"	illo die (<i>that day</i>).
cras (<i>to-morrow</i>)	"	postridie (<i>the next day</i>).
hic (<i>here</i>)	"	ibi (<i>there</i>).

8. It should be noted that, *Si habeam, dem* (p. 301) becomes *Dixit se daturum, si haberet. Si haberem, darem* becomes *Dixit se daturum fuisse, si haberet. Si mansissem, interfectus essem* becomes *Dixit or dixit, futurum fuisse ut interficeretur, si mansisset*.

It may also be noted that *Debellatum erit, The war will then be over*, becomes *Dixit debellatum fore*.

9. *Se* and *suus* in indirect usually refer to the subject of the principal verb, *is* or *ille* to some one different from that subject : as, *Caesar Catoni dixit verba eius sibi displicere, Caesar told Cato that his (Cato's) words displeased him (Caesar)*.

10. If a pronoun is required in indirect to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, *ipse* may be used : as, *Rogavit eos ut dederent qui ipsos prodidissent, He asked them to surrender men who had betrayed them*.

11. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause when an indirect statement is only implied and not expressed : as, *Noctu ambulabat quod somnum capere non posset, He used to walk about at night because he could not sleep* (as was reported). *Ei, qui primus conscendisset, praemium proposuit, He offered a reward to the one who should first scale the wall*.

NOTE.—Such a use of the subjunctive is called *virtual oblique*.

12. Indirect narration is often used in a principal clause without a verb of saying : as, *Rhenum transit: Gallos enim sibi bellum intulisse, He crossed the Rhine: for (he said) the Gauls had made war on him*.

13. The following exceptions to the rules of indirect may be noticed :—

(a) *Certior factus est id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto*

fecerat, dissolveretur, He (Xerxes) was told that the intention was to break down the bridge which he had built over the Hellespont. (Here the words quem . . . fecerat are not part of the message sent to Xerxes, but an independent statement made by the historian.)

(b) *Existimavit te dicere quae sentiebas, He supposed you said what you really thought. (Here the quae sentiebas is regarded as the statement of something known to all, the force of which would be weakened if the direct form of expression were changed.) So, too: Quaero e vobis ut haec pauca, quae restant, audiat, I ask of you to hear the few words that remain. Dico me copias, quas mecum habeo, missurum, I say that I will send the troops which I have with me. Rogo cur nuntius, quem misi, nondum redierit, I ask why the messenger whom I sent has not yet returned.*

(c) *Dixit hoc nuntiatum esse dum haec geruntur, He said that word of it was brought while this was going on. (Dum-clause unchanged, as often in oblique.)*

SPECIAL LATIN IDIOMS.

The following idioms may be noticed:—

(a) *Quid facerent ego nesci, I did not know what they ought to do (delib. subjunc. in indirect).*

(b) *Laniando hostem exspiravit, He expired mangling his enemy (abl. of gerund used for pres. part.).*

(c) *Quod omnibus notum esse dixit, And that this matter (he said) was known to all (the relative as a connective (=et id) in indirect does not take a finite verb).*

(d) *Adeo territi erant ut non pugnaturi essent, They were so terrified that they would not fight (fut. subjunc., secondary sequence).*

(e) *Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit, I did not doubt that he would have taken the city (conditional in consecutive clause: double dependence). So: Rogo te quid facturus fueris, I ask you what you would have done.*

(f) *Laetemur potius quam queramur, Let us rejoice rather than complain. Addit se prius occisum iri quam me violatum iri, He adds that he will be killed sooner than that I shall be harmed.*

FIRST LATIN READER.

CORNELIUS NEPOS.

THEMISTOCLES.

I. Themistocles, Neoclis filius, Atheniensis. Huius The early life of Themistocles. vitia ineuntis adulescentiae magnis sunt emendata virtutibus, adeo ut anteferatur huic nemo, pauci pares putentur. Sed ab initio est ordiendum. Pater eius Neocles generosus fuit. Is uxorem Halicarnassiam civem duxit, ex qua natus est Themistocles. Qui cum minus esset probatus parentibus, quod et liberius vivebat et rem familiarem neglegebat, a patre exheredatus est. Quae contumelia non fregit eum, sed erexit. Nam cum iudicasset sine summa industria non posse eam exstingui, totum se dedit rei publicae, diligentius amicis famaeque serviens. Multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur, saepe in contionem populi prodibat; nulla res maior sine eo gerebatur, celeriter quae opus erant reperiebat, facile eadem oratione explicabat. Neque minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat, quod et de instantibus, ut ait Thucydides, verissime iudicabat et de futuris callidissime coniciebat. Quo factum est ut brevi tempore illustraretur.

II. Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bello Corcyraeo: ad quod gerendum praetor a populo factus non solum praesenti bello, sed etiam reliquo tempore ferociorem reddidit civitatem. Nam cum pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redibat, largitione magistratuum quotannis interiret, ille persuasit populo ut ea pecunia classis centum navium aedificaretur. Qua celeriter effecta, primum Corcyraeos fregit, deinde maritimos praedones consectando mare tutum reddidit. In quo cum divitiis ornavit, tum etiam peritissimos belli navalis fecit Athenienses.

He persuades the Athenians to build a fleet, B.C. 481.

This fleet
saved
Greece in
the Persian
war.

Id quantae salutis fuerit universae Graeciae, bello cognitum est Persico. Nam cum Xerxes et mari et terra bellum universae inferret Europae cum tantis copiis, quantas neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo millia onerariarum sequebantur, terrestribus autem exercitus DCC peditum, equitum CCCC millia fuerunt:—cuius de adventu cum fama in Graeciam esset perlata et maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Marathoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret cum intellegeret nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, ut in naves se suae conferrent: cum enim a deo significari murum ligneum. Tali consilio probato addunt ad superiores totidem naves triremes suaeque omnia, quae moveri poterant, partim Salamina, partim Troezena deportant: arcem sacerdotibus patriaeque maioribus natu ad sacra procuranda tradunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

Leonidas at
Thermopy-
lae; the
fleet at
Artemisium,
B.C. 480.

III. Huius consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat et in terra dimicari magis placebat. Itaque missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent longiusque barbaros progredi non paterentur. Ii vim hostium non sustinuerunt eoque loco omnes interierunt. At classis communis Graeciae trecentarum navium, in qua ducentae erant Atheniensium, primum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiariis regiis conflixit: angustias enim Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur. Hic etsi pari proelio discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere, quod erat periculum, ne, si pars navium adversariorum Euboeam superasset, ancipiti premerentur periculo. Quo factum est ut ab Artemisio discederent et exadversum Athenas apud Salamina classem suam constituerent.

IV. At Xerxes Thermopylis expugnatis protinus accessit astu idque nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacer-

dotibus
flammis
plurim
busque
univers
peritu
tum s
cum r
quem
suis ve
sissen
confec
si sta
Hoc e
cogere
creden
nissim
multitu
magis

V. I
reliqui
hostes.
Them
eum fe
dissolv
persuas
minus
Them
Sic uni
succulb
Marath
apud S
hominu

VI. I
in pace
bono A
portus
ipsam

dotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio delevit. Cuius Themistocles
 flamma perterriti classarii cum manere non auderent et
 plurimi hortarentur, ut domos suas discederent moenibusque se defenderent, Themistocles unus restitit et
 universos pares esse posse aiebat, dispersos testabatur perituros, idque Eurybiadi, regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui
 tum summae imperii praeerat, fore affirmabat. Quem
 cum minus quam vellet moveret, noctu de iis suis
 quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit, ut ei nuntiaret
 suis verbis, adversarios eius in fuga esse: qui si disces-
 sissent, maiore cum labore et longinquiore tempore bellum
 confecturum, cum singulos consecrari cogeretur; quos
 si statim aggrediretur, brevi universos oppressurum.
 Hoc eo valebat, ut ingratis ad depugnandum omnes
 cogerentur. Hac re audita barbarus, nihil doli subesse
 credens, postridie alienissimo sibi loco, contra opportu-
 nissimo hostibus, adeo angusto mari confligit, ut eius
 multitudo navium explicari non potuerit. Victus ergo est
 magis etiam consilio Themistoclis quam armis Graeciae.

V. Hic etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantas habebat
 reliquias copiarum, ut etiam tum iis opprimere posset
 hostes. Iterum ab eodem gradu depulsus est. Nam
 Themistocles, verens ne bellare perseveraret, certiores
 eum fecit id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat,
 dissolveretur ac reditu in Asiam excluderetur; idque ei
 persuasit. Itaque qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eadem
 minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est seque a
 Themistocle non superatum, sed conservatum iudicavit.
 Sic unius viri prudentia Graecia liberata est Europaeque
 succubuit Asia. Haec est altera victoria, quae cum
 Marathonio possit comparari tropaeo. Nam pari modo
 apud Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post
 hominum memoriam classis est devicta.

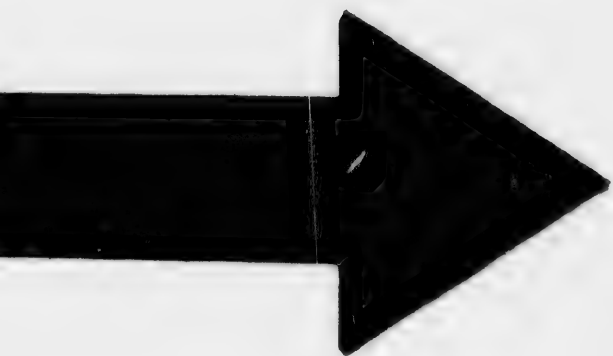
VI. Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit neque minor
 in pace. Cum enim Phalerico portu neque magno neque
 bono Athenienses uterentur, huius consilio triplex Piraei
 portus constitutus est iisque moenibus circumdatus, ut
 ipsam urbem dignitate aequiperaret, utilitate superaret.

Themistocles contrives to make the Greeks fight at Salamis, B.C. 480.

He induces Xerxes to leave Greece.

He fortifies the Piraeus and restores the walls of Athens. The Spartans object. B.C. 478-472.





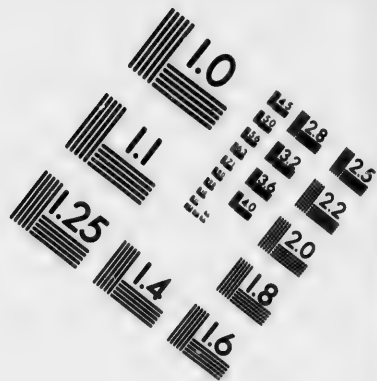
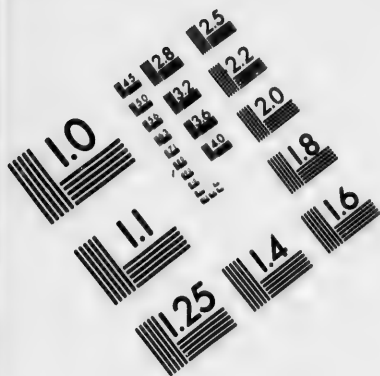
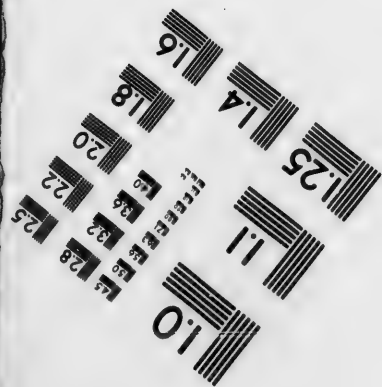
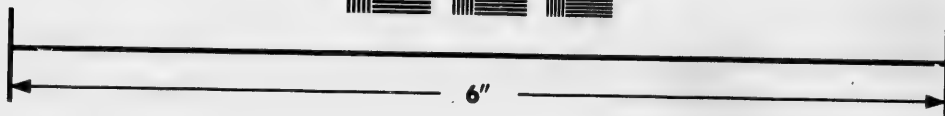
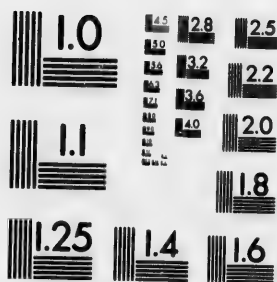


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
E E E E E
E 28
E 32
E 25
E 22
E 20
E 18
6

10
E
E

Idem muros Atheniensium restituit praecipuo suo periculo. Namque Lacedaemonii causam idoneam nati propter barbarorum excursiones, qua negarent oportere extra Peloponnesum ullam urbem muros habere, ne essent loca munita quae hostes possiderent, Athenienses aedificantes prohibere sunt conati. Hoc longe alio spectabat atque videri volebant. Athenienses enim duabus victoriis, Marathonica et Salaminica, tantam gloriam apud omnes gentes erant consecuti, ut intellegerent Lacedaemonii de principatu sibi cum iis certamen fore. Quare eos quam infirmissimos esse volebant. Postquam autem audierunt muros strui, legatos Athenas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent. His praesentibus desierunt ac se de ea re legatos ad eos missuros dixerunt. Hanc legationem suscepit Themistocles et solus primo profectus est: reliqui legati ut tum exirent, cum satis alti tuendo muri exstructi viderentur, praecepit: interim omnes, servi atque liberi, opus facerent neque ulli loco parcerent, sive sacer sive privatus esset sive publicus, et undique, quod idoneum ad muniendum putarent, congererent. Quo factum est ut Atheniensium muri ex sacellis sepulchrisque constarent.

He outwits
the Spartans.

VII. Themistocles autem, ut Lacedaemonem venit, adire ad magistratus noluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissime tempus duceret, causam interponens se collegas exspectare. Cum Lacedaemonii quererentur opus nihilo minus fieri eumque in ea re conari fallere, interim reliqui legati sunt consecuti. A quibus cum audisset non multum superesse munitionis, ad ephoros Lacedaemoniorum accessit, penes quos summum erat imperium, atque apud eos contendit falsa iis esse delata: quare aequum esse illos viros bonos nobilesque mittere, quibus fides haberetur, qui rem explorarent: interea se obsidem retinerent. Gestus est ei mos, tresque legati functi summis honoribus Athenas missi sunt. Cum his collegas suos Themistocles iussit proficisci iisque praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hos postquam Athenas pervenisse ratus

est
et
con
pub
pos
inu
pro
bis
aut
quo
util
Ath
in p
V
Nan
tiad
habi
mag
Ath
soci
fecis
Id u
Coro
verti
et A
cum
et in
recep
ea s
conie
data
cum
publi
sibi:
versa
esset
nauti
ferret

est, ad magistratus senatumque Lacedaemoniorum adiit et apud eos liberrime professus est: Athenienses suo consilio, quod communi iure gentium facere possent, deos publicos suosque patrios ac penates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere, muris saepsisse, neque in eo quod inutile esset Graeciae fecisse. Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium. Lacedaemonios autem male et iniuste facere, qui id potius intuerentur quod ipsorum dominationi quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset. Quare, si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent, cum aliter illos nunquam in patriam essent recepturi.

VIII. Tamen non effugit civium suorum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timorem, quo damnatus erat Miltiades, testularum suffragiis e civitate eiectus Argos habitatum concessit. Hic cum propter multas virtutes magna cum dignitate viveret, Lacedaemonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent, quod societatem cum rege Perse ad Graeciam opprimendam fecisset. Hoc crimine absens prodicionis damnatus est. Id ut audivit, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. Ibi cum eius principes animadvertisset timere, ne propter se bellum iis Lacedaemoniis et Athenienses indicerent, ad Admetum, Molossum regem, cum quo ei hospitium erat, confugit. Huc cum venisset et in praesentia rex abesset, quo maiore religione se receptum tueretur, filiam eius parvulam arripuit et cum ea se in sacrarium, quod summa colebatur caerimonia, coniecit. Inde non prius egressus est, quam rex eum data dextra in fidem reciperet, quam praestitit. Nam cum ab Atheniensibus et Lacedaemoniis exposceretur publice, supplicem non prodidit monuitque ut consuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in tam propinquo loco tuto eum versari. Itaque Pydnam eum deduci iussit et quod satis esset praesidii dedit. Hic in navem omnibus ignotus nautis escendit. Quae cum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, ubi tum Atheniensium erat exercitus, sensit

Themistocles is ostracised, B.C. 471.

Withdraws to Corcyra and to Epirus, B.C. 466

Themistocles, si eo pervenisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hac necessitate coactus domino navis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicens, si se conservasset. At ille clarissimi viri captus misericordia diem noctemque procul ab insula in salo navem tenuit in ancoris neque quemquam ex ea exire passus est. Inde Ephesum pervenit ibique Themistoclem exponit : cui ille pro meritis postea gratiam rettulit.

Themis-
tacles at
the Persian
court,
B.C. 465.

IX. Scio plerosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe regnante in Asiam transisse. Sed ego potissimum Thucydidi credo, quod et aetate proximus de iis, qui illorum temporum historiam reliquerunt, et eiusdem civitatis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxen eum venisse atque his verbis epistolam misisse : "Themistocles veni ad te, qui plurima mala omnium Graiorum in domum tuam intuli, quam diu mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellare patriamque meam defendere. Idem multo plura bona feci, postquam in tuto ipse et ille in periculo esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam reverti vellet, proelio apud Salamina facto, litteris eum certiore feci, id agi ut pons, quem in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur atque ab hostibus circumiretur : quo nuntio ille periculo est liberatus. Nunc autem confugi ad te exagitatus a cuncta Graecia, tuam petens amicitiam : quam si ero adeptus, non minus me bonum amicum habebis quam fortem inimicum ille expertus est. Te autem rogo, ut de iis rebus, quas tecum colloqui volo, annum mihi tempus des eoque transacto ad te venire patiaris."

He is kindly
received by
Artaxerxes,
and settles
in Asia.

X. Huius rex animi magnitudinem admirans cupiensque talem virum sibi conciliari veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litteris sermonique Persarum dedit : quibus adeo eruditus est, ut multo commodius dicatur apud regem verba fecisse quam ii poterant, qui in Perside erant nati. Hic cum multa regi esset pollicitus gratissimumque illud, si suis uti consiliis vellet, illum Graeciam bello oppressurum, magnis muneribus ab Artaxerxe donatus in Asiam rediit domiciliumque Magnesiae sibi constituit. Namque hanc urbem ei rex donarat, his quidem verbis, quae ei panem praeberet (ex qua regione quinquagena

tales
vin
F
duc
stat
apu
Thu
mon
spor
men
ossa
bus
men

I.
fere
cont
cogn
Quan
ut u
audie
Then
rum
conci
adver
quaes
comm
respo
tam c
retur
pertul
sexto
restitu

II.
facta

talenta quotannis redibant), Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sumeret, Myunta, ex qua obsonium haberet.

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta manserunt duo: sepulchrum prope oppidum, in quo est sepultus, statua in foro Magnesia. De cuius morte multis modis apud plerosque scriptum est, sed nos eundem potissimum Thucydidem auctorem probamus, qui illum ait Magnesia morbo mortuum neque negat fuisse famam, venenum sua sponte sumpsisse, cum se, quae regi de Graecia opprimenda pollicitus esset, praestare posse desperaret. Idem ossa eius clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta, quoniam legibus non concederetur, quod proditiōis esset damnatus, memoriae prodidit.

His death
(about
B.C. 449),
tomb and
statue.

ARISTIDES.

I. Aristides, Lysimachi filius, Atheniensis, aequalis fere fuit Themistocli atque cum eo de principatu contendit: namque obtrecharunt inter se. In his autem cognitum est, quanto antestaret eloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeo excellebat Aristides abstinentia, ut unus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nos audierimus, cognomine Iustus sit appellatus, tamen a Themistocle collabefactus testula illa exilio decem annorum multatus est. Qui quidem cum intellegeret reprimi concitatam multitudinem non posse, cedensque animadvertisset quendam scribentem, ut patria pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur, quare id faceret aut quid Aristides commisisset, cur tanta poena dignus duceretur. Cui ille respondit se ignorare Aristiden, sed sibi non placere, quod tam cupide laborasset, ut praeter ceteros Iustus appellaretur. Hic decem annorum legitimam poenam non pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxes in Graeciam descendit, sexto fere anno quam erat expulsus, populi scito in patriam restitutus est.

Character
of Aristides.
His ostracism,
B.C. 484.

II. Interfuit autem pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam poena liberaretur. Idem praetor

Aristides at Salamis, B.C. 480, and Plataea, B.C. 479. fuit Atheniensium apud Plataeas in proelio, quo barbarorum exercitus fusus Mardoniusque interfectus est. Neque aliud est ullum huius in re militari illustre factum quam huius imperii memoria, iustitiae vero et aequitatis et innocentiae multa: in primis, quod eius aequitate factum est, cum in communi classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausania, quo duce Mardonius erat fugatus, ut summa imperii maritimi ab Lacedaemoniis transferretur ad Athenienses: namque ante id tempus et mari et terra duces erant Lacedaemonii. Tum autem et intemperantia Pausaniae et iustitia factum est Aristidis, ut omnes fere civitates Graeciae ad Atheniensium societatem se applicarent et adversus barbaros hos duces deligerent sibi.

Aristides settles the tribute of the allies, B.C. 477, and himself dies poor, about B.C. 468.

III. Quos quo facilius repellerent, si forte bellum renovare conarentur, ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret, Aristides delectus est qui constitueret, eiusque arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata: id enim commune aerarium esse voluerunt. Quae omnis pecunia postero tempore Athenas translata est. Hic qua fuerit abstinencia nullum est certius indicium, quam quod, cum tantis rebus praevisset, in tanta paupertate decessit, ut qui efferretur vix reliquerit. Quo factum est ut filiae eius publice alerentur et de communi aerario dotibus datis collocarentur. Decessit autem fere post annum quartum, quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus.

HANNIBAL.

I. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis.

His unrivalled position as a military commander.

Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infitandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antecedit fortitudine cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur

superare potuisse. Sed multorum obtrectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Hic autem velut hereditate relictum odium paternum His lasting enmity to Rome. erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et alienarum opum indigeret, numquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis.

II. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi, ut usque a rubro mari arma conatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum legati venissent Romani, qui de eius voluntate explorarent darentque operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire, neque id frustra fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit :

“Pater meus,” inquit, “Hamilcar, puerulo me, utpote He explains it by the story of his boyish oath. non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Karthagine, Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit ; quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.’ Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis tenentem iurare iussit, numquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita conservavi, ut nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Quare si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris : cum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustraberis, si non me in eo principem posueris.”

III. Hac igitur qua diximus aetate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est : cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale

Hannibal,
Commander-
in-Chief,
B.C. 221;
takes
Saguntum,
B.C. 219.

imperatore suffecto, equitatu omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id Karthaginem delatum publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal minus quinque et viginti annis natus imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit: Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit, tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit.

He crosses
the Pyrenees
and Alps,
B.C. 218.

Saltum Pyrenaeum transiit; quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit; neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpico conantes prohibere transitu concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit, effecit ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. Hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

His victories
on the
Ticinus and
Trebia,
B.C. 218; at
the Trasumene
Lake,
B.C. 217;
at Cannae,
B.C. 216.

IV. Confluxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidii apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio idem Scipio cum collega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum iis manum conseruit: utrosque profligavit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adficitur oculorum, ut postea numquam dextro aequae bene usus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiam premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumenum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

V. Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam revertetur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvenorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispalatam immisit. Quo repentino obiecto visu tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus.

He escaped from Fabius by a ruse. B.C. 218.

Hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio, dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquies consulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. Longum est omnia enumerare proelia. Quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo intellegi possit, quantus ille fuerit : quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

Hannibal's successes.

VI. Hinc invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. Cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus cupivit inpraesentiarum bellum componere, quo valentior postea congregderetur. In colloquium convenit : condiciones non convenerunt. Post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit : pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumetum pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter millia passuum trecenta. In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei : quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit : novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

Hannibal recalled to Africa, B.C. 203, and defeated at Zama, B.C. 202.

Hannibal
after Zama.
He surren-
dered demand-
ed by the
Romans,
B.C. 200.

VII. Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. Ille nihilo secius exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit usque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurelium consules. His enim magistratibus legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent, quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent simulque peterent, ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides, quo loco rogarent, futuros, captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiam nunc cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. Hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. Huc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperator fuerat, anno secundo et vicesimo: ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bello. Namque effecit, ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario reponeretur.

He escapes
from
Carthage,
B.C. 196.

Deinde anno post M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus, Roma legati Karthaginem venerunt. Hos Hannibal ratus sui exposcendi gratia missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur, navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae eum comprehenderent, si possent consequi, miserunt: bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

He attempts
to stir up
king Anti-
ochus to
war against
Rome,
B.C. 193.

VIII. At Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi spe fiduciaque inducerentur, cui iam persuaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Huc Magonem fratrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem,

absen-
solvit
Antio-
moria
ipsius

An-
pare-
Tiberi-
Quem
deseru-
iussus
classen-
tudine
rem ge-

IX.

dubio
Gortyn-
Vidit a-
pericul-
sium:
sciebat
Ampho-
auro e-
in temp-
credere
secum
propate
custodi-
inscien-

X. S
omnibu-
eodem
egit qu-
Quem
tum, c
natione
Dissi-
amiciss

absentem adfecerunt poena. Illi desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. De Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est : namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt.

Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat, tamen nulla deseruit in re. Praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum classem in Pamphylia mari confligit. Quo cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit superior.

Hannibal
defeated
by the
Rhodians,
B.C. 191.

IX. Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset, si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium : magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium. Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis, statuas aeneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo domi abicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret secumque duceret.

He flees
to Crete,
B.C. 191-190.

X. Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, illis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit quam regem armavit et exercuit adversus Romanos. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes.

Hannibal at
the court of
Prusias,
king of
Bithynia,
B.C. 188-183.

Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et

The war
with
Eumenes of
Pergamus.

terra. Sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem : quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi : quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant decreturi : superabatur navium multitudine : dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis.

The device
of the
serpents.

Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa fictilia conici. Harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classiarios convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere. Id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos. Rex autem in quavi veleretur, ut scirent, se facturum : quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent, magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

The battle.

XI. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis navi declarata suis, eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes soluta epistula nihil in ea reperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur.

Defeat of
Eumenes.

Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit : quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae

iacta i
id fieri
opple
cum,
verteru
Hanni
tum s
pruden

XII.
Prusiac
arem c
iis unu
die Fla
Hannib
marent
qui ab
ret sibi
illud re
ius hos
locum,

Hann
ei a re
omnibu
ne usu
orum v
sent, p
praeter
ei, ut
nuntiar
cum ce
occupat
se peti
ne alien
venenun

XIII.
laborib
sulibus

iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent, non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

XII. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cenarent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibi dederet. His Prusias negare ausus non est: illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent, quod adversus ius hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent: locum, ubi esset, facile inventuros.

The Romans resolve to demand the surrender of Hannibal from King Prusias.

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usu veniret, quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit.

The death of Hannibal.

XIII. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo. Quibus consilibus interierit, non convenit. Namque Atticus M.

The date of Hannibal's death variously given as B.C. 183, 182, and 181. Claudio Marcello Q. Fabio Labeone consulibus mortuum in annali suo scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemilio Paulo Cn. Baebio Tamphilo, Sulpicius autem Blitho P. Cornelio Cethego M. Baebio Tamphilo. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nonnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt, Graeco sermone confecti, in iis ad Rhodios de Cn. Manlii Vulsonis in Asia rebus gestis. Huius belli gesta multi memoriae prodiderunt, sed ex his duo, qui cum eo in castris fuerunt simulque vixerunt, quamdiu fortuna passa est, Silenus et Sosilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hoc Sosilo Hannibal litterarum Graecarum usus est doctore.

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO, B. IV, B. V, CH. 1-23.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

In the following selections from Caesar's great work on the conquest of Gaul, he narrates :

- (1) The story of his successful attempt to prevent the German tribes, who held the right bank of the Rhine, from crossing the river and settling upon the left or Gallic bank.
- (2) The story of his First Invasion of Britain in the end of August, B.C. 55.
- (3) The story of his Second Invasion of Britain on July 20th, B.C. 54.

us mortuum
L. Aemilio
n Blitho P.
Atque hic
nil temporis
unt, Graeco
Manlii Vul-
gesta multi
cum eo in
rtuna passa
e hoc Sosilo
ore.

H. 1-23.

n the con-

e German
ssing the

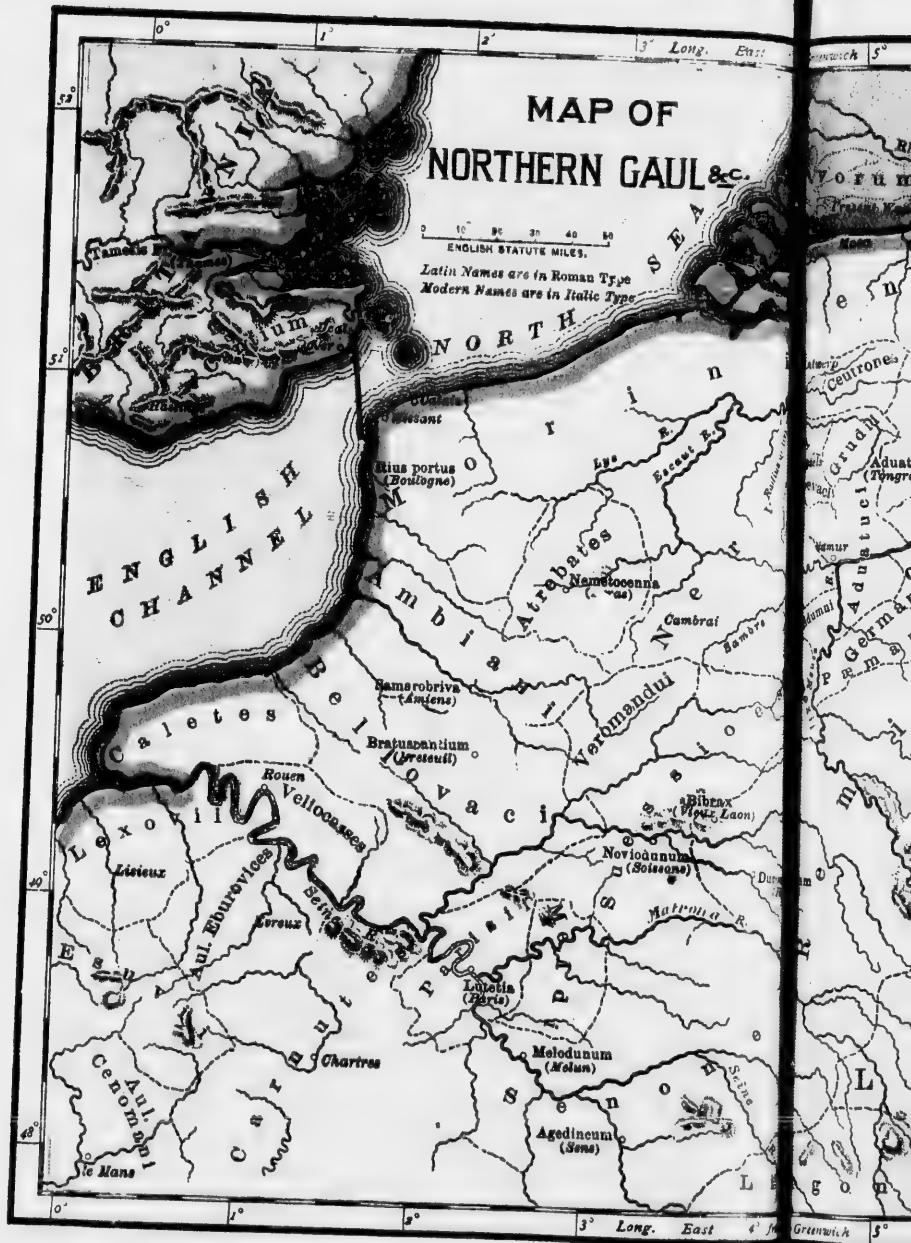
he end of

uly 20th,

MAP OF
NORTHERN GAUL &c

0 10 20 30 40 50
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.

Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type



13° Long. East

OF
GAUL &c.

SEA

n

Euxat R.

Cambrai

indui

Bibra

Joannu

Matrona R.

Spina

L g o n e

ng. East



Greenwich 5° 5° 7° 8°

I. R

Pompe

item

Rhenu

influit.

annos

bantur

sima

dicunt

bellan

manse

post in

cultura

privat

anno

multu

vivunt

gener

a puer

contra

rum n

suetud

tus pr

exigui

in flum

II.

bello

rem a

C. IULI CAESARIS
COMMENTARIORUM
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER QUARTUS.

I. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, ^{Usipetes and Tencteri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suebi.} Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus ^{Customs of the Suebi.} influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis,

quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, prava atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

The Suebi
reduce the
Ubii to a
tributary
state.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo quam sunt eiusdem generis ceteri humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Menapii
are surprised
by the sudden attack
of the
Germans.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simul-

aver
omn
inop
orum
tran
fecti
Men
flum
pati

V
Gall
et ne
exist
et v
quis
quae
quib
nove
tioni
quor
rumo
respo

VI
occu
fisc
erat,
tibus
dere
Qua
fines
clien
Caes
eorum
impe

VI
iter in
audie

averunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interceptis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumstatis quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus servant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviore bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuevit, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset,

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar,

legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio : Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si lacesantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo ; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos : vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint ; sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint : reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

who refuses
to allow
them to
remain in
Gaul.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit orationis : Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent ; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare ; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint ; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considerare, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant : hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

They agree
to give him
an answer in
three days ;
and ask him
not to advance,
but
he refuses.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relatueros dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros : interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam : hos expectari equites atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Geography
of the Meuse
and the
Rhine.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars

magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrediretur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibi ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecissent, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab eis petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuit.

Treacherous attack of the Germans. Death of Piso and his brother.

amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio ex-cesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The deputies
of the enemy
apologize for
the attack;
they are
detained.
Caesar
orders a
general
advance,

XIII. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: expectare vero, dum hostium copiae auferentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissime res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

and sur-
prises the
Germans
who after a
brief resist-
ance

XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra irruerunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma

cape
carro
mult
suis
fuge
misi

XV
inter
relic
Mosa
magi
taver
perie
vulne
capit
castra
disce
Gallo
apud
cessit

XV
statui
iustiss
impell
timere
Roma
illa p
supra
Mosan
subrum
seque
misiss
intuliss
imperio
liam tr
esse in
Ubii a
legatos

capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaue proelium commiserunt : at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit ; ad quos consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani post tergum clamore audito, cum suis interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata magno numero interfecto reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes perpaucis vulneratis ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum ; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt : Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire : si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet ? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant,

are utterly
routed by
the Romans.

Caesar de-
termines to
cross the
Rhine, and
gives his
reasons for
so doing.

magno opere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

In ten days
the bridge is
finished
and Caesar
crosses.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugamborum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

After laying
waste the
lands of the
Germans, he
returns to
Gaul and
destroys the
bridge.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaeque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exstitit constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Caesar determines to invade Britain: his reasons for crossing.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari

Sends Volusenus, who returns and reports to him.

potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies
hostages
from the
Morini,

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

and reaches
Britain.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam

nam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consueverunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

The natives
attack the
Romans.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commiliones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe

Caesar's
device;
bravery of
the standard
bearer of the
tenth legion;
Roman
advance.

meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquantur.

Rout of the
enemy.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstabant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several
states
submit to
Caesar.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturos quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore locis arces-

sitan
suos
conv
coep

XX
tum,
de qu
rant,
cum
tanta
tener
refer
prop
rentu
plere
conti

XX
dies
suevi
et lon
curav
verat
temp
admi
navib
reliq
magn
pertu
quib
refici
hiem
hiem

XX
post
conve
frum
militu

sitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos migrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

Fate of the
eighteen
cavalry
troop ships.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

A storm and
high tides
wreck
Caesar's
transports.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se collocti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc

Conspiracy
of British
chiefs.

erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod iis superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facti paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden attack of the British.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus demesso frumento Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis

interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et inde se in currus cisticissime recipere consuerint.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis qui erant in agris reliqui disceserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est,

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque se in castra receperunt.

Caesar
makes
peace; sets
sail for
Gaul.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden
attack of
the Morini.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

Conquest of
the Morini
and Menapii.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perflugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius

et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

LIBER QUINTUS.

I. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuevit, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse ^{Caesar orders a fleet to be built.} The Pirustae give hostages. conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

The soldiers
praised for
their zeal.
Fleet order-
ed to ren-
dezvous at
Portus Itius.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citiorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri
and their
rival
chieftains.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam

laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dice-
rentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perpexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Cingetorix
honored
and Indu-
tiomarus
offended.

V. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus, ex quibus perpauca, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Caesar
prepares
to sail.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant.

Dumnorix
gives
trouble.

Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of
Dumnorix.

VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduarum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum Caesar's
tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut second
portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret quaeque landing in
in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro Britain,
tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et 54 B.C.
pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad
solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo provectus media
circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et
longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam
relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem
secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet,
qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat.
Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui
vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi
labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum
est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere
tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea
Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo
convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum
annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat,
amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore
discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo The Britons
capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium oppose his
copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis march
et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de inland.
tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus,
quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram
relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium
praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter
duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu
atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros
prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab
equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum nacti egregie et
natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut
videbantur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris
arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi
ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones

ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of
the fleet.

X. Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus
builds new
ships.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro

Cassivel-
launus.

adver-
praef

XI
in ins
iis, qu
ierant
quibu
ibi pe
num
Gallic
aut ac
pro n
rancis
est co
generi
Lepor
haec t
tempe

XII
contra
Cantiu
ad ori
pertine
vergit
parte
Britan
est in
appella
insulae
runt di
nihil d
aqua m
videban
opinio,
tentrio
angulus
millia

adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos The people. in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgis transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello i'lato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimae aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissioribus frigidibus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est The island. contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existi-

matur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

Manners
and
customs.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

More fighting; a surprise; death of a tribune.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British
mode of
fighting.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et

pedi
proe
idem
confi
stati
excip

XV
const
nostr
cum
equit
omni
signi
eos i
unt, c
vider
nume
aut e
fuga
cesse
cam e

XV
Tame
flume
potes
nis rip
autem
gener
rebus
equita
celerit
solo e
equitu
se fug

XIX
deposi
millib
nostra

pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus The Britons repulsed. constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Caesar crosses the Thames. Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni Tactics of Cassivellaunus. deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque

impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes.

A British "town."

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consueverunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt.

Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Four Kentish kings defeated.

Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvise adorianentur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio

nuntiatio, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditioe ad Caesarem mittit. Cassivellaunus treats for peace.

Caesar, cum constitisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinis Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicat atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum Caesar returns to Gaul.

magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate depulerant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

NOTES ON NEPOS.

THEMISTOCLES.

Chapter I.—Huius ... adolescentiae: "The faults of this man's early youth." **Adulescentia:** from 17 to 30 years of age.—**Anteferatur:** for the mood and tense see p. 295, B. 2: "so that no one is superior to him," *i.e.*, even of the present day.—**Est ordiendum:** scil., **nobis:** "we must begin," *i.e.*, describe his life: p. 173, 6.—**Halicarnassiam:** "of Halicarnassus," a city of Caria, in Asia Minor.—**Qui cum ... parentibus:** "and since he was displeasing to his parents." Note that a Latin sentence often begins with **cum** and a relative pronoun. In English the relative pronoun is best translated by a demonstrative and a connective.—**Parentibus:** dative. See Vocab. under **probo**.—**Cum:** causal: p. 297, 4.—**Liberius:** "too freely": compar. deg., often = "too."—**Quae ... contumelia:** "but this slight." Avoid beginning an English principal sentence with a relative pronoun: see note above on **Qui cum ... parentibus**.—**Cum ... iudicavisset:** p. 297, 4.—**Eam:** *i.e.*, **contumeliam**.—**Diligentius:** "very diligently": compar. deg. = "very," "rather."—**Quae opus erant:** note that **opus est** is generally used impersonally. What is the construction? p. 283, 11. The thing needed, may, however, be the subject: as, **Dux nobis opus est**, "We have need of a leader."—**Excogitandis, i.e., in **rebus excogitandis**.—**Verissime iudicabat:** see Vocab. under **vere**.—**Quo factum est ut:** "and, therefore, the result was that": note that the relative adverb **quo = et eo = "and therefore."** See note on **quae contumelia** above.**

Chapter II.—Gradus capessendae rei publicae: see Vocab. under **gradus**: "His first position in the administration of public affairs."—**Bello Corcyraeo:** "In the war with Corcyra": there was no war with Corcyra at this time. Athens was, however, involved in a war with Aegina which lasted 488-481 B.C.—**Ad quod gerendum:** express this in various ways: p. 295, 9. For the translation of **quod** see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Praetor**, properly **praeitor**, "the one who goes before," hence, "commander."—**Metallis redibat:** see Vocab. under **redeo**. **Nepos** refers to the silver mines of Laurium on the promontory of Sunium.—**Largitione magistratum:** see Vocab. under **largitio**: for subjective genitive, p. 280, 6. **Nepos** is thinking of the distribution of corn and money by the Roman magistrates to obtain popularity.—**Interiret:** depending on **cum** causal: p. 297, 4.—**Maritimos praedones:** the Aegean sea has always been infested with pirates from early days to the present.—**In quo:** "and in doing this": see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Cum ... tum:** "both ... and."—**Divitiis ornavit:** see Vocab. under **orno**.—**Saluti ... Graeciae:** for the two datives, see p. 279, 12. For the mood of **fuerit**, see p. 291, 1.—**Bello ... Persico:** p. 284, 1. The Second Persian War (480 B.C.) is meant. Herodotus (vii, 144) says that the building of the ships for the war against Aegina proved the salvation

of Greece, because the Athenians were compelled to become a maritime people.—**Nam cum . . . quisquam**: this sentence is left unfinished.—**Et mari et terra**: we also find **terra marique, terra ac mari**: note the omission of **in**.—**Terrestris . . . exercitus**: Herodotus puts the infantry at 1,700,000, and the whole force, including camp followers, at 5,283,220.—**Cuius**: Darius was king of Persia when Marathon was fought (490 B.C.). He died 486 B.C., and was succeeded by his son Xerxes, who reigned from 485 to 465 B.C. In the reign of the latter were fought the battles of Thermopylae, 480 B.C.; Artemisium, 480 B.C.; Salamis, 480 B.C., and Plataeae, 479 B.C.—**Delphos**: for the case, p. 285, 1.—**Consultum**: in what different ways may this be expressed: p. 295, 9.—**Quidnam facerent**: "what, pray, were they to do?": delib. subjunc. in indirect. What would be the direct question? p. 288, 3, top of page.—**Respondit ut**: note that **respondeo** has here the construction of a verb of *commanding*: p. 292, 1. The meaning is "bade them in answer."—**Id . . . valeret**: see Vocab. under **valeo**. For mood, p. 306, 4.—**Persuasit . . . esse**: when **persuadeo** means "to convince," it takes the acc. with inf., like other verbs of *saying*: p. 288, 1, foot of page.—**Eum . . . ligneum**: scil., **Themistocles dixit**: "for (Themistocles said) that was the wooden wall meant by the god." **Eum** is predicate and attracted to the gender of **murum**.—**Maiores natu**: "the elders": comparative of **senex**: cf. superlative **maximus natu**: p. 58, note.—**Ad sacra procuranda**: "to perform the religious rites." The Acropolis of Athens contained the Parthenon, the chief temple of Athens, dedicated to Athene, the guardian goddess of the city.

Chapter III.—**Huius**: *i.e.*, Themistocles.—**Magis**: scil. **quam in mari**: "rather than on the sea." There was no division among the Greeks prior to this, for the Greek congress decided that the fleet should guard the northern entrance of the Euboic channel, and that the army should make a stand at Thermopylae.—**Qui . . . occuparent, paterentur**: p. 294, 5.—**Sustinuerunt**: Leonidas and his Spartan band withstood the Persians for three days, till the enemy was treacherously led over the ridge of Oeta, and attacked the Greeks in the rear.—**At**: a particle of transition introducing a new subject; **sed** is adversative.—**Trecentarum navium**: according to Herodotus (viii, 2), the number of the Greek ships was 271: of which 127 were Athenian.—**Artemisium**: there were three battles at Artemisium on three successive days. After the news came that Leonidas had fallen at Thermopylae, and that the Persians were marching on Athens, the Greeks decided to retire to Salamis.—**Pari proelio**: "after a drawn battle" (abl. manner): on the first two days, the Athenians gained some advantage, but on the third, both fleets suffered heavily.—**Quod erat periculum ne: periculum erat** has the construction of verbs of *fearing*: p. 294, 8.—**Si . . . superasset**: p. 301, (3), (b). Two hundred of the Persian fleet did try to sail around Euboea, but were wrecked on the coast.—**Ancipiti periculo**: *i.e.*, in front and rear.—**Quo factum est**: see note on the same expression, Chap. I.

Chapter IV.—**At**: see above, Chap. III.—**Protinus**: also written **protenus**: it refers to time, "forthwith," or to place, "onwards." Here it means "without interruption."—**Accessit astu**: for the more common **accessit ad astu**. **Astu** is the Greek *ἀστύ* in Roman characters. The City of Athens was called *ἀστύ* in opposition to the harbour towns, Piraeus,

Phalërum and Munychia.—**Nullis defendentibus**, abl. abs.: the city had no defenders but the Acropolis had.—**Cuius**: the burning city (Herodotus viii, 56).—**Domos suas**: p. 285, 1: decline **domus**: p. 238.—**Universos**... **dispersos**: equivalent to **si universi essent**... **si dispersi essent**: "if they were all united... if they were all separated."—**Pares**: scil. **hostibus**.—**Regi**: Eurybiades: he was admiral, not king.—**Qui**... **praeerat**, for the indicative: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Minus quam vellet**: virtual oblique: it refers to what was passing in the mind of Themistocles: p. 307, 11, note.—**De servis suis**: the preposition **de** with the abl. is often used for the partitive genitive: cf. French **de** in a partitive construction. The slave's name was Sicinnus.—**Suis verbis**: "in his own words," i.e., in the words of Themistocles.—**Qui si = et si ille**: see note on **qui cum**... **parentibus**, Chap. I.—**Confecturum**: i.e., Themistocles testabatur regem esse **confecturum**.—**Hoc eo valebat**: "the meaning of this was": cf. **id valeret**, Chap. II.—**Depugnandum**: note the intensive force of **de** in **depugno**, **devinco**, **decerto**.—**Angusto mari**: the bay of Salamis.

Chapter V.—**Ut posset**: distinguish in meaning from **ut potuerit**: p. 295, 2.—**Iterum**: "a second time"; **rursus**, "again," said of things repeated more than once.—**Ab eodem**: Themistocles.—**Gradu depulsus est**: "he was disconcerted," literally, "he was driven from his foothold."—**Id agi**: "that this was the intention."—**Pons**: the bridge extended from Abydos on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont to Sestos on the European, and consisted of a number of boats connected by cables.—**Quem**... **fecerat**: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Qua**: scil. **via**: so **eadem**, scil. **via**: "he returned within six months by the same route by which he had advanced." **Nepos** ("Agesilaus") makes it a year: the real time was four months. The retreat occupied 46 days.—**Sex mensibus**... **diebus triginta**: ablative of time within which: the comparative **minus** has no influence on the construction.—**Altera**: "This is a second victory."—**Quae**... **possit**: "of such importance that it may be compared to the victory of Marathon."—**Quae = talis ut**: p. 296, 5. As the land forces of the Greeks at Marathon were inferior, so the naval forces of the Greeks at Salamis were inferior.—**Tropaeo**: here = **victoria**.

Chapter VI.—**Phalerico portu**: the most ancient of the Athenian ports was Phalerum, to the east of the Piraeus. Both were connected by the "long walls" with the city.—**Triplex**: the three basins were the Piraeus proper, Munychia and Zeia.—**Moenibus circumdatus**: in the active we say either **urbem muro** (abl.) or **urbi** (dat.) **murum circumdat**: in the passive, **urbs muro** (abl.) or **urbi** (dat.) **murum circumdatur**.—**Restituit**: Themistocles both rebuilt the old walls and extended the boundaries of Athens, enclosing the newly acquired parts with new walls.—**Nacti**: from **nanciscor**.—**Qua negarent**: 296, 5, (b): "for denying":—**Quae**... **possiderent**: final: "for their enemy to acquire": p. 294, 5.—**Alio**... **atque**: "had a different object than they wished to appear: note the force of **atque** (**ac**) after words expressing *similarity* and *dis-similarity*.—**Principatu**: "the first place" (hegemony) in Greece. The Spartans had held this before the Persian wars.—**Qui**... **vetarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Desierunt**: i.e., the Athenians.—**Reliqui**... **praecepit**: construe (**Themistocles**) **praecepit ut reliqui legati tum exirent**... **interim** (**praecepit ut**) **servi**, etc.—**Satis alti tuendo**: "high enough to

protect them."—**Sive ... esset**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Ex sacellis sepulchrisque**: this is only partially true (Thucydides, I, 193, sqq.).

Chapter VII.—**Dedit operam ... duceret**: "took care to spin out the time." Note that **longius** and **longissime** may be applied to time, but not **longe**: **diu** is the regular word.—**Causam interponens**: Nepos is fond of present participles; Caesar would have said **causa interposita**.—**Sunt consecuti = advenerunt**: "arrived." The others were Aristides and Habronichus.—**Imperium**: "military power" belonged to the kings of Sparta; **potestas**, "civil power," to the Ephors.—**Quibus ... haberetur**: oblique narration, hence the subjunctive: p. 305, 2.—**Qui ... explorarent**: for mood: p. 294, 5.—**Se ... retinerent = me retinete** = imperat. of direct narration: p. 306, 3.—**Gestus ... mos**: see Vocab. under **mos**.—**Praedixit = praecepit**: in this sense **praedico** follows the construction of verbs of commanding: p. 292, 1.—**Ut ne**: for **ne**.—**Esset remissus**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Magistratus senatuumque**: referring to the board of Ephors, five in number, and to the Gerusia or Senate of Sparta, which consisted of the two kings and twenty-eight other members.—**Quod = id quod**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Deos ... penates**: **deos publicos**, the gods generally worshipped throughout Greece, as Zeus, Apollo, etc.: **deos patrios**, the guardian gods of Athens, as **Athene**, **Poseidon**: **penates**, the gods of each family.—**Quo facilius**: p. 294, 4.—**Oppositum** agrees with the predicate **propugnaculum** by attraction.—**Bis**: at Marathon 490 B.C.; at Salamis 480 B.C.—**Qui ... intuerentur = quippe qui ... intuerentur**: p. 298, 5.—**Si ... vellent**: p. 305, 2.—**Quos ... miserant**: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Se renitterent**: direct narration = **me remittite**.

Chapter VIII.—**Tamen**: *i.e.*, in spite of all his successes.—**Ob eundem timorem**: *i.e.*, of his becoming too powerful.—**Testularum suffragiis**: see Vocab. under **testula**. He refers to the ostracism of Themistocles (B.C. 471), on the charge of taking bribes from the Persians. The institution of ostracism was one of the reforms of Cleisthenes. The Athenian law provided that "at any political crisis a special meeting could be called, at which the people could declare by their vote that the presence of any individual was prejudicial to the interest of the state." If six thousand citizens voted, by writing the name of any individual on a piece of tile (**testula**, Gk. *οστρακον*), that such a person should be banished, he was required to withdraw from the boundaries of Attica, and remain in exile for ten years, or until recalled. He did not, however, lose his citizenship or property.—**Argos**: what case, gender and number? See Vocab.—**Habitatum**: supine.—**Hic**: *i.e.*, at Argos.—**Cum ... viveret**: for **cum** causal, see p. 297, 4.—**Qui ... accusarent**: for **qui** final, see p. 294, 5.—**Quod ... fecisset**: is this a charge of Nepos or of the ambassadors? p. 297, 3. What would **fecerat** mean?—**Rege Perse = rege Persarum** or **rege Persico**.—**Hoc crimine**: the charge **quod societatem ... fecisset**.—**Proditionis**: p. 281, 12.—**Quod ... videbat**: what does the indicative imply? p. 297, 3.—**Eius = Corcyrae**.—**Timere ne ... indicerent**: p. 294, 8.—**Admetum cum quo**, etc.: according to Thucydides (I, 136) Admetus had been thwarted by Themistocles in pressing some demands at Athens, so that the statement here is probably incorrect.—**In praesentia**:

see Vocab. under *praesentia*.—*Quo*: p. 294, 4.—*Religione*: "reverence."—*Receptum*: "when received."—*In fidem reciperet*: "promised him his protection": p. 299, 8.—*Quam*: = *et eam*, scil. *fidem*: "and this pledge he redeemed": see note on *quae contumelia*, Chap. I.—*Publice*: "in the name of the state."—*Consuleret sibi*: see Vocab. under *consulo*.—*Enim*: scil. *dixit*.—*Propinquo*: *i.e.*, so near Greece.—*Quod*... *esset*: the sufficiency of the guard is not vouched for by *Nepos*: p. 297, 3: probably the opinion of *Admetus* stated by the author.—*Hic*: *i.e.*, at *Pydna*.—*Escendit*: others have *ascendit*.—*Caesar* usually has *conscendit*.—*Naxum*: this island was in revolt against the confederacy of *Delos*. It was reduced by the Athenians to the position of a tributary state.—*Quis sit*: p. 291, 1.—*Pervenisset, conservasset*: oblique, p. 306, note.—*Viri*... *miseriscordia*: "pity for so illustrious a man": objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—*Ephesum*: at that time under the rule of Persia.—*Exponit*: historic present.—*Gratiam rettulit*: see Vocab. under *gratia*.

Chapter IX.—*Xerxe regnante*: as *Xerxes* reigned 485-465 B.C. and *Artaxerxes* 465-425 B.C., and as the flight of *Themistocles* was probably in 460 B.C., his withdrawal to Asia was in the reign of *Artaxerxes*, not of *Xerxes*.—*Aetate proximus de iis*: "the nearest in point of time of those": for the use of *de* see note on *de servis suis*, Chap. IV.—*Eiusdem civitatis*: *i.e.*, of Athens.—*Epistulam*: *Thucydides* (I, 137) gives the letter which is substantially the same as given by *Nepos*.—*Veni*: "I am come."—*Graiorum*: partitive genitive after *qui*: p. 280, 3.—*Idem*: "I, however": often *idem* introduces a contrast.—*Ipse*: scil. *coepit* from the *coepit* following.—*Litteris*: the statement from *nam cum to liberatus* does not occur in *Thucydides*.—*Herodotus* (viii, 110) says that the message sent to *Xerxes* by *Sicinnus* was verbal, not written.—*Id agi*: see note on *id agi*, Chap. V.—*Quam*... *adeptus*: see note on *quae contumelia* (Chap. I): for the indicative, p. 307, 13, (a).—*Quas*=*de quibus*.—*Annuum*... *tempus*, not "annual" but "a year's time."

Chapter X.—*Huius*: does not agree with *animi*.—*Admirans cupiensque*: here equivalent to *causal* clauses: "because he admired his magnanimity and wished."—*Veniam*: "permission."—*Commodius*... *verba fecisse*: "to have spoken with greater facility."—*In Perside*: scil. *terra*.—*Cum*... *esset pollicitus*: for *cum* causal, see p. 297, 4.—*Illud*: "the following," referring to the clause *illum*... *oppressurum*.—*Asiam*: *i.e.*, as if to the Roman province of Asia, which comprised *Caria*, *Lydia*, *Mysia*, and *Phrygia* except *Lycaonia*.—*Magnesiae*: this was *Magnesia* on the *Maeander*, in *Caria*.—*Another Magnesia* was in Northern *Lydia*, near *Sardis*, called *Magnesia ad Sipylum*.—*Donarat*: = *donaverat*.—*Quae*... *praeberet*: for *quae* final, see p. 294, 5: so *unde*... *sumeret* and *ex qua*... *haberet*.—*Oppidum*: *i.e.*, *Magnesia*.—*In quo*: scil. *sepulchro*.—*Thucydides* (I, 138) says that the remains of *Themistocles*, according to his wish, were buried secretly in *Attica*. In the time of *Pausanias*, the tomb of *Themistocles* was pointed out near the harbour of *Piraeus*.—*Potissimum*: adverb: "above all others."—*Neque negat*: "yet admits," "without denying": literally, "but he does not deny."—*Venenum*: the common report was that his death was caused by drinking bull's blood. *Thucydides* (I, 138) says that he committed suicide.—*Quoniam*... *concederetur*: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11, note.

ARISTIDES.

Chapter I.—Themistocli: genitive with *aequalis*, "a contemporary."
—De principatu: "for the first position in the state." **—Obtrectarunt=**
obtrectaverunt: see Vocab. under *obtrecto*. **—In his:** "in the case of
 these men." **—Quanto . . . innocentiae:** "how much eloquence outweighs
 integrity": for the mood of *antestaret*: p. 291, 1: for the case of *inno-*
centiae, p. 278, 7. **—Quamquam . . . excellebat:** p. 302, 1, (a). **—Quem . . .**
audierimus: "at least of those whom we have heard of." **—Qui** consecutive
 is often used to express *limitation*; as, *quod sciam*, "As far as I know."
—Collabefactus: according to Grote, the rivalry arose from the fact that
 Aristides was opposed to the policy of Themistocles, which aimed at making
 Athens a sea-power. **—Testula illa:** note *illa*, "that well-known": see
 note on *testularum suffragiis* (Them., viii). **—Qui quidem cum intel-**
leret: "and when he observed." Note the intensive force of *quidem* after
 a relative = *ye* in Greek: for *qui cum* see note on *qui cum . . . parentibus*
 (Them., I). **—Cedens:** "as he was retiring from the struggle." **—Scriben-**
tem: "as he was writing": *i.e.*, the name of Aristides on the tablet. No
 name was officially proposed for ostracism, and the voter could write any
 name he wished. Plutarch tells the story that the man could not write,
 and asked Aristides to write his own name, which he did. **—Quod . . .**
laborasset: scil. *Aristides*: for the subjunctive see p. 307, 11, note: see
 Vocab. under *laboro*. **—Postquam . . . quam:** *quam* is regularly used for
postquam when *post* or *postquam* has just preceded. The pluperfect is
 used with *postquam* when a definite time is stated (as here, *sexto anno*);
 otherwise, the perfect indicative is used. Aristides was banished 484 B.C.,
 and recalled 480 B.C., about the time of the battle of Salamis. **—Populi**
scito: "a decree of the people" = *ψήφισμα*. The resolutions of the *plebs*
 in the *Comitia Tributa* at Rome were called *plebis scita* (*scitum*, from
scisco, to approve).

Chapter II.—Interfuit pugnae: p. 278, 7. He had no command,
 though he was one of the ten generals the following year. **—Facta est:** it
 is said that he joined the Athenian army the night before the battle. **—**
Praetor: here = *στρατηγός*, general. Contrary to usage Aristides was
 made sole commander of the Athenians at Plataeae, though Pausanias led
 the united Greeks. **—Huius imperii memoria:** "the record of this com-
 mand." **—Multa:** scil. *sunt illustria facta*, from the *illustre factum*
 before: "there are many striking instances." **—Factum est:** join with
ut summa . . . Athenienses: the treasury of the Confederacy of Delos
 was at Delos; but after the first ten years of the league (about 466 B.C.)
 it was transferred to Athens.

Chapter III.—Quos=et eos: quo: p. 294, 4. **—Ad . . . constitueret:**
 the order is: *Aristides delectus est qui constitueret quantum pecuniae*
quaeque civitas daret ad classes aedificandas exercitusque com-
parandos. *Constitueret*: p. 294, 5. **—Quantum pecuniae:** p. 280, 3. **—**
Daret: p. 291, 1. **—Qua . . . abstinencia:** abl. of quality: p. 284, 12. **—**
Quam quod: "than the fact that," a *quod*-clause used in apposition to the
 subject: p. 293, 2, top of page. **—Cum . . . praeferisset:** on *cum* (though)
 concessive, see p. 303, 5. **—Qui efferretur:** "wherewith to be buried."—

Qui: an old ablative form used in **quicum = quocum**. For the subjunctive see p. 294, 5.—**Reliquerit**: p. 295, 1.—**Ut . . . collocarentur**: according to Plutarch they received each 3,000 drachmas (about \$530 of our money).

HANNIBAL.

Chapter I.—**Verum est . . . ut . . . superarit**: the construction of **verum est ut** with the subjunctive (instead of acc. with inf.) is on the analogy of **ut** after impersonal verbs and phrases like **accidit ut, verisimile est ut, falsum est ut, etc.**—**Non est infitiandum**: scil. **nobis**: "we must not deny."—**Cum eo . . . Italia**: construe, **nam quotienscumque (Hannibal) congressus est in Italia cum eo (populo)**. This is not true, as Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus at Nola in Campania, B.C. 215.—**Nisi . . . esset**: he refers to the opposition of the peace party at Carthage which was led by Hanno.—**Videtur**: Latin prefers the personal construction with verbs of *saying, seeming, etc.*—**Ut deposuerit**: construe **ut deposuerit animam priusquam (deposuit) id, i.e., odium**.—**Qui quidem**: for *causal qui*, see p. 298, 5: "since he, indeed."—**Animo**: "in his heart," "in intention."

Chapter II.—**Ut omittam**: see Vocab. under **omitto**.—**Absens**: equivalent to a concessive clause: "though he was not with him."—**Ut . . . conatus sit**: for mood, p. 295, 1.—**Italiae**: p. 278, 6.—**Ad quem cum**: Roman ambassadors visited Antiochus at Ephesus and found Hannibal there.—**Qui . . . explorarent darentque operam**: p. 294, 5.—**Ut . . . adducerent**: cf. **in suspicionem alicui venio**, "I am suspected by some one": see Vocab. under **suspicio**. The Roman ambassadors pretended to be friends of Hannibal in order to make Antiochus distrust him.—**Tamquam . . . sentire**: "of entertaining, as though corrupted by them, opinions different from those he had before": **sentire** depends on **suspicionem**: note the force of **atque** with **alia**: see note on **alio . . . atque** (Them., Chap. VI).—**Neque . . . fecissent**: supply **cum** from the preceding: "and when they were successful in their scheme, and when Hannibal discovered it and found himself excluded from the king's private councils, then he went to the king at a time appointed."—**De fide sua**: scil. **erga regem Antiochum**: "of his loyalty to King Antiochus."—**Puerulo me**: abl. abs.: p. 284, 14.—**Iovi optimo maximo**: Nepos substitutes "Jove, the best and the greatest" for Baal, the supreme deity of the Carthaginians.—**Vellemne**: "whether I would like": dependent question: p. 291, 1.—**Ab eo petere . . . ne dubitaret**: p. 306, 3. Note that **dubito** in the sense of *hesitate* takes the infinitive: in the sense of *doubt*, if negative, it takes **quin** with subjunctive: p. 296, 6.—**Tenentem**: scil. **me**: "while I held my hand upon it." It was customary when taking a solemn oath to lay one's hands on the horns of the altar or, at least, to touch some part of it.—**In amicitia . . . fore**: = **amicum esse futurum**: "that I would never be friendly."—**Conservavi**: a pres. perfect, "I have kept."—**Reliquo tempore**: "for the rest of my life."—**Eadem mente**: abl. of quality: p. 284, 12.—**Celaris = celaveris**: fut. perf.: p. 301, 2, (2), (a): so also **posueris**.

Chapter III.—**Hac . . . aetate**: abl. of quality depending on Hannibal understood: p. 284, 12.—**Qua diximus**: = "which we have said": abl.

qual.—**Suffecto**: a magistrate was called **suffectus** who was elected to complete the unexpired term of another magistrate who had died or been deposed.—**Hoc**: Hasdrubal. He was assassinated by a Spaniard whose master had been killed by Hasdrubal.—**Delatum**: “reported.”—**Annis**: more commonly **annos**: see p. 285, 6.—**Proximo triennio**: p. 284, 2.—**Foederatam**: the Carthaginians held the part of Spain south of the Ebro; the Romans occupied the part north of the Ebro. Saguntum was south of the river, but was in alliance with Rome, which guaranteed her independence.—**Comparavit**: Hannibal rather divided his army into three parts.—**Saltum**: either “pass,” or “chain,” near the coast.—**Nemo unquam**: this is not correct, as we know that the Gauls often made inroads into the Roman territory through the Alpine passes. According to Polybius, Hannibal crossed by the Little St. Bernard Pass (**Alpes Graiae**), but Livy says he crossed by Mt. Genève (**Alpes Cottiae**).—**Alpicos**: “Alpine tribes.” The mountain villagers annoyed Hannibal in his ascent, but there was no pitched battle, as Nepos would have us believe.—**Concidit**: distinguish this in meaning and derivation from **concidit**.—**Itinera munit**: note the expression, **iter munire**, “to build a military road.”—**Ornatus**: “fully equipped.” Note the antithesis in the latter part of the sentence.

Chapter IV.—**Confluxerat . . . pepulerat**: there was no regular battle at the Rhone, though the Romans routed the Numidian cavalry which Hannibal sent out to reconnoitre.—**Clastidii**: Nepos confuses the battle of Clastidium with that at the river Ticinus. After passing the Ticinus, Hannibal took Clastidium.—**Decernit . . . dimittit**: historic presents.—**Apud Trebiam**: Scipio was not present at Trebia, for he had not yet recovered from the wound he received at the battle of Ticinus. The battle of Trebia was fought in December, 218 B.C.—**Inde**: “after that”: in the spring of 217 B.C.—**Appenninum**: scil. **montem**.—**Dextro**: scil. **oculo**: Livy says (xxii, 1) that he lost the sight of one eye completely.—**Lectica**: Livy says that he was at this time carried by the only elephant left.—**C. Flaminium**: he gave his name to the **Via Flaminia**, the great road leading north from Rome which he repaired when he was **ensor**.—**Praetorem**: C. Centenius was not **praetor** but **propraetor**.—**Obviam**: see Vocab. under **obviam**.—**Paulum**: Lucius Aemilius Paulus was wounded at Cannae, 216 B.C., and refused to save himself by flight.

Chapter V.—**Romam**: Hannibal did not march at once on Rome after the battle of Cannae. In 211 B.C., five years after the battle of Cannae, he went there and encamped for a short time on the hills around the city.—**Fabius Maximus**: appointed dictator in 217 B.C., the year before Cannae. The escape from Maximus took place in 217 B.C., not after Cannae, as Nepos states.—**Clausus**: concessive: “though enclosed.”—**Dedit verba**: see Vocab. under **do**.—**Obducta nocte**: see Vocab. under **obduco**.—**M. Minucius Rufus**: the dilatory policy of Fabius caused the Romans to appoint Minucius, the Master of the Horse, to a command equal to that of the dictator. Half of the army was given him, and he was drawn into an engagement with Hannibal, in which he was saved only by the timely arrival of Fabius. He then resigned his command.—**Ti. Sempronius Gracchus**: this happened in 212 B.C. Marcellus, not Gracchus, was consul at this time. The correct expression is **bis consulem**, “who had

been twice consul," not *iterum consulem*, "who had been consul a second time": so also *quintum* (adv.), not *quinquies consulem*. He was cut off by Mago, at Campi Veteres, in Lucania, near Beneventum. M. Claudius Marcellus, the conqueror of Syracuse, was slain, not after, but during his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., near Venusia.—*Sustulit*: from *tollo*.—*Pari modo*: by getting him into an ambush in the neighborhood of Venusia.—*Longum est*: "it would be tedious." The indicative is often used in expressions of *necessity*, *propriety* for the subjunctive as apodosis of an implied condition as here = *si ennumerarem*. . . *longum esset*: cf. p. 301, 3.

Chapter VI.—*Hinc*: from Italy.—*Defensum*: p. 289, 1. This was in 203 B.C., when the Romans, having conquered Spain and confined Hannibal to Bruttium and Lucania, crossed over to Africa and threatened Carthage.—*Fugarat* = *fugaverat*.—*In praesentiarum*: see Vocab. under *praesentia*. *Quo . . . congregaretur*: p. 294, 4.—*Condiciones non convenerunt*: "the terms were not agreed upon." We might also say *de condicionibus non convenerunt*, "they did not agree on the terms."—*Incredibile dictu*: p. 175. The statement here is absurd. It is not known where Zama was. Polybius says it was five days' march west of Carthage. Others say that Hadrumetum and Zama were about one hundred miles apart.—*Biduo*: scil. *spatio*.—*Oppressit*: "crushed." *Paucis diebus*: p. 284, 2.

Chapter VII.—*Nihilo secius*: see Vocab. under *nihilo*.—*Resque . . . gessit*: "and he carried on the war."—*Consules*: the Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls. These were in office B.C. 200.—*His magistratibus*: either abl. of time *when*, or abl. absolute.—*Qui . . . agerent*: p. 294, 5.—*Quod . . . fecissent . . . donarent . . . peterent*: the subjunctives show that the words of the ambassadors were used: p. 297, 3. Note that we say either *donare coronam homini* or *donare corona hominem*.—*Cum iis = secum*: so *obsides eorum* = *obsides sui*.—*Ut . . . Fregellis essent*: "might be allowed to live at Fregellae."—*Ex senatus consulto*: the presiding magistrate was said *senatum consulere* hence "an order of the senate" was called *senatus consultum*.—*Rogarent . . . foret . . . haberent*: subjunctive of dependent clauses of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—*Rex*: two magistrates called *Suffetes* were elected at Carthage for a fixed period. The word *Suffetes* is connected with the Hebrew word *Shophetim*, "judges." Nepos translates it by *reges*.—*Vectigalibus*: the *vectigalia* were taxes raised from conquered lands, crown lands, imports and exports.—*Quae . . . penderetur*: p. 296, 5; so also *reponeretur*.—*Senatus daretur*: *dare senatum*, "to grant a hearing in the senate"; for subjunctive, p. 299, 8.—*Quae comprehenderent*: p. 294, 5.—*Si possent consequi*: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—*Publicarunt* = *publicaverunt*: all moneys realized from goods confiscated became a part of the state treasury (*publicum aerarium*).

Chapter VIII.—*Consulibus*: 193 B.C.—*Africam accessit*: "landed in Africa in the territory of the Cyrenaeans."—*Si . . . inducerentur*: "in the hope that they might," etc.: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—*Antiochi spe fiduciaque*: oblique genitive, p. 281, 7: "by their hope in, and reliance upon, Antiochus."—*Cui . . . persuaserat*: the truth is that Hannibal had tried to persuade Antiochus to invade Italy and had failed.—*Huc*: to Cyrene. *Desperatis rebus*: see Vocab. under

desperare.—**Memoria**: "tradition": the usual account is that he was wounded in 203 B.C. in Cisalpine Gaul, and that he died of his wound on his return to Africa.—**Interfectum**: note the *zeugma*: "he perished by shipwreck and was assassinated by his slaves."—**Propius Tiberi**: **prope** is not usual with a dative in good Latin, the regular construction being the accusative or the ablative with **ab**: as, **tam prope urbem**, or **ab urbe**, "so near the city." So also **propius** and **proxime**.—**Thermopylis**: Antiochus was defeated there by the Romans (191 B.C.). He then withdrew to Asia, and was in the following year defeated at Magnesia in Lydia.—**Etsi**... **videbat**: p. 303, 2.—**Praefuit**... **navibus**: p. 278, 7.—**Iisque**: scil. **navibus**: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quo**... **superior**: *i.e.*, **ipse fuit superior in eo cornu in quo rem gessit**.

Chapter IX.—**Fugato**: at Magnesia (190 B.C.).—**Verens ne dederetur**: p. 294, 8.—**Si**... **potestatem**: "if he (Hannibal) had given them power over him": *i.e.*, "if he had fallen into their hands": p. 301, (3), (6).—**Quo**... **conferret**: p. 291, 1.—**Nisi quid providisset**: **quid**=**aliquid**: "unless he took some precaution": p. 306, note.—**Illorum**... **his**: both pronouns refer to the Gortyni.—**Statuas aeneas**: perhaps hollow with movable heads.—**Domi**: p. 285, 3.

Chapter X.—**Suis rebus**: "his property".—**Poenus**: *i.e.*, Hannibal.—**Apud quem**: "at whose court."—**Eodem animo**: p. 284, 12.—**Minus**... **robustum**: "not strong enough." **Minus** + adj. = "not."—**Utrobique**=**terra marique**.—**Quem si removisset**: scil. Hannibal: p. 306, note.—**Erant decreturi**: "they had intended to decide the matter": p. 290, 3, middle of page.—**Imperavit colligi**: the infinitive passive is sometimes used with **impero**. What is the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—**Cum effecisset**: "when he had collected": p. 300, 10.—**A ceteris**... **defendere**: "to be content only to defend themselves from the others." Note that **habeo** is used with an adverb. The expression is equivalent to **esse** with an adjective: cf. $\epsilon\chi\omega$ in Greek.—**Id**... **consecuturos**: scil. **esse dixit**.—**In qua**... **veheretur**: p. 271, 1.—**Magno iis**... **praemio**: p. 279, 12.—**Fore**=**id futurum esse**.

Chapter XI.—**Deducitur**: see Vocab. under **deduco**.—**Quarum**: scil. **classium**.—**Priusquam**... **daretur**: p. 299, 7.—**Caduceo**: a herald's staff was originally an olive branch twined with garlands. Afterwards the garlands were changed to serpents. **Hermes** (Mercury) as the messenger of the gods is represented with a **caduceus**.—**Mittit**: historic present: hence the imperfect subjunctive **faceret**: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Quod**... **dubitabat**: p. 297, 3.—**Quin**... **esset scriptum**: p. 296, 6.—**Soluta**: an ordinary letter would consist of two wax tablets fastened together with a string.—**Quae**... **pertinerent**: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—**Posset**: p. 297, 4.—**Conici coepta sunt**: the passive of **coepi** is used when the dependent inf. is passive.—**Nova re**: "by the novelty of the attack."—**Consilio**: "by stratagem."

Chapter XII.—**Dum**... **geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Patres conscripti**: "the Senators": so called because the Senate probably consisted originally of the heads of families making up the citizens of Rome: **conscripti**= "enrolled in the list of citizens."—**Qui**... **existimarent**: **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Qui**...

...peterent: qui final: p. 294, 5.—Dederet: supply *ut* before *dederet* from the preceding *ne*.—*Ipsi* . . . *comprehenderent*: for *imperat.* of direct: = *vos, si potestis, comprehendite*.—*Inventuros*: scil. *dixit eos esse*.—*Ei* . . . *muneri*: p. 279, 12.—*Ne usu veniret*: literally, "lest it should come in actual experience": *usu* is an ablative of manner, or, if an old form for *usui*, a dative of purpose.—*Puer ab ianua*: "the door-boy," "the slave at the door": cp. Horace, *Od.* I, 29, 7; *puer ex aula*, "the hall-boy," "the waiter."—*Consuerat* = *consueverat*.

Chapter XIII.—*Acquievit*: a euphemism for *mortuus est*.—*Septuagesimo*: Hannibal was born in 247 B.C., and would have been 63, 64, 65 years of age at these dates, according as the consuls mentioned held office 183, 182, 181 respectively.—*Annali suo*: scil. *libro*: "in his chronicle."—*Nonnihil temporis*: partitive genitive: "some time."—*Ad Rhodios*: "addressed to the Rhodians."—*Huius*: Hannibal.

C
of,
cons
caus
of in
distr
wor
p. 60
pres
Don
see V
was
licus
mark
oper
time
"on
mam
tum.
"as
"tra
civiliz
—Qu
they
duxe
imper
expec
—Ve

Ch
torib
habe
reason
qualia
reason
Vocab
Summ
ments
vestig
cause.
pauci

Ch
indiv
side o

NOTES ON CAESAR.

BOOK IV.

Chapter I.—**Qui fuit annus**: "Which was the year of the consulship of," etc.—**Consulibus**: abl. of quality: literally, "of Pompey and Crassus consuls."—**Quo**: "into which."—**Quod**: "the fact that," explaining **causa transeundi**: p. 293, 2.—**Complures annos**: p. 284, 4.—**Bello**: abl. of instr.: p. 283, 5.—**Agricultura**: p. 282, 1.—**Pagos**: "Cantons," country districts of undefined extent: cp. French *pays*. Trace the origin of our words *pagan*, *heathen*.—**Singula millia**: "a thousand from each canton": p. 69, 8, (a).—**Qui . . . manserunt . . . alunt**: the perfect combined with the present denotes repetition: "The rest who remain at home, maintain."—**Domi**: p. 286, top of page.—**Anno post**: p. 284, 3.—**Ratio atque usus**: see Vocab. under **ratio**.—**Agri . . . nihil**: p. 280, 3. The **ager privatus** was "the land belonging to the individual," as opposed to the **ager publicus**, "the land belonging to the state": **ager separatus** was "land marked out by boundaries."—**Longius** = **diutius** (see note on **dedit operam**, Nepos, Them. VII): **longe** may be said of space, but not of time: though **longius**, and **longissime** may be said of both.—**Fumento**: "on corn": **vivo** like **vescor** takes the abl. of means: p. 283, 10.—**Maximam partem**: adverbial acc.—**Multum sunt**: see Vocab. under **multum**.—**A pueris**: "from boyhood": cp. ἐκ παιδων.—**Nullo . . . assuefacti**: "as they are trained to no systematic performance of duty": literally, "trained to no set duty or system." Caesar refers to the restraints of civilized society, education, etc.: **assuefacio** is used also with the dative.—**Quod . . . faciant**: virtual oblique narration: "because, as they say, they do so."—**Immani . . . magnitudine**: p. 284, 12.—**In eam . . . adduxerunt**: "they have brought themselves up to such hardy habits": the imperfect subjunctive in **habent** . . . **lavarentur** is irregular; we should expect the pres.: p. 295, 2.—**Locis frigidissimis**: see Vocab. under **loca**.—**Vestitus**: p. 280, 3.

Chapter II.—**Mercatoribus . . . habeant**: the construction is, **mercatoribus est aditus ad eos** (i.e., Germanos) **magis eo (consilio) ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quae ceperint bello**: eo: "for this reason."—**Quibus**: final = **ut eis**: p. 294, 5.—**Quae . . . ceperint = talia qualia ceperunt**: p. 296, 5.—**Quam quod = quam eo quod**, "than for the reason that": for subjunctive **desiderent**: p. 297, 3.—**Quin etiam**: see Vocab. under **quin**.—**Impenso . . . pretio**: see Vocab. under **impensus**.—**Summi . . . laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Equestribus proeliis**: "in cavalry engagements."—**Pedibus**: "on foot."—**Eodem . . . vestigio**: see Vocab. under **vestigium**.—**Eorum moribus**: "according to their notions": abl. of cause.—**Inertius**: "more indolent" or "more unskilful."—**Quamvis pauci**: "however few."

Chapter III.—**Publice**: "as a nation" opposed to **privatim**, "as an individual."—**Quam latissime**: p. 143, note.—**A suis finibus**: "on the side of their territories": so below a **Suebis**.—**Hoc . . . posse**: "by this

(they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of **significari** are the words **magnum**... **posse**.—**Agri**: subject of **dicuntur**: note the personal use: see note on **videtur** (Nep., Hannibal, Chap. I).—**Succedunt**: see Vocab. under **succedo**.—**Ut**... **Germanorum**: see Vocab. under **captus**.—**Paulo**: join with **humaniores**. Note that **propterea quod** like the simple **quod** takes the indicative when stating facts: p. 297, 3.—**Moribus assuefacti**: "made familiar with Gallic habits": see note on **nullo**... **assuefacti** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—**Cum**: "although," answered by **tamen**: p. 303, 5.—**Ac**... **redegerunt**: "and they reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength," *i.e.*, than they originally had. The distinction between **multum** and **multo** is this: the former is used with verbs, and the latter with comparative adjectives and adverbs.

Chapter IV.—**Causa**: "condition."—**Multis**... **locis**: **in** is omitted with **locus** when qualified with an adjective.—**Vi contendere**: "to dispute a passage by force."—**Reverti**: note that the forms of **revertor** from the present are passive in form, and from the perfect are active.—**Tridui**: scil. **spatii**: p. 280, 4.—**Equitatu**: abl. of instrument or of accompaniment with **cum** omitted.—**Priusquam**... **certior fieret**: p. 299, 8.—**Reliquam partem**: p. 284, 4.—**Eorum copii**: "with their supplies": *i.e.*, the supplies of the Menapii.

Chapter V.—**Quod sunt**: p. 297, 3.—**Student**: see Vocab. under **studeo**.—**Nihil**... **existimavit**: "he thought that no confidence at all should be placed in them": **nihil**=an emphatic **non**.—**Est**... **consuetudinis**: "now this is a characteristic of Gallic custom": p. 279, 2.—**Uti**... **cogant**... **quaerant**... **circumstat**... **cogant**: explanatory of **hoc**.—**Audierit aut cognoverit**: indirect questions, p. 291, 1. The latter verb implies personal experience. Note the change in number in **circumstat** and **cogant**. The questions are put by the individuals comprising the **vulgus**. Decline **vulgus**: p. 230, foot note.—**Rebus**: "the facts" they hear from the merchants.—**Auditionibus**: "the hearsays."—**In vestigio**: see Vocab. under **vestigium**.—**Quorum**... **poenitere necesse est**: "of which they are bound to repent at once": **eos poenitere** is the subject of **necesse est**, literally, "of which that they repent is necessary."—**Plerique**: scil. **viatores**.—**Ficta respondeant**: depending on **cum**: see Vocab. under **fictus**.

Chapter VI.—**Qua**... **cognita**: the relative serves as the connecting link of the two chapters: "now as he knew this custom": see note on **quae contumelia** (Nepos, Them., Chap. I).—**Ne**... **occurreret**... **proficiscitur**: note that **proficiscitur** is a historic present, and has the force of a secondary tense in sequence: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Ea**... **facta**: scil. **fuisse**.—**Uti**... **discederent**... **quae postulassent**: p. 305, 2.—**Fore parata**: fore with a perf. part. pass. in indirect represents a fut. perf. in direct.—**Qua spe**: "and by hope of this": cp. **hoc metu** (Caes., B. V, Chap. XIX).—**Clientes**: "dependents" on certain persons belonging to patrician families of Rome who acted as **patroni** or counsellors in the law courts for the **clientes**. Hence perhaps our present meaning. Caesar means 'hat the Treveri were the protectors of the Eburones and

cannot with-
magnum...
see note on
b. under suc-
ulo: join with
od takes the
cti: "made
ti (Caes., B.
p. 303, 5.—
less import-
tion between
and the latter

in is omitted
"to dispute
tor from the
e.—Tridui:
f accompani-
p. 299, 8.—
r supplies":

ocab. under
dence at all
. consuetu-
2.—Uti...
y of hoc.—
e latter verb
umstat and
the vulgus.
ey hear from
see Vocab.
which they
of necesse
rique: scil.
ocab. under

necting link
te on quae
proficisci-
force of a
facta: scil.
2.—Fore
a fut. perf.
etu (Caes.,
persons be-
counsellors
t meaning
urones and

Condrusi.—**Ea quae cognoverat**: the relative is merely explanatory to **ea**, and not a part of Caesar's thoughts; hence, the indicative: p. 307, 13, (a), (b).—**Imperato**: "levied": abl. absolute. What two meanings has **impero**?

Chapter VII.—Quibus in locis: Caesar often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause.—**Haec**: here refers to what comes after: "as follows."
—**Neque priores ... inferre**: in direct speech we should have: **nos Germani neque priores ... inferimus**.—**Lacessantur**: a reported speech generally depends on an historical tense and the subjunctives are usually imperfect or pluperfect. Here Caesar uses the present or perfect subjunctive (**possederint**) as more vivid.—**Quin ... contendant**: "still (they say) they do not decline to fight, if they are attacked."—**Quin**: p. 294, 7.
—**Resistere neque deprecari**: the infinitives are explanatory of **consuetudo**, and might have been joined by **ut** with the subjunctive: p. 293, 3.
—**Attribuant ... patiantur**: what would these be in direct narration? : p. 306, 3.—**Possent**: "with whom not even the gods themselves had ever been able to cope."—**Non limits superare**: "whom they can fail to conquer."

Chapter VIII.—Quae visum est: scil. **respondere**: literally, "which it seemed good to reply."—**Si ... remanent**: the tense is due to **respondit**: p. 307, 8. The succeeding present subjunctives give vividness to the narrative.—**Verum**: "fair," "just."—**Qui ... potuerint**: the perfect gives vividness and includes the present: "since they (hitherto) have not been capable, and are not (now) capable": **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Tantae praesertim**: **praesertim** strengthens a previous statement by adding a fresh reason: "which can be granted rightly, and that too, to so vast a horde."

Chapter IX.—Post diem tertium: "the third day from that time": "the next day but one," as the Romans reckoned inclusively.—**Propius se**: see note on **propius Tiberi** (Nepos, Hannibal, Chap. VIII).—**Ne ... quidem**: *i.e.*, no more than their other demands.—**Aliquot diebus ante**: abl. of difference: so also with **post**: p. 283, 7; 284, 3.—**Interponi**: "was introduced": **interponere** means, "to throw an obstacle in the way": cf. **hoc decreto interposito**: "this decree having put an end to the discussion."

Chapter X.—Mosa ... influit: the reading in the text is Kraner's suggestion. At present both the Meuse and the Rhine flow into the German Ocean, and are connected by the Waal. The Meuse can be said to flow into the Rhine only by regarding the Meuse when joining the Waal as "flowing into the Rhine."—**Insulam ... Batavorum**: the word **Batavi** still exists in the form **Betuwe** (meaning "good meadow"), a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine.—**Ex Leopontiis**: "in the country of the Leopontii": the name of the people is put here, as we often find in Caesar, for the country. The source of the Rhine is in Mount St. Gothard.—**Longo spatio**: "after a long distance": abl. abs.—**Citatus fertur**: "flows with a swift stream."—**Sunt qui ... existimantur**: note the indicative with **sunt qui**, referring to a definite antecedent. Distinguish in

meaning the expressions *sunt qui credunt* and *sunt qui credant*: p. 296, 5, (a).—*Piscibus . . . ovis . . . vivere*: see note on *frumento vivunt* (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—*Capitibus*: here *caput* is "the mouth" of a river: other writers use it in the sense of "the source."

Chapter XI.—*Amplius . . . millibus*: abl. of extent or difference: p. 283, 7; 286, 3. Note that *amplius*, *plus*, *minus* in such cases have no influence on the construction.—*Ut . . . constitutum*: see Caes., B. IV, Chap. IX.—*Uti . . . praemitteret*: the construction is *uti praemitteret (nuntios) ad eos equites qui antecessissent agmen*: the *qui* clause may be either a purpose relative clause (p. 294, 5), or a consequence relative clause (p. 296, 5).—*Pugna prohiberet*: p. 282, 1.—*Potestatem faceret*: see Vocab. under *potestas*.—*Fidem fecisset*: "would give them assurance": note that the verb either agrees with the nearest nominative or the expression *principes ac senatus* may be taken together as equivalent to a noun of multitude.—*Quae . . . ferretur*: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—*Daret*: equivalent to imperative *da* in direct narration: p. 306, 3.—*Eodem illo pertinere*: "pointed in that same direction": see Vocab. under *pertineo*.—*Eodem illo pertinere* is explained by the substantival clause *ut*.—*Qui abessent*: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—*Convenirent*=*convenite* of the direct: p. 306, 3.—*Mittit*: scil. *nuntios*: note the historical present as seen in the sequence of the subsequent verbs: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—*Qui nuntiarent*: p. 294, 5.—*Et . . . sustinerent*: scil. *hostes*: "and to hold the enemy in check."—*Quoad . . . accessisset*: p. 306, note.

Chapter XII.—*At*: see note on *at* (Nepos, Them., Chap. III).—*Ubi primum*: p. 298, 2.—*Quorum . . . quinque millium numerus*: note the double genitive after *numerus*: for *quinque millium*: p. 280, 4.—*Cum . . . haberent*: p. 297, 4.—*Octingentos*: see note on *amplius . . . millibus* (Caes., B. IV, Chap. XI).—*Quod ii . . . redierant*: p. 297, 3.—*Nihil timentibus nostris*: *nihil* may be taken as either the object of *timentibus*, or as an emphatic *non*.—*Indutiis*: dat. of purpose: p. 279, 12.—*Rursus resistentibus*: scil. *nostris*: "and when our men had come once more to a halt."—*Consuetudine sua*=*ex consuetudine sua*: "according to their custom."—*Subfossis . . . deiectis*: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time: "after stabbing our horses from beneath, and, in consequence, unhorsing many of our men."—*Deiectis*: scil. *de equis*.—*Prius . . . quam . . . venissent*: the object of the Romans would be to reach the main body of the army: p. 299, 8.—*Interficiuntur*: historical present.—*Genere natus*: p. 282, 3.—*Quoad potuit*: p. 298, 3.—*Cecidisset*: distinguish from *cecidisset*.—*Id*: "this mishap."

Chapter XIII.—*Neque iam*: "no longer."—*Sibi*: p. 279, 11.—*Qui . . . intulissent*: dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2: so *augerentur . . . reverteretur*.—*Summae dementiae esse*: "was the height of madness," predicate genitive: p. 279, 2.—*Quantum . . . auctoritatis*: p. 280, 3.—*Essent consecuti*: p. 291, 1.—*Nihil spatii*=*nihil temporis*: p. 280, 3.—*Ne . . . praetermitteret*: explanatory of *consilio*: "not to let pass a battle day," i.e., a favorable chance for bringing on a battle.—*Pugnae* may be either (1) a genitive like *tempus committendi proelii*, or (2) a dative of purpose.—*Quod*: explaining *res*; "the fact that."—*Postridie*

ant: p. 296,
vunt (Caes.,
of a river:

difference:
ases have no
es., B. IV,
raemitteret
qui clause
consequence
Potestatem
would give
est nomina-
together as
al oblique:
ion: p. 306,
see Vocab.
substantial
venirent=
note the his-
p. 290, 2,
rent: scil.
ccessisset:

(II).—Ubi
: note the
—Cum ...
... millibus
3.—Nihil
of timenti-
279, 12.—
come once
"accord-
solute are
th, and, in
equis.—
be to reach
al present.
ecidisset:

—Qui ...
so anger-
height of
coritatis:
temporis:
not to let
—Pug-
or (2) a
Postridie

eius diei mane: "early next day."—**Postridie**=**posteri die**: a locative of time.—**Simul ... simul**=**et ... et**: "both ... and."—**Sui purgandi causa**: "to clear themselves." Notice that though **sui** is plur., **purgandi** is sing.—**Quod ... commisissent**: "for having contrary to what had been agreed upon and to what they themselves had asked, begun a battle on the day previous": the subjunctives are those of oblique narration, representing what the Germans said: p. 305, 2. With **contra atque**: cf. **alter ac**. We should have expected **contra id quod esset dictum**.—**De indutiis fallendo impetrarent**: "that they might obtain their object in regard to the truce by deception": this final clause depends on **venerunt**, and is in apposition to **sui purgandi causa**, which is equivalent to an **ut**-clause.—**Oblatos**: scil. **fuisse**.

Chapter XIV.—Acie triplici instituta: "drawing up his men in a triple line." The whole legion was so arranged in three lines that intervals of the first line were covered by the second. The first line consisted of four cohorts, the second of three and the third of three. Each interval was equal to the front of a cohort. The men stood usually ten deep, so that a cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty men, according to the number in a legion. The cohorts were arranged thus:

<u>4</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>
	<u>7</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>5</u>
<u>10</u>		<u>9</u>	<u>8</u>

Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4 would first engage the enemy, and if they failed, or were tired, 5, 6, 7 would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the first line would reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve and only brought into action if the first two lines proved unsuccessful.—**Millium**: scil. **passuum**: an omission for the sake of euphony, and only used with the form **millium**.—**Prius ... quam ... possent**: the subjunctive implies Caesar's *purpose* in making the march: p. 299, 8.—**Discessu suorum**: scil. **principum**: "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."—**Perturbantur**: equivalent to **perturbantur dubitatione**: "were distracted with doubt": an historic present as shown by sequence of tense.—**Ne ... an ... an**: for **utrum ... an ... an**.—**Uno loco**: for omission of **in**, see note on **multis locis**, B. IV, Chapter IV.—**Puerorum mulierumque**: "consisting of women and children": genitive of definition: p. 281, 8.

Chapter XV.—Suos: their wives and children.—**Ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni**: either where the Waal (which flows into the Meuse) leaves the Rhine, or where the Waal joins the Meuse.—**Fuga desperata**: Cicero uses **desperare fugam**; Caesar always **desperare de fuga** except in the ablative absolute.—**Ex tanti belli timore**: "freed from the alarm of so serious a war"; or concessive, "great though the alarm of the war had been."—**Quadringentorum ... millium**: gen. of description.—**Apud eum** = **in castris**: "with him."

Chapter XVI.—Iustissima: "most valid."—**Quod** explains *illa*: "namely that."—**Suis ... voluit**: "he wished them to have fears for the

safety of their own dominions as well."—**Timere** may take a dative of the person or thing for the safety of which fear is entertained.—**Quoque** *i.e.*, as well as make others fear for their safety.—**Accessit quod**: "there was added the fact that": p. 293, 2.—**Qui . . . postularent**: p. 294, 5.—**Intulissent**: after the virtual oblique narration implied in **postularent**: p. 305, 2.—**Dederent**: **ut** is often omitted after verbs of *command*.—**Cur . . . postulare?**: "Why should he demand that anything should be under his rule or authority?"—**Imperii . . . potestatis**: scil. **esse** = "belong to." The former refers to *military* authority, which was practically unlimited outside the city; the latter is *official* power delegated to one by virtue of his office.—**Quod . . . premerentur**: the subjunctive of oblique narration introduced by **orabant**: "because (as they alleged) they were being hard pressed": p. 307, 11.—**Si . . . prohiberetur**: "if he was prevented from doing so by being engrossed with political affairs": with **prohibeo** we have **quominus**, **ne** or the infinitive as here: p. 294, 6.—**Transportaret**: *i.e.* (**Ubi orabant ut**) **exercitum transportaret**: "(the **Ubi** asked that) he would merely lead his army across the Rhine," *i.e.*, make merely a military demonstration.—**Id . . . futurum**: "that this would be enough to aid them (for the present), and to give them hope for the future."—**Sibi = Ubiis**.—**Ad**: "as regards."—**Opinionem eius exercitus**: **exercitus** = objective genitive to **opinionem**: "the opinion that others had of his army."—**Nomen atque opinionem** = "prestige."—**Ariovisto pulso et . . . facto**: translate the participles by nouns; "by the defeat of Ariovistus and the occurrence of the very recent battle."—**Opinionem et amicitia populi Romani**: **populi Romani** is objective genitive to **opinionem** and subjective to **amicitia**: "by the reputation the Roman people had and the friendship they had for the Roman people."—**Tuti**: passive in meaning from **tueor**: occasionally deponent verbs have perf. participles in a passive sense.

Chapter XVIII.—**Diebus decem quibus**: "in ten days from the time that timber began to be collected": abl. of time within which: p. 284, 2.—**Coepta erat**: p. 146, 4.—**Quibus . . . petentibus**: "to whose request for peace and friendship": = **quibus quum peterent**.—**Fuga comparata, hortantibus iis**: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate; the latter depends on the former: "had made preparations for flight owing to the advice of those of the Tencteri and Usipetes."—**Finibus suis excederant**: **excedo** may take either acc. or abl., or abl. with **ex**.—**In solitudinem ac silvas**: a hendiadys: "into the uninhabited forest."

Chapter XIX.—**Succisis**: "cut down and destroyed": it was now some time before harvest. Caesar did not wish so much to use the corn as to prevent the **Ubi** from obtaining it.—**Uti . . . demigrarent**: depends on the idea of *ordering* contained in **nuntios dimisisse**: "telling them to": p. 292, 1. Translate this into direct narration.—**Hunc**: "that this was the rendezvous."—**Delectum**: here is "a place for holding a levy," a rendezvous. Usually it means "a levy."—**Medium . . . regionum**: "that lies almost in the centre of the districts that the Suebi held."—**Quarum rerum causa**: "for which." Note the repetition of the antecedent with the relative.—**Ut . . . liberaret**: these clauses are in apposition to **omnibus rebus his**.—**Satis . . . profectum**: scil. **fuisse**: "that enough had been successfully accomplished."

Chapter XX.—*Exigua . . . reliqua*: abl. abs.: "when but little of the summer was left."—*Ad septentriones vergit*: see Vocab. under *vergo*.—*Quod . . . intellegebat*: p. 297, 3.—*Si . . . deficeret*: so *adisset*, *perspexisset*, *cognovisset*: p. 305, 2.—*Magno . . . adisset*: "he thought it would be of great advantage to him merely to have visited the island": the clauses *si*, *adisset*, *perspexisset*, *cognovisset* are subjects of *fore*.—*Sibi usui*: p. 279, 12.—*Quisquam . . . quicquam*: p. 132, 3.—*Contra Gallias*: the divisions of Gaul: Belgica, Celtica, Aquitania.—*Incolerent*: p. 291, 1. So also *haberent*, *uterentur*, *essent*.

Chapter XXI.—*Priusquam . . . faceret*: "before he made the attempt," "before running the risk": p. 299, 8.—*In Morinos*: see note on *ex Lepontiis*, B. IV, Chap. X.—*Inde*: the country of the *Morini*: see Vocab. under *Morini*.—*Qui polliceantur*: p. 294, 5.—*Dare*: there is usually a future infin. with an accusative of a noun or pronoun with verbs of *promising*, etc., p. 289, 4.—*Ut . . . permanerent*: "to adhere to that policy."—*Commium*: the *Atrebates* were defeated at the *Sambre* (B. II, 23). Some escaped and settled in *Berkshire*. *Commius* was probably selected owing to the fact that being king on the continent he would have more influence over his countrymen in Britain.—*Magni . . . habebatur*: p. 280, 5.—*Huic . . . civitates*: the order is *imperat huic (ut) adeat civitates quas possit (adire)*: for the omission of *ut*, see note on *dederent*, B. IV, Chap. XVI.—*Possit*: virtual oblique.—*Fidem sequantur*: "be loyal to": literally, "support the protection of (*i.e.*, given by) the Roman people."—*Quantum*: neut. sing. adj. with partitive genitive="as much of opportunity as," etc. Translate: "as far as he had an opportunity."—*Qui . . . auderet*: causal: "inasmuch as he did not dare": p. 298, 5.—*Revertitur . . . renuntiat*: historical presents, as seen by the sequence in *perspexisset*: p. 290, 2, at foot of page.

Chapter XXII.—*Dum . . . moratur*: p. 299, 4.—*Qui . . . excusarent*: p. 294, 5.—*Superioris temporis*: p. 280, 4.—*Quod . . . fecissent*: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—*Populo Romano*: dative, "against the Roman people": probably in imitation of the Greek *παρὰ τοὺς Ῥωμαίους*.—*Seque . . . pollicerentur*: construe *legatique venerunt qui pollicerentur se facturos (esse) ea quae in . . . erasset*: the pluperfect of the indirect corresponds to the fut. perf. of the direct narration: "whatever you shall have ordered us to do, we will do."—*Has . . . occupationes*: "this business consisting of such trifles": p. 281, 8.—*Britanniae*: = *bello Britannico*: "to his expedition against Britain."—*Quibus* refers to the hostages: *eos* to the *Morini*.—*In fidem*: see Vocab. under *fides*.—*Quod . . . existimabat*: "which amount he supposed was enough": we should have expected *quas*, but *quod* is attracted into the gender and number of *satis*, used here as an indeclinable noun.—*Quod . . . habebat*: "all the war ships he had": partitive genitive.—*Ab millibus passuum octo*: "eight miles off": distance is expressed in *Caesar* by accusative, ablative, or ablative with *ab* as here.—*Quominus*: = *ut eo minus*: p. 294, 6.

Chapter XXIII.—*Tempestatem*: "weather," good or bad, according to the context.—*Tertia vigilia*: the night was divided into *four* watches. *Caesar* started (with the infantry) from *Port Itius*, which some say was *Boulogne*; others, *Wissant*. The *portus superior* was *Ambleteuse*. He

landed on the 27th of August, probably at Deal.—**Solvit**: scil. *naves*: “he set sail.”—**Cum . . . esset administratum**: “since this was somewhat slowly carried out.”—**Id** refers to the embarkation of the cavalry.—**Hora diei circiter quarta**: about 9.45 a.m., as the first hour at this season was at 5.3 a.m. and sun-set at 7.—**Expositas**: here for *collocatas*, *instructas*.—**Ita** join with *continebatur*: “was so closely bounded by precipitous mountains.”—**In litus**: “to the beach,” “to the water’s edge.” The cliffs of Dover answer the description.—**Ad egrediendum**: scil. *ex navibus*: “for disembarking.”—**Dum . . . convenirent**: idea of *expectation* is implied: p. 299, 6.—**Monuitque . . . administrarentur**: the first and second *ut* = “as”: the third is closely connected with *quae*; hence *ut quae* = *quippe quae*, so that *ut* must be understood with *administrarentur*: “and he enjoined upon them that everything should be carried out at the slightest hint and at the right time, as the mode of warfare, and, most of all, the marine service required, subject as it was to sudden and uncertain changes”: for the omission of *ut* see note on *dederent* (B. IV, Chap. XVI).—**Aperto ac plano litore**: see note above on *tertia vigilia*.

Chapter XXIV.—**At**: see note on Them., Chap. III.—**Quo genere**: scil. *militum*: p. 283, 10. Tacitus (Agr. 12), however, says: *in pedite robur*: *quaedam nationes in curru proeliantur*.—**Prohibebant**: a *conative* imperfect: “tried to prevent.”—**Quod . . . poterant**: p. 297, 3.—**Militibus**: join with *disiliendum erat*: “the soldiers had to leap down.”—**Autem**: the order of the clauses is inverted; *cum illi*, “whereas they (the Britons)” should come first and should be answered by *militibus autem*: “the soldiers on the other hand.”—**Ignotis locis, impeditis manibus**: abl. abs.: “in ignorance of the locality, and with hands encumbered.”—**Ex arido**: “from the dry land,” “standing on dry ground.”—**Omnino**: with *imperiti*: “totally unpractised in this kind of warfare”: p. 281, 9.—**Non . . . utebantur**: “did not show the same spirit and eagerness as they had been accustomed to display in engagements with foot soldiers.” The Romans had not before this been trained to fight while wading in the water or against warriors mounted on chariots.

Chapter XXV.—**Inusitatio**: “somewhat novel.”—**Motus ad usum expeditior**: “and their movement in actual service less difficult,” *i.e.*, than those of the merchantmen. The war ship (*navis longa*) though longer than the merchantman (*navis oneraria*) was not so wide, and could be more easily handled because it was of lighter burden. It was fitted with oars as well as sails.—**Ad latus apertum**: “on the right flank of the enemy”: the shield protected the left side.—**Usui nostris**: p. 279, 12.—**Paulum modo**: “only a little.”—**Atque** at the beginning of a new sentence is rare, and usually makes a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: “and then.”—**Qui . . . aquilam ferebat** = *aquilifer*: “the eagle bearer.” The eagle (*aquila*) was the standard of the Roman legion, as the *signa* and *vexilla* were the standards of the cohorts and centuries.—**Nisi vultis = si non vultis**.—**Praestitero**: “I intend to perform” (= *quidquid accidet*), *praestitero*: “(whatever happens) I shall have performed.”—**Inter se**: “each other,” the Latins have no reciprocal pronoun corresponding to the Greek *ἀλλήλους*.—**Hos . . . conspexissent**: “and when those on board the nearest ships had been the first to see

scil. naves :
was somewhat
valry.—Hera
t this season
collocatas,
bounded by
ater's edge."
um : scil. ex
ea of expecta-
tur : the first
e ; hence ut
administra-
d be carried
of warfare,
as to sudden
n dederent
ove on tertia

genere : scil.
edite robur :
conative im-
Militibus :
—Autem :
he Britons")
tem : "the
s : abl. abs. :
—Ex arido :
th imperiti :
utebantur :
accustomed
d not before
st warriors

s ad usum
cult," i.e.,
ga) though
wide, and
n. It was
right flank
is : p. 279,
ng of a new
hat follows
—aquilifer :
the Roman
cohorts and
intend to
(ens) I shall
e reciprocal
exissent :
rst to see

them" : with *ex navibus*, cp. *ex equis pugnare* : "to fight on horse-back."

Chapter XXVI.—*Nostri tamen . . . hostes vero* : the clauses are inverted : see note on *autem*, B. IV, Chap. XXIV.—*Atque alius alia ex navi* : after *atque* supply *quod* from the previous clause : "and further, because some from one ship and some from another."—*Aliquos singulares* : "some isolated men."—*Ubi . . . conspexerant* : "whenever they saw" : in *iterative* action, the pres., imperf., and future of the principal clause have respectively the perf., plupf., and fut. perf. in the subordinate clause. Note the force of the imperfects.—*Ab latere aperto* : see Caesar, B. IV, Chap. XXV, note on *ad latus apertum*.—*Plures* : agrees with *hostes* and in contrast to *paucos*.—*Quos conspexerat* : "whomever he saw" : see note above on *ubi conspexerant*.—*Submittebat* : give the force of impf.—*Suis copiis consecutis* : "and when all their comrades had come up to them."—*Neque . . . potuerunt* : "and yet were not able."—*Hoc . . . defuit* : "this was the only thing that Caesar lacked to maintain his previous good fortune."

Chapter XXVII.—*Simul atque . . . receperunt* : p. 298, 2.—*Ex fuga* : "after the flight."—*Obsides daturos* : scil. *se esse*.—*Imperasset* : p. 305, 2.—*Supra* : see B. IV, Chapter XXI.—*Demonstravram* : perf. more usual.—*Praemissum* : scil., *fuisse*.—*Cum . . . deferret* : "since he was bearing the commands of Caesar in the character of ambassador" : p. 297, 4.—*Ut ignosceretur* : scil. *multitudini ab eo* : "that the common people would be pardoned by him" : p. 278, 4.—*Quod . . . intulissent* : "of their having waged war against him" : virtual oblique narration : p. 307, 11.—*Ultro* : "of their own accord."—*Arcessitam* : "as they had to be brought."

Chapter XXVIII.—*His rebus* : "on these terms," or "by these means."
—*Post diem quartum quam* : *post* is regarded as governing *diem*, but really belongs to *quam*, forming *postquam*. The regular construction would be *quarto die postquam*.—*Superiore portu* : probably Ambleteuse, north from Boulogne.—*Leni vento* : abl. abs.—*Solverunt* : scil. *ancoras* : "set sail."—*Sui . . . periculo* : "peril to themselves."—*Cum completerentur* : "when they were nevertheless getting filled with water in spite of the fact that they dropped their anchors."—*Tamen* opposes *ancoris iactis*.—*Adversa nocte* : "in the face of night."

Chapter XXIX.—*Nocte* : night of August 30th, 55 B.C.—*Qui dies* : regularly the construction would be : *quo die luna consuevit*, etc., the highest or spring tides occur a day after new moon and a day after full moon.—*Incognitum* : in the Mediterranean there are no tides or very slight ones at certain points. One would suppose that Caesar's soldiers would have observed the tide on the west coast of France, the previous year, when they were fighting the Veneti.—*Exercitum transportandum curaverat* : see Vocab. under *curo*.—*Quae . . . deligatae* : "which were riding at anchor."—*Funibus . . . amissis* : "owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors, and the rest of their tackling" : causal abl. absolute. The abl. absolute is often equivalent to a causal clause.—*Id quod . . . accidere* : "as was unavoidable."

able."—**Quod**: acc. subject of **accidere**: the phrase **quod accidere** is subject of **necesse est**.—**Quibus possent**: = **ut eis possent**: "on which they could be conveyed home": consequence clause: p. 296, 5.
—**Usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Omnibus constabat**: "it was agreed by all": dative of indirect object. We also find **inter omnes constare**.—**Hiemari oportere**: "that winter had to be passed."—**In hiemem**: "to last till winter."

Chapter XXX.—**Principes**: subject of **duxerunt**.—**Hoc . . . quod**: "for the reason that": p. 293, 2.—**Hoc**: abl. of means.—**Etiā angustiora**: "even narrower" than usual.—**Optimum . . . producere**: "thought the best thing to do was to renew the war, to keep our men from corn supplies and to prolong the campaign to the winter."—**Factu**: p. 175.—**His superatis . . . interclusis**: conditional abl. absolute: "if these were defeated and prevented from returning"—**Si superati essent . . . si interclusi essent**.—**Reditu**: abl. of separation: p. 282, 1.—**Suos . . . deducere**: "to call back their men" from the interior to the sea-coast.

Chapter XXXI.—**Ex eventu navium**: "from the accident to his vessels": objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—**Ex eo, quod**: "from the fact (namely) that": p. 293, 2.—**Quod accidit**: "which actually did occur": for the indicative see p. 307, 13 (a).—**Subsidia**: "resources."—**Cotidie**: said of daily repetition: **in dies, in dies singulos, in diem**, said of daily increase or decrease.—**Quae . . . naves earum=earum navium quae**: antecedent expressed in relative clause.—**Cum . . . administraretur**: either impersonal or with **res** understood as subject.—**Reliquis . . . effecit**: literally: "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest": "he made sailing possible with the rest."—**Navigari**: impersonal.

Chapter XXXII.—**Dum . . . geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Frumentatum**: p. 289, 1. Caesar had with him in Britain the 7th and 10th legions.—**Interposita**: "having arisen."—**Hominum**: "inhabitants."—**Ventitaret**: frequentative: "were coming to and fro."—**Portis**: what were the names of the gates of a Roman camp?—**In statione**: "on sentry duty."—**Quam consuetudo ferret**: "than was usual": **ut** consecutive is sometimes omitted after **quam**: p. 296, 5 (c).—**In ea parte . . . quam in partem**: the antecedent repeated in the relative clause.—**Id quod erat**: "the truth," "what really was the fact." See note, Chap. XXXI, on **quod accidit**.—**Aliquid novi . . . consilii**: "some new design": partitive genitive: p. 280, 3.—**Cohortes**: with **iussit**.—**In stationibus**: see **in statione** above.—**In stationem succedere**: see Vocab. under **statio**.—**Nam quod**: "for since": **nam** is to be taken with **delituerant** and **quod** with **erat**.—**Incertis ordinibus**: abl. abs.: "since their lines were broken": see **ordo** in Vocab.—**Circumdederant**: scil. **nostros**.

Chapter XXXIII.—**Ex essedis**: "on war chariots": cp. **ex equo pugnare**.—**Pugnae**: = **pugnandi**.—**Per omnes partes**: i.e., up and down between the two armies.—**Ipsō terrore equorum**: "by the very terror caused by their horses": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Ordines**: scil. **hostium**.—**Cum . . . insinuaverunt**: "whenever they work their way": note the iterative use of **cum**: see note on **ubi . . . conspexerant**, B. IV, Chap. XXVI.—**Turmas**: refers to the divisions of the British horse.—

accidere
sent: "on
p. 296, 5.
by all";
—Hiemari
to last till

quod: "for
agustiora:
ght the best
plies and
his super-
e defeated
interclusi
ucere: "to

ent to his
m the fact
d occur";
—Cotidie:
id of daily
um quae:
straretur:
efficit:
the rest";
al.

entatum:
s.—Inter-
entitaret:
the names
—Quam
sometimes
tem: the
ne truth,"
accidit.—
p. 280, 3.
ove.—In
or since";
rtis ordi-
n Vocab.

ex equo
nd down
y terror
es: scil.
r way";
B. IV,
horse.—

Illi: the warriors, though some take it to mean the retainers (*clientes*): cp. Tacitus (*Agr.* 12): *Auriga honestior: clientes propugnant.*—In declivi ac praecipiti loco: "when the ground is sloping and even steep": since the verb *esse* has no pres. part. the prepositional abl. abs. (abl. + prep.) is used for it.—*Brevi: scil. tempore*: "in an instant."

Chapter XXXIV.—*Quibus rebus*: either (1) causal ablative, "owing to these facts," "wherefore"; (2) ablative of means with *perturbatis*: "to our men confused by these attacks from the fact that the mode of fighting was new."—*Namque*=Greek *kai yap*: "and (this was evident) for," etc.—*Quo facto*: concessive abl. abs.: "though this happened."—*Ad lacesendum: scil. hostes*: "for skirmishing with the enemy."—*Quae ... continerent*: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—*Quanta ... daretur*: "what a splendid opportunity was presented of securing booty and of freeing themselves for ever."—*Liberandi*: sing., though *sui* is plur.—*Daretur*: subjunctive: p. 291, 1, and p. 307, 11.—*His rebus*: "by these representations," referred to in the previous sentence.

Chapter XXXV.—*Idem*: subject of *fore* and explained by the clause *ut ... effugerent*: "that they (the Britons) would escape owing to their speed." They had greater mobility than the Romans.—*Diutius*: join this with *non*: "they could no longer withstand."—*Quos tanto spatio ... potuerunt*: "and pursuing them so far as their strength and speed allowed."—*Quos=et eos.*—*Cursu et viribus*: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—*Occiderunt: scil. nostri milites.* Distinguish in meaning *occiderunt*.

Chapter XXXVI.—*Numerum obsidum duplicavit*: = *duplicem numerum obsidum imperavit*: hence *his* is a dative.—*Quem ... imperaverat*: see Book IV, Chap. XXVII.—*Propinqua die aequinoctii*: causal abl. abs. The date of the equinox was September 24th. As Caesar landed August 27th and left about September 24th, we can see how stubbornly the Britons must have fought, as he got no further than the shore.—*Infirmis navibus*: a causal abl. abs.—*Hiemi ... subiciendam: scil. esse*: "that his voyage might not be exposed to a storm."—*Eosdem ... portus*: see note on *tertia vigilia* (B. IV, Chap. XXII).

Chapter XXXVII.—*Ex navibus*: refers to the *duae onerariae* referred to at the end of Chap. XXXVI.—*Proficiscens*: "in the act of setting out"—*cum proficisceretur.*—*Non ita magno*: "with not so very large a number": this use of *ita* is confined to negative sentences.—*Si ... nollent*: dependent clause of oblique narration after *iusserunt*: p. 307, 11.—*Orbe facto*: in cases of extreme danger the Romans formed a circle with their baggage in the centre while the soldiers faced the enemy. We should say "forming a square."—*Suis auxilio*: p. 279, 12.—*Amplius horis*: the ordinary construction would be *horas*: see note on *amplius* ... *millibus*, B. IV, Chap. XI.

Chapter XXXVIII.—*Siccitates*: the plural may refer to successive periods or to the dryness in different localities.—*Quo se reciperent non haberent*: "did not know where to retreat": with this meaning of *habere* compare that of the Greek *ἐχω: οὐκ εἶχον ὅπου τραπεζαίωτο*. Note that *quo se reciperent* would be a deliberative subjunctive in direct=*quo nos recipiamus?* "to what place are we to retreat?"—*Quo perfugio ...*

fuerant usi: quo i. attracted into the case of **refugio**: "which (*i.e.* the swamps) they had used as a refuge."—**Cinnino**: "in all."—**Ex litteris**: "in accordance with Caesar's despatch."—**Supplicatio**: either a thanksgiving for national success as here or a day of humiliation for national disaster.

BOOK V.

Chapter I.—**In Italiam**: = **in Galliam Cisalpinam**: Italy Proper did not till 27 B.C. include *Liguria*, *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*, though as here it often was applied to all the country south of the Alps. Caesar usually spent his winters at Lucca or Ravenna.—**Consuerat**: = **consueverat**.—**Imperat (ut) curarent**: note the historic present **imperat** shown by the sequence of tense.—**Possent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Quam quibus**: = **quam (eas naves) quibus**.—**In nostro mari**: the Mediterranean.—**Atque id**: scil. **facit**.—**Propter crebras commutationes**: refers to the varying currents in the channel.—**Ad onera**: scil. **transportanda** from the **transportanda** following.—**In reliquis**: scil. **maribus**: the different parts of the Mediterranean went under various names.—**Actuarias**: "as rowing vessels," note that **impero** can take an inf. if that inf. is pass. What would be the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—**Usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Conventibus**: Caesar as proconsul held *assizes* or *courts of justice* in the chief cities of Northern Italy.—**Qui doceant**: p. 294, 5.—**Paratos satisfacere**: = **paratos ad satisfaciendum**: the inf. with **esse paratos** is on the analogy of **velle**, which is equivalent to **paratos esse**.—**Fecerint**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Qui** . . . **aestimant** . . . **constituant**: p. 294, 5: **litis aestimatio** in criminal law is the assessment of the amount of damages a convicted person has to pay.

Chapter II.—**Citeriorem Galliam**: otherwise called **Gallia Cisalpina**.—**Ad exercitum**: wintering in Belgium (Book IV, Chap. XXXVIII).—**Singulari militum studio**: abl. abs.—**Cuius**: attracted into the case of the antecedent: **quod** would be regular.—**In summa** . . . **inopia**: prepositional abl. abs.: see note on **in praecipiti ac declivi loco** (B. IV, Chap. XXXIII); "though they were in the greatest need of all kinds of materials."—**Neque** . . . **possint**: "and they were almost ready to be launched in a few days": literally, "and there was not much short of that point but that they might be launched." We should expect **ut** instead of **quin**: p. 293, 1, A.—**Deduci**: see Vocab. under **deduco**.—**Huic rei**: "for carrying out this object," *i.e.*, collecting the fleet at *Portus Itius*.—**Expeditis**: "in fighting trim," *i.e.*, without heavy baggage.—**Ad concilia**: *i.e.*, the assembly of the Gallic tribes which Caesar held at Samarobria (*Amiens*).

Chapter III.—**Alter**: "the latter," *i.e.*, Cingetorix.—**In officio**: see Vocab. under **officium**.—**Ab amicitia** . . . **defecturos**: see Vocab. under **deficio**.—**Gererentur**: dep. clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Cogere**: depends on **instituit** at the end of the sentence.—**Per aetatem**: might mean that they were too old or too young.—**In silvam** . . . **abditis**: **abdo** with **in** and accusative involves the idea of removal as well as concealment: "having been removed to the Ardennes wood and concealed there."—**Quoniam** . . . **non possent**: Caesar is not stating their real motive,

"which (i.e. all)." — **Ex** : either a milition for

y Proper did
v, though as
ps. Caesar
at : = consu-
nt imperat
narration :
ostro mari :
commuta-
nera : scil.
reliquis . . .
der various
can take an
struction ?
consul held
taly. — **Qui**
aciendum :
equivalent
307, 11. —
timatio in
convicted

Cisalpine.
XVIII). —
he case of
pia : pre-
o (B. IV,
all kinds of
ady to be
ort of that
instead of
rei : "for
is. — **Ex** :
concilia :
marobriava

ficio : see
ab. under
305, 2. —
etatem :
abditis :
ll as con-
concealed
l motive,

but what they alleged to be their motive : p. 297, 3. — Note the meaning of **consulere** with a dative: see Vocab. under **consulo**. — **Sese . . . noluisse** : the inf. depends on the notion of *saying* contained in **legatos mittit**. — **Quo facilius** : p. 294, 4. — **Laberetur** : "would fall away from their allegiance," "would revolt."

Chapter IV. — **Dicerentur . . . deterreret** : p. 297, 1. — **Nominatim** : "personally," in the summons: the selection of the rest would be left to Indutiomarus. — **Consolatus** : "reassured him" in regard to the safety of his son and relatives who were to accompany Caesar to Britain. — **Principibus . . . convocatis hos** : note the irregularity for **principes . . . convocatos** without the redundant **hos**. — **Quod = namque id**. — **Cui . . . tum** : "both . . . and." — **Merito eius** : "as a reward for (by reason of) his service" : p. 281, 7. — **Eius** : Cingetorix. — **Se** : Caesar. — **Magni interesse** : p. 282, 14. — **Qui . . . fuisset** : subjunctive of causal relative : p. 298, 5 ; and of oblique narration : p. 305, 2 : "and since he had already been unfriendly disposed towards us." — **Inimico . . . animo** : abl. of quality : p. 284, 12. — **Hoc dolore** : "at this grievance."

Chapter V. — **Equitatus** : the nobility who served as cavalry. — **Numero** : abl. of respect : p. 284, 13. — **Perspexerat** : "he had observed." — **Obsidium loco** : "as hostages."

Chapter VI. — **Magni animi, magnae . . . auctoritatis** : p. 280, 4. — **Accedebat huc quod** : "to this was added the fact that," "there was the further consideration that" : p. 293, 2. — **Huc = ad hoc . . . neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa** : see Vocab. under **deprecor** : "and they did not dare to send envoys to Caesar to contradict this or to beg for mercy at his (Caesar's) hands." — **Omnibus . . . precibus** : "by all kinds of entreaties." — **Navigandi** : objective genitive depending on **insuetus** : p. 281, 7. — **Timeret . . . diceret** : the reasons given by Dumnorix were not regarded by Caesar as real reasons : p. 297, 3. — **Quod . . . diceret = quod religionibus impediretur, ut dicebat** : "because (as he said) he was prevented by religious scruples." Perhaps because Britain was the centre of Druidism. — **Territare** : historical inf. — **Non . . . fieri dixit** omitted before oblique narration. — The clause **ut . . . spoliaretur** is the subject of **fieri** : so also in the next part of the sentence the clause **ut . . . necaret** is in apposition to **consilium**. — **Interponere** : the historical inf. — **Ex usu** : see Vocab. under **usus**. — **Communi consilio** : cf. **publico consilio** : see Vocab. under **consilium**.

Chapter VII. — **Caesar** : subject of **statuebat**. — **Quod . . . tribuebat** : so **quod . . . videbat** below : p. 297, 3. — **Quibuscumque rebus posset** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11. — **Longius** : "too far." — **Prospiciendum** : scil. **statuebat** : "he made up his mind that he should adopt measures." — **Temporis = anni**. — **Dabat operam** : see Vocab. under **opera**. — **Milites peditesque = pedites equitesque** : the cavalry in a legion numbered 300, the infantry 4,200. — **Omnium impeditis animis** : "when the attention of all was taken up" with the embarkation. — **Retrahique imperat** : see note on **actuaris** (B. V, Chap. I). — **Si vim faciat neque pareat** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11. — **Pro sano** : "as a sane man." — **Qui . . . neglexisset** : see note on **qui . . . fuisset** (B. V, Chap. IV).

Chapter VIII.—**Portus**: see note on *tertia vigilia* (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Pro tempore et pro re**: “as time and circumstances demanded.”—**Pari numero . . . quem . . . reliquerat**: instead of *quem* we should have expected *atque* or *ac*: “with the same number of cavalry as he had left”: Caesar took half of his whole force of cavalry with him.—**Aestu**: the ebb tide carrying the ships from the shore.—**Eam partem insulae**: see note on *aperto ac plano littore* (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Annotinis**: “the . . . of the year before”: in Chap. I he calls them *veteres*.—**Sui . . . commode**: either a phrase governed by *causa* understood, “for the sake of his own convenience,” or a descriptive genitive depending on *quas*.—**Quisque**: *i.e.*, merchants or the like.—**Amplius octingentae**: note that *amplius*, *plus*, *minus* have no influence on the construction: see on *amplius . . . milibus*, B. IV, Chap. XI.—**Superiora**: “farther up the country.”

Chapter IX.—**Consedissent**: p. 291, 1.—**Qui . . . essent**: p. 294, 5.—**Praesidio navibus**: p. 279, 12.—**De tertia vigilia**: *de* with a word of *time* originally means, “starting from” a point: hence “after the third watch was set.”—**Navibus**: “for his ships,” dative of remote object with *metuo*, *timeo*.—**Quod . . . relinquebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Ut videbantur**: “apparently”: note the personal use of *videor*.—**Testudine facta**: see Vocab. under *testudo*.—**Fugientes**: acc. after *prosequi*: *eos* governed by *vetuit*.—**Quod . . . ignorabat . . . volebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Munitiōni castrorum**: “for the construction of the camp”: cf. *castra munire*, “to encamp.”

Chapter X.—**Postridie eius diei**: literally, “on the day following that day”: *postridie*=*posterius die*, a locative of time: *eius diei*: genitive of description: (see note, B. IV, Chap. XIII).—**Aliquantum itineris**: p. 280, 3.—**Extremi**: “the rear of the enemy.” Others take it to mean “the rear of the expeditionary force” of Caesar. In that case *iam in conspectu* means “still in sight of Caesar,” who remained behind in the camp.—**Qui nuntiarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Subsisterent . . . possent**: subjunctives of dep. clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.

Chapter XI.—**Resistere**: “halt.”—**Coram perspicit**: “he in person sees.”—**Sic ut**: literally, “to the extent that”: cf. use of *tantum*.—**Magno negotio**: “with great trouble.”—**Fabros**: “ship carpenters”; a corps of *fabri*, “wrights,” skilled in mechanical arts, was attached to each legion, under a *praefectus fabrum*.—**Quam plurimas posset**: virtual oblique: as many as Labienus thought he could build: p. 307, 11.—**Iis legionibus**: “with the aid of those legions”: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quae sunt apud eum**: not an integral clause of oblique narration: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Multae operae ac laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Subduci**: see Vocab. under *subduco*.—**Ne . . . intermissis**: “not even the night time making any interruption in the continuance of the labor of the soldiers.”—**Eodem**: “to the same position;” *i.e.*, to the camp by the river.—**Summa . . . administrandi**: “the supreme command in, and conduct of, the war.”—**Communi consilio**: “by common consent”: cf. *publico consilio*.—**Circiter . . . octoginta**: *i.e.*, from near Deal, where he probably landed.

Chapter XII.—**Quos = et eos**: the subject of *proditum (esse)* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*: “and they state that the tradition is

that they were indigenous," literally, "born in the island itself."—**Pars**: scil. **incolitur**.—**Iis nominibus civitatum**: = **nominibus earum civitatum**: "by the names of those states."—**Quibus ... ex civitatibus**: for the repetition of the antecedent with the relative, see note on **quibus in locis** (B. IV, Chap. VII).—**Aere**: "bronze," a mixture of copper and tin and different from brass, a mixture of copper and zinc.—**Taleis ferreis**: "iron bars."—**Plumbum album**: "tin": Caesar here reverses the facts.—**Praeter fagum atque abietem**: probably Caesar did not meet with these, and hence denied their existence. They are certainly plentiful now in Britain.—**Animi voluptatisque causa**: "for amusement and pleasure."—**Loca**: see note on **locis frigidissimis** (B. IV, Chap. I).

Chapter XIII.—**Inferior**: scil. **angulus**: this is Land's End, off the coast of Cornwall.—**Alterum**: scil. **latus**.—**Dimidio minor**: Great Britain is said to contain 84,000 square miles: Ireland 36,000 square miles.—**Pari spatio transmissus**: literally: "of the same interval of space across as from Gaul to Britain": **transmissus** is a genitive depending on **pari spatio**, abl. of description: p. 284, 12.—**Mona**: the Isle of Man answers the description, though Anglesey is called **Mona** in Tacitus.—**Subiectae**: "adjacent." He probably refers to the Hebrides, Orkney, and Shetland islands off the coast of Scotland; but is, of course, wrong with regard to their position.—**Bruma**: a contraction for **brevima** = **brevissima**: scil. **dies**: 21st December.—**Ex aqua**: "by the water clock": (**clepsydra**), made on the principle of the sand-glass.—**Ut ... opinio**: "as their belief is."—**Angulus**: *i.e.*, at Kent.

Chapter XIV.—**La te et carne vivunt: vivo** takes the construction of **vescor**: abl. of means.—**Hoc**: scil. **vitro**: "thereby," "by this."—**Horridiore ... aspectu**: abl. of quality: cf. **capillo ... promisso**: p. 284, 12.—**Deni duodenique**: "companies of ten or twelve": he probably refers here to the pre-Aryan race of Britain. Join **inter se** with **communes**: "common to one another."—**Quo**: literally "whither," "to whose house." Translate "by whom."—**Deducta est**: "was led home as a bride": cf. **ducere uxorem in matrimonium**.

Chapter XV.—**Ut**: consecutive: "with the result that." Note that the perfect subjunctive expresses a single fact: p. 295, 2.—**Compluribus interfectis**: *i.e.*, of the Britons.—**Insecuti**: *i.e.*, **nostri milites Britannos cupidius insecuti**.—**Imprudentibus nostris**: "while our men were off their guard."—**In statione**: see note on **in statione**, B. IV, Chap. XXXII.—**Subsidio**: "as a reinforcement": p. 279, 12.—**His primis**: a regular system of promotion prevailed in the Roman army, and the first cohort contained the most experienced veteran soldiers.—**Novo genere pugnae**: the light armed infantry of the Britons, armed with only broadsword and targe, and the charioteers were more mobile than the legionary soldiers.—**Tribunus militum**: there were six to each legion, each having under him ten centurions. See Vocab. under **tribunus**.

Chapter XVI.—**Quod ... possent ... auderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11: the feelings of the soldiers, not of Caesar, are represented.—**Cedentes**: scil. **hostes** governed by **insequi**.—**Illi**: *i.e.*, the Britons.—**Cederent ... desiliirent ... contenderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Dispari ... proelio**: "in an unequal mode of fighting"; when

the Roman ranks were broken, the Britons were more effective soldiers owing to their greater mobility: cf. note on *novo genere pugnae* (B. V, Chap. XV).—*Equestris* . . . *ratio*: "whereas when the fighting was between cavalry, the danger was equalized whether they were retreating or pursuing."—*Cedentibus et insequentibus*: scil. *Britannis*: p. 278, 6.—*Rari magnisque intervallis*: "scattered and with wide intervals between the detachments."—*Exciperent*: "relieved."—*Integri et recentes*: "the unwounded and fresh."

Chapter XVII.—*Lenius*: "with less energy."—*Sic uti . . . non ab-sisterent*: "so vehemently that they did not abstain from attacking the companies and legions."—*Subsidio*: ablative: p. 278, foot note.—*Prae-cipites* . . . *egerunt*: "drove in headlong flight."—*Sui colligendi*: "of recovering themselves," "of rallying."—*Ex hac fuga*: "after this rout."—*Summis . . . copiis*: "with their full strength."

Chapter XVIII.—*Uno omnino loco*: "at one ford and no more."—*Alteram*: "opposite."—*Cum capite . . . exstarent*: "though they had only their heads above water."—*Capite*: abl. of difference: p. 283, 7.

Chapter XIX.—*Contentionis*: "of rivalry."—*Itinera nostra serva-bat*: "dogged our march."—*Ex via*: "from the high road"; the imper-fects express repeated action.—*Magno periculo nostrorum equitum*: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—*Hoc metu*: see note on *qua spe* (B. IV, Chap. VI).—*Relinquebatur ut*: "the only thing left to do was that Caesar": p. 293, 1, top of page.—*Neque . . . discedi . . . pateretur*: "should neither allow any wide departure from the main column of the legions."—*Discedi*: an impersonal infinitive.—*Et tantum . . . noceretur*: "and that so much injury should be inflicted upon the army by way of devastating the fields and causing conflagration." Note the impersonal use of *nocere-tur*: p. 278, 4.—*Quantum . . . poterant*: "as the legionary soldiers were able to effect by their exertions on the march," literally, "by their exer-tions and march" (hendiadys).

Chapter XX.—*Civitas*: the Trinobantes inhabited Essex and the southern part of Suffolk. Their chief town was Camalodunum (now Colchester), afterwards a Roman colony.—*Caesaris fidem secutus*: "having accepted the protection of Caesar," said of the inferior. The superior was said *recipere in fidem*.—*Ipse*: "while he himself."—*Ab iniuria Cassivellauni*: "from injury on the part of Cassivellaunus": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—*Qui praesit . . . obtineat*: p. 294, 5.

Chapter XXI.—*Ab . . . prohibitis*: "secured from all wrong-doing on the part of the soldiers": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—*Cenimagni*: see Vocab. for the position of these tribes.—*Convenerit*: "have must-ered": dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2; part of the news given to Caesar.—*Cum . . . munierunt*: "whenever they fortify": see note on *ubi . . . conspexerant*: B. IV, Chap. XXVI.

Chapter XXII.—*Dum . . . geruntur*: p. 299, 4.—*His*: the petty kings of Kent.—*Castra navalia*: see Vocab. under *castra*.—*Multum aestatis*: p. 280, 3.—*Extrahi*: "be wasted on delays."

Chapter XXIII.—*Deductis*: see Vocab. under *deduco*.—*Duobus commeatibus*: "in two relays": p. 283, 5.—*Quae... portaret*: "such as carried": consecutive, relative: p. 296, 5.—*Et prioris commeatus*: *i.e.*, "both those of the first relay after landing their troops."—*Prioris commeatus*: genitive of description: p. 280, 4.—*Quas*: supply *cae* before *quas* in apposition to *quae*: the *inanes* are (1) the first relay; (2) those built by Labienus.—*Aequinoctium*: about September 21st.—*Secunda... vigilia*: "at the beginning of the second watch," about 9 p.m.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE.

BASED ON NEPOS AND CAESAR.

N.B.—No exercise should be attempted until the text has been mastered. The exercises on Nepos should be done orally.

EXERCISE I.

Themistocles, Chapter I.

1. Neocles, the father of Themistocles, married a lady of Halicarnassus.
2. A lady of Halicarnassus married¹ Neocles, the father of Themistocles.
3. None of his countrymen can be considered superior to him. 4. In early youth he neglected his property. 5. His property was neglected by him. 6. Did he not devote himself to public affairs? 7. Let us begin from the beginning of his life. 8. He transacted many important affairs.
9. Many important affairs were transacted by them. 10. This reproach was not removed by Themistocles without great exertion. 11. He became so great that no one was considered equal to him. 12. He was so careless of his property that his father disinherited him. 13. He lived a dissolute life, and was disinherited by his father. 14. He was so ready in speaking that he often appeared in private trials.

¹*Nubo* (with dative, p. 278, foot note).

EXERCISE II.

Themistocles, Chapter I.

1. He had great vices and great virtues. 2. His virtues were more numerous than his vices. 3. In serving his friends, he served himself. 4. He soon began to speak in the courts. 5. He explained in words very easily the measures which he saw to be necessary. 6. Could he not conjecture very truly what was about to be? 7. He was found to be a man of the greatest energy. 8. He judged that energy was necessary for the transaction of business. 9. Will he not devote himself to his friends in early youth? 10. Hence it happened that the Athenians thought that no one had ever been born equal to him.

EXERCISE III.

Themistocles, Chapter II.

1. The people elected Themistocles general in the war. 2. They built a fleet of one hundred vessels. 3. This fleet was built by them with the money which came in from the mines. 4. When he had built this fleet, he pursued the pirates. 5. The fleet was of great service to Greece during the Persian war. 6. It consisted of two hundred ships. 7. When the city was abandoned, the people put all their possessions on board of their ships. 8. After this report was brought to Athens, the citadel was committed to the elders. 9. The fleet of the Persians consisted of war ships and transports. 10. The messengers who were sent to Delphi brought the following reply. 11. The Athenians were more skilful in naval battles than the other Greeks. 12. The number of the ships with which the Persians crossed the sea was twelve hundred.

EXERCISE IV.

Themistocles, Chapter II.

1. The king of Persia carried on war against Greece by land and sea. 2. War was carried on by the king against Greece. 3. The Athenians sent men to Delphi to consult the priestess. 4. What shall we do? 5. They asked what they should do. 6. The priestess gave an answer, but no one knew what it meant. 7. Themistocles ordered them to leave the city and put all their goods on board of their ships. 8. The elders will protect the citadel, but the rest will go on board of the ships. 9. He persuaded them to obey the command of the god. 10. He persuaded them that all their property should be removed to Salamis. 11. The

elders moved to the citadel to protect themselves. 12. Their plan was to abandon the city to the Persians. 13. Themistocles said that their ships were the wooden walls of which the god spoke.

EXERCISE V.

Themistocles, Chapter III.

1. We are opposed to this plan, but they are in favor of it. 2. The Athenians decided to carry on war by land and sea. 3. Leonidas, King of Sparta, was sent to seize the pass of Thermopylae. 4. The Lacedaemonians seized the pass to prevent the barbarians from advancing into Greece. 5. Men were sent along with Leonidas to prevent the advance of the enemy. 6. The Greek fleet of three hundred vessels engaged the Persian fleet at Artemisium. 7. The two fleets then moored nearer the island of Salamis to meet the attack of the Persians. 8. Our fleet will be stationed between Euboea and Greece. 9. They left Artemisium to avoid being surrounded by the forces of the king. 10. We did not dare to depart for fear that the enemy would surround us with all their forces.

EXERCISE VI.

Themistocles, Chapter II.

1. The result was that the Athenians did not remain at Artemisium. 2. There is danger that the enemy will surround them. 3. If they had remained there, the enemy would have surrounded them. 4. If they remain there, they will all perish. 5. There was a danger that they would be defeated in this battle. 6. Had the Persian fleet sailed round the island of Euboea, they would have surrounded the Athenian fleet. 7. They were threatened by danger from two sides. 8. The result was that they decided to sail to the city. 9. Had they not withstood the Persians at the pass, we should all have perished. 10. The object of Themistocles was to reach Athens. 11. Had they fought with all their fleet, they would have defeated the Persians.

EXERCISE VII.

Themistocles, Chapter IV.

1. After taking Thermopylae, the king will destroy the city with fire. 2. Themistocles advised them to protect themselves. 3. I advised him not to destroy our homes with fire. 4. You will be a match for the forces of the king if they are all scattered. 5. He will advise his comrades to remain where they are. 6. As the enemy are in flight, I advise you not

to remain here but to pursue them. 7. When the army of the king was defeated by Themistocles, the Persians had at once (*statim*) to withdraw from Greece. 8. I do not believe that there is any treachery. 9. Has not Themistocles himself sent me a faithful slave? 10. A messenger came by night to tell the king the designs of the Greeks. 11. He will come from Themistocles who commands their fleet, and the king will believe that the Greeks will be defeated.

EXERCISE VIII.

Themistocles, Chapter IV.

1. He said to the king that the city would be destroyed by fire. 2. "We shall all perish," said he, "if we remain in this place." 3. He said that they would all perish if they remained in that place. 4. The king was not influenced by the words of the Persian commander. 5. A faithful slave was sent to say that the Greeks were in flight. 6. "You will finish the war," said he, "if you defeat us now." 7. They said that he would finish the war if he defeated them. 8. If we attack the enemy we shall crush them. 9. He said that if they attacked the enemy they would crush them. 10. He engaged the enemy in battle in a place so unfavorable that they were not able to extend their line. 11. The place was favorable to us but unfavorable to them. 12. He said that he could not influence the king. 13. They were so terrified by the flames that they would not remain.

EXERCISE IX.

Themistocles, Chapter V.

1. The object of the king was to conquer Greece. 2. Though Greece had been liberated, the Greeks were afraid that the king would return. 3. His forces were so great that he could easily have conquered us. 4. He was informed by Themistocles that the bridge would be destroyed. 5. He is afraid that we will return. 6. The bridge which is built over the river will be broken down within ten days. 7. You did not return though you promised to do so. 8. The king of Persia had a very great fleet. 9. Was not the king defeated in battle by the Athenians? 10. Do you think that Europe will succumb to Asia? 11. His foresight was such that none of the Athenians can be compared to him.

EXERCISE X.

Themistocles, Chapter VI.

1. This harbor, as it was small, the Athenians did not use. 2. They built another harbor to protect the city. 3. He surrounded the city with walls

so high that they protected the city. 4. They declared that it was unnecessary to build such high walls. 5. The walls that had been built could not protect any city. 6. The man was sent to say that the walls were not being built. 7. He had no sufficient reason for saying this. 8. He said in our presence that he would send an ambassador to declare that the walls were not being built. 9. By this victory he will gain such glory that none can be called his equal. 10. He knew that ambassadors would be sent by the enemy to deny this. 11. He gained such pre-eminence by his victory that he was easily the first man in Athens.

EXERCISE XI.

Themistocles, Chapter VI.

1. He carried out his plans without sparing any one. 2. In carrying out his plans no one was spared. 3. The result was that they undertook to build a wall. 4. Since all knew that the walls were being built by the Athenians, why did he deny the fact? 5. He instructed all to build walls high enough to keep out the enemy. 6. The result was that their walls protected them. 7. After the walls began to be built, the enemy sent ambassadors to the Athenians. 8. He alone went as ambassador to order the Athenians to desist. 9. When you have not forbidden us to build, shall we desist from the work? 10. The result was that all, whether slave or freeman, desisted from building the walls.

EXERCISE XII.

Themistocles, Chapter VII.

1. It is right that you should send men in whom you have confidence. 2. They said that it would not be right to send men in whom they had no confidence. 3. Whenever he went to the magistrates, he requested them to hold him as a hostage. 4. "Do not," said he, "let the ambassadors of the enemy go till I am sent back." 5. We have, according to the common rights of all nations, protected our homes with walls. 6. That you may the more easily protect your city, you have surrounded it with walls. 7. The fleet of the king has often suffered shipwreck near the city. 8. You are doing wrong, since you do not take into consideration what will be of advantage to all Greece. 9. If you wish to recover your own ambassadors, send me back again to Athens. 10. He wished to protract the time as long as possible.

EXERCISE XIII.

Themistocles, Chapter VIII.

1. They condemned him for treachery in his absence. 2. Ambassadors were sent to accuse him of treachery. 3. They will take refuge at the court of the king as he is our friend. 4. The king received them under his protection because he had been himself a suppliant. 5. He promised to give the captain of the ship a gift when he reached Ephesus. 6. The captain did not allow anyone to disembark till he had landed Themistocles. 7. After he had ordered Themistocles to consult for his own safety, he landed him at Ephesus. 8. He knew that it was unsafe to land at the island of Naxos, as there was an Athenian army there. 9. As you have made me this promise, I will tell you who I am. 10. If you save me from my enemies, I will show my gratitude. 11. When they reached the house the king had fled.

EXERCISE XIV.

Themistocles, Chapter IX.

1. He said that he had done much harm to the king. 2. He had informed the king that the bridge would be destroyed. 3. The object of the enemy is to destroy the bridge. 4. He was informed that the enemy intended to surround him. 5. My object in doing this is to free you from fear. 6. He will tell the king to receive you as a friend. 7. Do you know that you will have in me a good friend of your king? 8. Everybody knows that I have been driven from Greece because I am a friend of the king. 9. He talked over the matter with me after he learned that I had returned home. 10. When you come here, stay at my house.

EXERCISE XV.

Themistocles, Chapter X.

1. He will devote himself to literature for a year. 2. It is said that he was so learned in the Persian tongue that he spoke it more readily than many a Persian. 3. It will be said that he received presents from the king. 4. The king promised to give him a city from which he might obtain bread. 5. Another city was given him to supply him with wine. 6. There are some who say that he died of poison. 7. Did he take poison because he could not make good the promises he had made to the king? 8. If you are willing to adopt my plans, I will supply you with forces to crush the Greeks. 9. As I have made this promise to you, I will make it good. 10. There are some who say that he was buried in Attica. 11. Others say

that it was not lawful to bury any one accused of treason in Attica, and that he was buried at Magnesia.

EXERCISE XVI.

Aristides, Chapter I.

1. Why do you consider me worthy of punishment? 2. I asked him why he considered me worthy of punishment. 3. Although he was the only man among them surnamed the Just, he was condemned to exile. 4. The citizens restored him to his native land six years after he was expelled. 5. We can easily see how much Themistocles surpassed him in ability. 6. It is said that Aristides asked a citizen why he was being condemned to exile. 7. When they were asked what crime Aristides had committed, they replied that he was surnamed the Just. 8. I am not pleased with this man because he is called the Just. 9. The punishment for such a crime was exile for ten years. 10. He knew that he could not check an excited populace.

EXERCISE XVII.

Aristides, Chapter II.

1. The battle was fought before he returned. 2. We shall all participate in the battle. 3. Before the supreme command was transferred to Aristides, the Athenians defeated a large army of the barbarians. 4. The result will be that the supreme command will be transferred (use *futurum esse ut*) to the Athenians. 5. He performed many illustrious acts in that war, but none was more illustrious than this. 6. In consequence of the victory, the Athenians became the leaders of the Greeks. 7. The result of this was that he was defeated by us. 8. Almost all the states of Greece joined the Athenian alliance. 9. When the battle was fought, they selected him as general. 10. Before that time the supreme power was in the hands of the Lacedaemonians.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Aristides, Chapters II, III.

1. This man was chosen to repel the barbarians. 2. They asked him to determine how many ships each state should contribute. 3. The allies contributed yearly a large amount of money to the common treasury. 4. What place do you wish to be the treasury? 5. They afterwards transferred it from Delos to Athens. 6. His poverty was so great that he left no money to his children. 7. Though he was in charge of important

business he died in poverty. 8. How many ships have you built? 9. His daughters will be maintained at the public expense. 10. Must we choose such a one as leader? 11. Order them to raise two hundred talents.

EXERCISE XIX.

Hannibal, Chapter I.

1. Hannibal surpassed all other commanders in valor as much as the Romans surpassed all other nations. 2. He was vanquished by the envy of his own countrymen. 3. We do not doubt that he almost vanquished Rome. 4. Even after his countrymen exiled him, he never ceased to hate us. 5. If he had not been a great leader he would not have defeated you so often. 6. Does he not need help from others? 7. His hatred against the Romans was so great that it never left him. 8. Though he fought for fifteen years in Italy, he was never defeated by us. 9. Will you drive a man of such valor from the country, my countrymen?

EXERCISE XX.

Hannibal, Chapter II.

1. No one doubted that he was a powerful king. 2. Do not conceal it from them. 3. Tell him that you have bribed Hannibal to be our friend. 4. They had been sent by the Romans to discover the disposition of the king. 5. Prepare war against Rome and make me your leader. 6. I am afraid that he has other views. 7. When they went to the king at the appointed time, they told him that they could never be the friends of Rome. 8. There is no doubt they will do this to no purpose. 9. I shall always be of the same mind as I am now.

EXERCISE XXI.

Hannibal, Chapter III.

1. Will he set out with his father for Spain? 2. After the death of his father, he commanded the cavalry. 3. When Asdrubal was killed Hannibal became commander of the whole army. 4. Do you think that he can take it by storm? 5. Within three years all the tribes of Spain were subdued by him. 6. After raising three very large armies, he crossed the Alps, a feat which no commander had ever performed before him. 7. Leaving one army in Spain, and sending another to Africa, he led a third into Italy. 8. After defeating the Alpine tribes who attempted to obstruct his march, he built a road across the mountains. 9. He defeated all the nations whom he engaged in battle.

EXERCISE XXII.

Hannibal, Chapter IV.

1. When the Romans first met him in battle they were defeated. 2. Scipio was wounded in the battle fought near that city. 3. Hannibal met the Romans a second time in battle and defeated them. 4. Two Roman consuls were killed by him in the same year. 5. After crossing the Apennines he was attacked with a disease of the eyes (of one of his eyes), of which he never afterwards had the proper use. 6. It is said that he was carried in a sedan chair. 7. Do you think that anyone ever routed so many Roman generals? 8. The consul of the previous year was defeated by him in battle and fled. 9. After crossing the Alps, he routed one consul at Ticinus, and both in the following year at Trasimenus. 10. After defeating two armies, he seized the mountain passes.

EXERCISE XXIII.

Hannibal, Chapter V.

1. Shall we now set out for Rome? 2. We shall be resisted by no one. 3. Will he dupe our general again? 4. Have you heard how he extricated himself? 5. So terrified were the Romans that no one left the camp. 6. All know how great a general he is. 7. He has defeated all our generals. 8. Whenever he pitched his camp, no one dared to oppose him. 9. He met no resistance after the battle of Cannae. 10. Not many days after this battle, he ambushed and defeated another army.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Hannibal, Chapter VI.

1. He will be recalled from Italy to carry on war in Africa. 2. When the two leaders met they could not agree upon terms of peace. 3. As it was impossible to agree, the Carthaginians had to fight. 4. I am afraid they have ambushed our army. 5. As the resources of the country are exhausted, I wish to make peace. 6. Collecting an army, he met the Romans at Zama. 7. Within two days his army marched to Hadrumetum. 8. By making peace now, I shall be stronger by and by (say, *in a short time*). 9. If I escape now, I shall engage them again when I can. 10. He collected another army from the soldiers who had escaped.

EXERCISE XXV.

Hannibal, Chapter VII.

1. Let us send envoys to demand his surrender. 2. These wars were carried on by the Romans for many years. 3. Ambassadors were sent

from Carthage to Rome to sue for peace. 4. The ambassadors thanked the Romans because they had brought the war to an end. 5. After the war was over, they recalled him. 6. Being elected chief magistrate, he showed the same diligence in peace as he had previously displayed in war. 7. They begged the Romans to return their hostages. 8. After making this request we returned home. 9. Two men are elected annually at Carthage to govern the country. 10. The new imposts will supply money to pay the Romans.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Hannibal, Chapter VIII.

1. Antiochus was persuaded by Hannibal to set out for Italy. 2. If the Romans had attacked Carthage with a fleet of five ships, the city would have been taken. 3. When he learned that Hannibal was approaching the river, he marched to meet him with a large army. 4. If he had been punished in the same way, he would never have undertaken this war against us. 5. Despairing of success, he set sail for Italy, but was killed soon after by his slaves. 6. Would he ever have formed this plan had he known that we would desert him? 7. In carrying out his plans, he was willing to obey me, and I will never desert him. 8. Though he was defeated in battle, he escaped in safety from the field (*acies*). 9. No one will ever persuade him to desert the city of Carthage.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Hannibal, Chapter IX.

1. Hannibal was afraid that the Cretans would surrender him to the Romans. 2. When he came to Crete, he considered what he would do. 3. When he was in great danger, he formed the following plan. 4. I never thought that they would take my money from me. 5. He knew that the Cretans would carry off the gold if they were able. 6. Let them find out, if they can, where I have deposited it. 7. I will pretend that the gold has been deposited in this temple. 8. Do you suppose the Cretans will believe you? 9. They will carry away this money unless we prevent it. 10. The fame of Cretan avarice has gone forth to all the earth.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Hannibal, Chapter X.

1. When he reaches Pontus he will win over all the tribes of that great country. 2. All through his life he had no object but to make war on

Rome. 3. He knew that it was impossible to gain a victory over the king by arms alone. 4. In winning over these tribes, his object was to collect a large army. 5. Is not the enemy superior both in men and in ships? 6. This done, he ordered the fleet to attack. 7. I will take care that you know in what ship the king is. 8. If you kill the king you shall have a great reward. 9. He said that if they killed the king they should have a great reward. 10. Calling the marines together, he told them that he would crush the enemy by stratagem. 11. Take the king prisoner, but do not kill him.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Hannibal, Chapter XI.

1. Both sides launched their vessels, and the battle began. 2. The marines did not know where the king was. 3. Tell us when we shall attack their fleet. 4. I kept wondering what he found in the letter. 5. The king did not hesitate to open the letter. 6. There can be no doubt that he will be unable to withstand our attacks. 7. They could not understand why the whole fleet attacked the ship of the king. 8. Do you think that he will rout the enemy by such a stratagem? 9. By seeking your own safety you have vanquished your fleet. 10. He said that he was seeking the king in order to give him the letter.

EXERCISE XXX.

Hannibal, Chapter XII.

1. Hannibal happened to be at that time at the court of Prusias. 2. When the ambassadors were dining with the consul, mention was made of him. 3. So long as this man lives, he will be our enemy. 4. Seize him, if you can; you will easily find out where he is. 5. The boy happened to see the envoys coming. 6. He ordered him to find out if the doors were all beset. 7. O that we may find him! 8. Let us beg the king to surrender our enemy. 9. O that we had sent an envoy to them. 10. When the boy returned, he told Hannibal that all the doors of the house were beset. 11. He knew then that he must surrender or die.

EXERCISE XXXI.

Hannibal, Chapter XIII.

1. It is not agreed whether he died in the year 183 B.C. or not. 2. There are some who say that he died in the consulship of Claudius and Fabius. 3. He died at the age of seventy, and in the same year as Scipio.

4. He wrote several books of his campaigns in Asia. 5. It is said that these books were written in Greek. 6. Hannibal employed two Greeks as instructors. 7. It is impossible to decide which of the two is the better general. 8. Though occupied with such important affairs he had time to write books. 9. We can easily see by comparing the deeds of these two that Hannibal was a greater general than Scipio.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.

1. Next year a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. For several years the Suebi had harassed them and prevented them from tilling their lands. 3. The men who serve in the field are supported by those who remain at home. 4. No one is allowed to remain longer than a year in one place. 5. They spend a large part of their time in hunting. 6. The boys are not trained to any duty and they do nothing against their will. 7. On account of this daily exercise they become men of extraordinary strength. 8. They have no clothing except the skins of the animals they capture in the chase. 9. Even in the coldest weather they bathe in the rivers. 10. They are so powerful that they send forth every year from home a hundred thousand armed men.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.

1. All the booty they take in war they sell to the merchants, for they import nothing. 2. The Gauls take especial delight in imported horses, while those of the Germans are small and deformed. 3. Caesar tells us that the Germans often leap from their horses in battle. 4. To render these horses more active, they train them daily. 5. They train their horses to remain in one place, so that the riders may be able to find them where they leave them. 6. To prevent the people from becoming effeminate, they do not import wine. 7. They wish to have some one to whom they may sell what they can export. 8. The animals they use at home are small. 9. Do not think that any one uses a saddle. 10. They think that nothing is more disgraceful than to flee from the battle.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.

1. It is said to be their special glory to have extensive territory. 2. We must make them weaker than ourselves. 3. After they had driven their

enemies from the territory (*abl. abs.*), they made them tributary. 4. They are more civilized than the people of the other states. 5. Though they often attempted to expel us from our lands, they were unable to do so. 6. If they had been more civilized, would they have been weaker? 7. The river Rhine is the boundary on one side; on the other, the lands of the Suebi. 8. This nation is the most civilized of all the Germans. 9. Are they not rather weaker than their neighbors? 10. Though the most powerful nation of all Germany, they did not wish a neighboring nation near them. 11. They did not expel a neighboring tribe, but made it subject.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.

1. For several years we have withstood them. 2. Driven from our homes we have been wandering about Germany for three years. 3. They prevented us from crossing by placing forces on each side of the river. 4. He pretended to be going home, but returned within a few days. 5. After seizing our city they expelled us before our forces arrived. 6. After proceeding a journey of many days, they were informed that you had crossed the river. 7. Tell us if they have completed the work in one night. 8. He learned that they intended to cross the river and occupy these villages the rest of the winter. 9. They seized our ships and crossed the river that night. 10. They were so alarmed at his approach that they returned home.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

1. What have you heard of (*de*) this matter? 2. I asked him what he had heard of the matter. 3. From what district do you come? 4. I asked him from what district he had come. 5. I must not answer you according to your wishes. 6. He compelled the man to repent of his act. 7. Do they listen to every traveller who visits them? 8. They are fickle in forming their plans and very eager for change. 9. Do not be the slave of hearsay. 10. These idle tales often influence them in forming their plans.

EXERCISE XXXVII.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

1. The people of this tribe were eager for hunting. 2. They live on flesh and milk, are clothed (*vestio*) with skins, and even in winter bathe in their rivers. 3. They do not allow the merchants to bring wine into the

country because they believe it enfeebles the constitution. 4. The horses that the Germans employ are small. 5. We buy them at a high price. 6. After devastating the lands of their neighbors they made them tributaries. 7. After wandering throughout Germany for three years, they came to a land which the Menapii inhabited. 8. So alarmed were they at the approach of the Germans that they stationed guards to prevent them from crossing. 9. The Germans had no ships, and therefore could not cross the river. 10. Pretending to return home, they suddenly turned, fell upon the Menapii, and seized their ships.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

1. On learning that ambassadors had been sent to him by the enemy, he set out for the camp. 2. To avoid meeting the enemy, he marched more quickly than usual. 3. They said that they had been induced to cross the Rhine by the Gauls, who had sent ambassadors to them. 4. They declared that everything they had in the camp was in the hands of the enemy. 5. After levying a troop of cavalry from them, he decided to carry on war with the enemy. 6. On his arrival there, he ascertained that the chiefs whom Caesar had summoned had assembled. 7. Several ambassadors came to Caesar to ask him why he was carrying on war against them. 8. On his arrival at the army he was informed that the Germans had been induced to make war upon him. 9. After the departure of the ambassadors from the camp, he induced the soldiers to undertake the war against the Germans. 10. Caesar found out that the Germans were withdrawing from the Rhine into the territory of the Condrusi. 11. He decided to summon the chiefs to calm the feelings of the Gauls. 12. He soon had to face a severer war than he expected.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.

1. Corn began to be collected. 2. He began to pick out cavalry. 3. While Caesar was advancing, deputies met him from the German army. 4. They said that they could be useful friends to the Romans, if Caesar would allow them to hold lands in that place. 5. The Germans have waged war on the Roman people for many years. 6. No one makes war on us without being defeated. 7. Do not refuse to give us lands. 8. No one can conquer the Suebi in war, for they are the bravest men in the world. 9. We can easily defend ourselves if we are assailed by others. 10. We have never been the first to make war on others, still we do not refuse to assert our rights, if we are attacked.

EXERCISE XL.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.

1. If you remain in this place, there will be no friendship between you and me. 2. It is not right for those who cannot protect their own lands to seize those of others. 3. There are no vacant lands in Gaul on which you can settle. 4. If you are willing, you will be allowed to settle in the territory of the Ubii. 5. The ambassadors have come to my camp to complain of the wrongs done by you. 6. Why do you complain of the wrongs done by the Ubii and not ask aid from me. 7. If he had complained of wrongs done by us, would he have asked aid from us? 8. If he had seized the lands of others, he would now possess them. 9. You will not be allowed to hold lands in Gaul, especially since you cannot protect them with your arms. 10. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose deputies have come to my headquarters to seek my aid.

EXERCISE XLI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters IX and X.

1. We shall report to our people what you have asked. 2. When you have deliberated on these matters, return to our camp. 3. Do not move your camp nearer our lines. 4. You will never be able to obtain this request from me. 5. Our cavalry had been sent a few days before across the river to plunder. 6. This river divides into several branches and forms many islands, which are inhabited by savage tribes. 7. This river rising in the Alps flows a long distance in a rapid course. 8. After forming this island, it flows for about eighty miles before it empties into the ocean. 9. When the deputies did not gain their request, they returned to their camp. 10. He suspected that the cavalry that had gone across the Meuse to collect forage several days before would soon return. 11. Caesar says that the inhabitants of these islands live on fish.

EXERCISE XLII.—(Review.)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters VI-X.

1. On his arrival at the army, he learned that the enemy had been ordered to leave the Rhine. 2. After collecting a supply of corn, he set out against the Germans, who were a few days' march from his camp. 3. We have not been the first to make war upon you; still, we never decline to fight if we are attacked. 4. We can be serviceable to the Romans, if they are willing to be friends with us. 5. Allow us to retain the lands we

have already won with the sword. 6. The Suebi are the only ones in the world to whom we are willing to yield. 7. Not even the gods are a match for the Suebi. 8. The envoys said that they would ask him not to advance nearer. 9. This river, after receiving a tributary from the Rhine, forms many large islands, inhabited by fierce tribes whose diet consists of fish and eggs of birds.

EXERCISE XLIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.

1. He sent forward envoys to tell the soldiers not to fight. 2. When the deputies were returning, they met Caesar on the march. 3. We beg of you to wait till we shall send word to the Ubii. 4. He said that the cavalry would soon return, if an opportunity was granted them. 5. Caesar, knowing the reason why the delay was asked for, told the deputies to meet him next day. 6. I asked you to settle the matter within the space of three days. 7. I order you to hold out as long as you can, if the enemy attack you. 8. Do not attack them, but hold out until I come. 9. Since a delay of three days has been granted, I shall not advance any further to-day. 10. I shall not advance more than four miles to-day, but to-morrow assemble to hear my demands.

EXERCISE XLIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.

1. As soon as the enemy caught a glimpse of us, they were thrown into disorder. 2. We were five thousand in number, though they were only eight hundred. 3. We had no fear of the enemy on that day, for they had asked for a truce. 4. After stabbing many of our horses, they put our cavalry to flight. 5. The brave Piso came to the rescue of his brother, who was surrounded by the enemy. 6. He inspired such terror that our men did not stop till they reached their camp. 7. The enemy attacked our lines so quickly that they threw our men into confusion. 8. We did not think that they would attack us, as they had asked for an armistice a little before. 9. In this battle Piso, while rescuing his brother from peril, was thrown from his horse and killed. 10. As soon as his brother noticed that Piso had fallen, he rushed forward against the enemy and was slain.

EXERCISE XLV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.

1. We will neither hear the ambassadors nor accept their terms. 2. He ordered all the forces after they were led out of the camp to follow him at

once. 3. It is the height of folly to listen to terms from men who have once been guilty of treachery. 4. Caesar decided to wait till the Gauls formed their plans. 5. When a number of the enemy came to the camp to apologize for their conduct, he seized them at once. 6. He started at once with all his forces against the enemy, after he had seized their deputies. 7. They tried to secure a truce by treachery, but Caesar ordered them to be seized because they had attacked him the day before. 8. When all these matters were arranged, it luckily happened that the enemy came in great numbers to the camp. 9. The Romans knew what prestige they had gained by this battle. 10. No opportunity should be granted the Gauls to form new plans.

EXERCISE XLVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV.

1. After covering a distance of eight miles, he reached the camp of the enemy. 2. He gave the enemy no time to form their plans or to take up arms. 3. He reached the camp of the enemy before they knew that he was coming. 4. They did not know whether they should defend the camp or seek safety by flight. 5. When Caesar came to the camp of the enemy, the Germans were so alarmed at his sudden arrival that the women and children took to flight. 6. While the cavalry was pursuing the enemy, the rest of the soldiers burst into the camp and quickly put to rout those who had taken up arms to defend themselves. 7. So terrified were the enemy that they did not stop till they had crossed the Rhine. 8. Caesar sent forward the cavalry to make an attack against the enemy.

EXERCISE XLVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XV.

1. When the Germans heard the shouts in the rear, they threw away their arms. 2. After they have thrown away their arms, they will fly to the river. 3. When they saw that a large number of their comrades had fallen, they despaired of their own safety. 4. When they reached the river, many of them plunged in and perished. 5. Many who plunged into the river were drowned in the strong current. 6. Our soldiers to a man returned to our camp in safety, though the loss of the enemy was very great. 7. So many of the Germans were now killed that the rest threw down their arms in despair. 8. Rushing out of the camp they plunged into the river, where they were overwhelmed by the force of the current. 9. When the Germans said they feared the cruelty of the Gauls, Caesar allowed them to remain with him.

EXERCISE XLVIII.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XI-XV.

1. He sent forward cavalry to devastate the lands of the enemy. 2. He gave them an opportunity of sending ambassadors to Rome. 3. You shall have the same terms as were proposed by Caesar. 4. I sent a man to order the soldiers to throw away their arms. 5. They did not desist from flight till they came in sight of our camp. 6. When his brother saw him fall in battle, he rushed against the enemy. 7. We ought to hear the envoys, and listen to the terms they propose. 8. When these matters had been arranged, the Germans came to our camp for the purpose of clearing themselves of this charge. 9. We could not find out what the Germans were intending to do in regard to this matter. 10. When they reached the river many threw themselves headlong into it and perished in the current.

EXERCISE XLIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI

1. The Germans were easily influenced to cross the Rhine. 2. Caesar thought that when the barbarians learned the power of the Roman people, they would be anxious for their own safety. 3. He sent messengers to demand the surrender of those who had taken part in the war. 4. They earnestly prayed him to bring aid to them, because they were attacked by their enemies. 5. Unless you unite your forces with those of the Gauls, you will not defeat your enemies in battle. 6. Caesar decided to cross the Rhine in order that the Germans, who had come into Gaul, might fear for their own interests. 7. On the arrival of the deputies, they said that they did not think that Caesar had any right to claim authority across the Rhine. 8. They thought that the friendship of Caesar would be of great help to them in future, if they could obtain it.

EXERCISE L.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVIII.

1. Caesar led his army across the Rhine on the eighteenth day after he began to build the bridge. 2. When he had completed the bridge, he left soldiers at both ends to protect it. 3. When the ambassadors of the enemy asked him to grant them peace, he ordered them to bring hostages to him. 4. He urged the barbarians to hide themselves in the woods. 5. When the enemy asked for peace, he told them that they must obey him. 6. After leaving all their lands, they hid themselves in the woods, to which

they had carried all their goods. 7. When he had led his army across the river, ambassadors came from the enemy to ask him for peace. 8. When the deputies arrived from several states, he promised them peace and friendship.

EXERCISE LI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIX.

1. When the enemy heard that the bridge had been built over the river, they sent messengers in every direction to order their friends to move everything from the towns. 2. When he had delayed a few days in this district, he found out that the enemy had departed to their homes on learning that the Romans had built a bridge. 3. When this was done, those who could bear arms met together in the territory occupied by the Suebi, and there awaited the return of the Romans. 4. When the bridge was built, the enemy urged the women and children to take refuge in the woods. 5. He afterwards went into the territory of the Ubii, whom he had promised to free from the oppression of the Suebi. 6. The place selected by them was about the centre of the district which the enemy held. 7. Caesar thought that he had fully accomplished the objects of his expedition, when he had inspired the Germans with fear and protected the Ubii from wrong. 8. After taking vengeance on the Sugambri and spending in all eighteen days across the Rhine, he returned to Gaul.

EXERCISE LII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.

1. Since Caesar was not able to find out from the Gallic traders the nature and extent of the island, he decided to visit it in person. 2. If he reached the coast of Britain, he would be able to discover the harbors that were suitable for mooring his war vessels. 3. The Gallic traders who alone were accustomed to go there, had not been able to tell him anything about the inhabitants of the island. 4. He therefore decided to go to the island personally to get a knowledge of the customs and institutions of the people. 5. He decided to go to Britain to prevent the inhabitants from sending aid to the Gauls. 6. Can the merchants tell us anything about this district?

EXERCISE LIII.—(Review.)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XV-XX.

1. As he learned that the Germans could easily be induced to enter Gaul, he decided to bridge the Rhine and carry on war against them. 2. When the deputies of the Germans came to our camp, they told Caesar

that they did not think that he had any jurisdiction across the Rhine. 3. After the completion of the bridge many deputies came from the states bordering on the Rhine, asking him to make peace with them. 4. After tarrying a few days in that district, to cut down the grain, he advanced against the Ubii. 5. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons had supplied aid to the Gauls. 6. Knowing nothing personally of the extent of the island, he resolved, even if little of the summer remained, to go and find out what manner of people dwelt on it.

EXERCISE LIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXI.

1. Before he set out for Britain, he ordered his lieutenant to cross the channel in a war ship. 2. He instructed his lieutenant to explore the sea coast of Britain, and to report to him the character and size of its harbors. 3. The lieutenant soon returned since he did not dare to entrust himself to the savages. 4. When he advised the ambassadors of the enemy to give hostages and obey the commands of the Roman people, they said that they would execute all his orders. 5. When he was assembling his fleet with the intention of crossing the channel, the inhabitants of Britain, learning of his design through traders, sent deputies to him. 6. After five days the lieutenant returned to Caesar and told him all he had learned of the sea coast of the island.

EXERCISE LV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXII.

1. The Morini excused themselves for making war on the Romans on the ground that they were savages. 2. Very opportunely deputies came to Caesar from the Morini, while he was collecting his ships to convey his troops. 3. They said that they had made war on the Roman people because they were unacquainted with our custom. 4. Caesar promised to take them under his protection. 5. Caesar had no desire to carry on war against the Gauls, for he wished to cross as quickly as possible to Britain. 6. The wind prevented the eighteen ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, from reaching the harbor. 7. When they had promised to execute all his orders, and had collected a large force of cavalry, Caesar set sail with the seventh and tenth legions and a fleet of eighty ships. 8. After giving his lieutenant an army to lead against the enemy, he decided to hold the port with a sufficient garrison.

EXERCISE LVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

1. He waited at anchor till he obtained weather suitable for sailing. 2. He decided to wait at anchor till the other ships, which had set sail from the upper port, should arrive. 3. He advised his soldiers to carry out all his instructions promptly and according to command. 4. We must wait till the weather is favorable for embarkation. 5. When he had obtained a place suitable for disembarkation, he moored his ships along the shore. 6. When the cavalry had embarked on the vessels that he had collected in the harbor, Caesar gave the signal for sailing. 7. Finding the enemy ready to hurl their weapons from the steep cliffs upon him as he landed, he decided that he must wait till the rest of the army arrived. 8. Then he weighed anchor, and with favorable wind and tide he proceeded to a more open place on the coast.

EXERCISE LVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIV.

1. The barbarians sent their cavalry ahead to prevent our men from disembarking. 2. We could not land because the water was so shallow that the ships could not approach the shore. 3. We were compelled to form our line among the waves because the ships had to be brought to in deep water. 4. When we leaped down from the vessels into the water, the enemy spurred on their horses down to the shore, and hurled their darts at us. 5. Our men were so terrified by the enemy that they did not show the same spirit that they were accustomed to exhibit in battles. 6. When the savages heard of Caesar's plan, they sent their cavalry and charioteers ahead to prevent his landing. 7. The enemy, who were thoroughly familiar with the ground, advanced into the water to meet us.

EXERCISE LVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.

1. The war ships advancing a short distance from the transports were moored on the right of the enemy. 2. When the enemy were dislodged by the arrows of our men, they withdrew from their position. 3. The eagle-bearer ordered the men to leap down from the ships into the water if they did not wish to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy. 4. Do not permit such a disgrace, my comrades. 5. The form and appearance of the Roman galleys were so unusual to the barbarians that they fell back in

alarm when Caesar moored his vessels on their right flank. 6. When the standard bearer saw that the soldiers were hesitating, he charged them not to betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. With a loud voice, he declared that he at any rate would do his duty to his country, and leaping into the water he advanced against the enemy.

EXERCISE LIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

1. As our men disembarked singly, they rallied round any standard they met. 2. When we saw that our men were disconcerted, we sent assistance to them. 3. We were unable to overtake the retreating enemy for we had no cavalry in the army. 4. The enemy, as they knew the ground, could attack our men *en masse* as they disembarked singly from their ships. 5. We were not able to follow the enemy very far, for the cavalry had been prevented from crossing by the wind. 6. As soon as the men who had taken up their position on shore formed in line, they made a fierce attack on the enemy.

EXERCISE LX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.

In this tribe no one is allowed by law to remain longer than a year on his own land, and private property is, therefore, a thing unknown amongst them. One half of the population till the land, and the other half serve in the army. Those who remain at home this year to till the land, serve in the field next year. In this way systematic training in war is never relaxed. The inhabitants of this state are of gigantic stature, live on flesh and milk, and are clothed with the skins of the animals they capture in the chase—a sport in which they spend a great portion of their time. Every day the young men are trained (*exerceo*) in exercises which render them so hardy that even in the depth of winter they wear only the scanty covering of skins, and bathe in the rivers. To such a pitch of bodily strength have they brought themselves that they are regarded the most warlike of all the Germans.

EXERCISE LXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.

The inhabitants of this state prohibit by law the importation of wine, because they believe it weakens the body and renders men effeminate. Traders, in fact, are seldom permitted to enter their boundaries, and then rather to purchase the booty captured from the enemy than to sell any-

thing to the natives. They do not take pride in the expensive horses of which the Gauls are so fond, but the native horses, though small and unshapely, are still capable of great exertions, owing to their daily training. All the inhabitants ride without saddles, quickly dismount to fight on foot, while the horses stand still and afford a ready refuge in case their riders are hard pressed by the enemy. In this way the cavalry often escape from the field in safety, and owing to their superior training they exhibit great daring even against great odds.

EXERCISE LXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.

The inhabitants of those states of Germany bordering on the Rhine are more civilized than those of the other states of that nation, owing to the fact that they trade with the merchants and conform to the habits of the Gauls, who dwell on the opposite bank of the river. Most of the states are small, but that of the Ubii is larger and more highly civilized than the others. The Suebi made repeated attempts to dispossess the Ubii of their lands, but though they were unsuccessful in this, they merely made them weaker than they were before, while permitting them to retain possession of their own lands. All the Germans consider it a mark of the greatest distinction to have extensive tracts of waste lands on the side of their neighbors, for they fancy in this way they can protect their lands against their enemies.

EXERCISE LXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.

Although the Usipetes withstood the attack of the Suebi for several years, they were finally driven from their lands by their enemies. Wandering about Germany for the space of three years, they came to a district inhabited by the Menapii, who occupied lands on both sides of the Rhine. In consternation at the approach of such a host, the Menapii posted a guard on the east side of the river to prevent the Usipetes from crossing. The Usipetes tried by every possible means to cross the river, but were unable to do so owing to the scarcity of boats and the vigilance of the Menapii, who had sentinels stationed along the river. The Usipetes had, therefore, recourse to the following stratagem. Pretending to return home, they advanced three days in that direction; then turning suddenly round, they surprised the Menapii, who were caught napping, cut them to pieces, captured the ships of the latter, crossed the river and seized their property before the rest of their countrymen could come to the aid of the Menapii. In this way, they maintained themselves in this district during the rest of the winter.



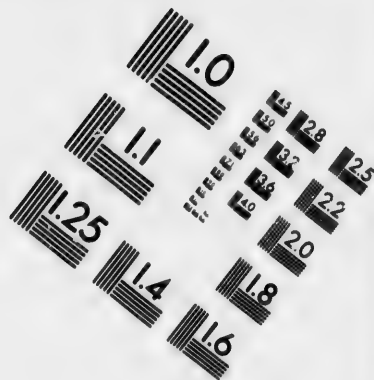
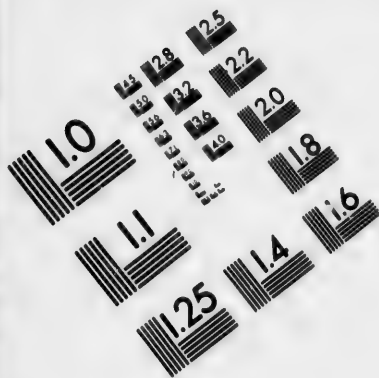
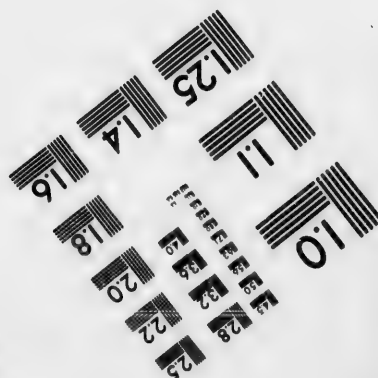
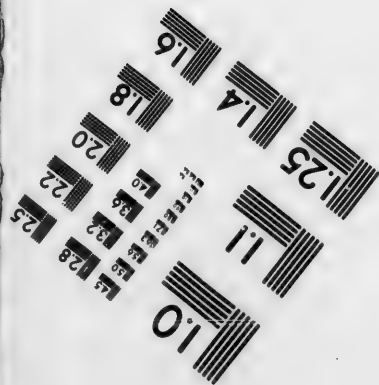
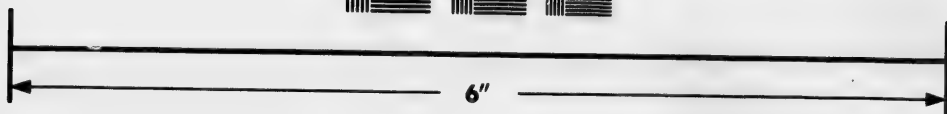
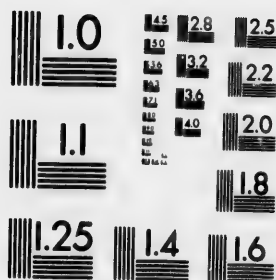


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
16
18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

EXERCISE LXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

When our soldiers came to a town of the Gauls, the inhabitants often compelled them to stop, even against their will, and to tell all the news they had heard from the people through whose lands they had passed. Often, too, when merchants came into the towns of the Gauls, the common folk surrounded them and asked them such questions as the following: "Where do you come from?" "What news do you bring?" "Have you heard anything of the enemy?" After receiving replies on these points, the Gauls formed their plans, but such slaves were they to idle rumours that they often changed their plans as soon as they had formed them: so fickle are they in disposition. Often the merchants told them things without any foundation, for every one knows that the Gauls can be entrusted with no secret. Caesar, therefore, gave instructions to the merchants to tell nothing that was transpiring in the Roman camp, for he was well aware that if this were done, the enemy would quickly mass their forces.

EXERCISE LXV.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

Of all the German tribes, the Suebi are the most warlike, for they have adopted the following custom in regard to war. Every year they put into the field a hundred thousand men, who are maintained by those that remain at home. Those that serve in the field this year, remain at home next year. In this way neither the tillage of the soil nor the practise of war was interfered with. The people have no private land, live on flesh and milk, are clothed with skins, and spend the greater part of their time in the chase. By this daily exercise they become hardy, and even in the dead of winter they are accustomed to bathe in the rivers. They prohibit the importation of wine, for, as they maintain, the constitution is weakened and the people are rendered effeminate by its use. Rarely do they allow even the traders to come into their country, and then only to sell them the spoil they have taken in war. When travellers come to a town of this people, everybody crowds around them and asks them all sorts of questions, but travellers invent answers, for they never entrust a secret to the Gauls, who are so fickle that they often undertake important enterprises on the vaguest rumors.

EXERCISE LXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

Caesar had the suspicion that the Gauls would follow their usual practise, and he ascertained, on his arrival at headquarters, that his suspicions were

well founded. The Gauls had sent delegations to the several states of the Germans, and everything was ready for a war against the Romans. Anxious to avoid facing two powerful enemies at one time, he summoned a council of the Gallic chiefs, addressed them in kind words, and assured them that he was their friend. Though he had found out from his soldiers that the Gauls had acceded to all the demands of the Germans, and that the Germans had been induced by them to leave the Rhine and to enter Gaul to liberate it from the power of Rome, he concealed these facts from the deputies that were sent to him. At once he raised a detachment of cavalry and made preparations for war against the Germans.

EXERCISE LXVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.

At once Caesar selected his cavalry, and began his march to the spot where he had heard the Germans were encamped. After marching several days, he met the enemy, who sent an embassy to him. One of the ambassadors spoke as follows: "We have not been the aggressors in this war, and we have always followed the traditions of our ancestors, never to attack a nation unless it first attacks us; if, however, we are attacked we never shrink from battle, and we never ask our foes for quarter. We came into Gaul on the invitation of the Gauls themselves. To you, Romans, we can be of service, but you ought to allow us either to retain the lands we have obtained by right of conquest, or to assign us other lands in Gaul. The Suebi alone are a match for us in arms, for there is no other people in the world whom we cannot defeat."

EXERCISE LXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.

It is not fair that you should seize the lands of others since you are not able to protect your own borders. There are no unoccupied lands in Gaul, and, therefore, it would be impossible to give lands to so large a number of people without doing wrong to others. So long as you remain on this side of the Rhine you and I cannot be friends, for it would not be right that my friends, the Gauls, should be without protection against the wrongs committed by the Germans. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose ambassadors are in my camp complaining of the wrongs done by the Suebi. They have asked my aid in this war against the Suebi.

EXERCISE LXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IX.

The ambassadors of the Germans who came to the Roman camp requested that a delay of three days be given them to discuss the proposals

of the Roman commander. They told Caesar that all his proposals had to be laid before their people. If this time were given for discussing the proposals, they would return to his headquarters, and they requested, in the meantime, that he would not advance any further into their territory. Caesar knew well the reason why this delay was asked for. The enemy had few cavalry with them, for the greater part of the horse had been sent across the Meuse for the purpose of obtaining fodder, and they were waiting for its arrival. On its arrival, there was no doubt but that the Germans would attack the Roman camp. This was the reason why the delay was asked for by the Romans.

EXERCISE LXX.

Caesar, B. IV. Chapter X.

The Rhine is a river of Germany, which takes its rise in the Alps, and for a long distance it flows with a rapid current through the lands of several states. It divides, as it approaches the sea, into several branches, and forms large islands which are inhabited by a fierce and barbarous people, who live chiefly on fish and the eggs of birds. It receives a tributary called the Meuse, which has its cradle in the Vosges Mountains, and flows into the Rhine about eighty miles from the sea. The Waal, also, is a tributary of the Rhine. The island of the Batavi is formed by the junction of the Meuse and Rhine. The Vosges Mountains begin in the territory of the Gauls, but extend to the frontiers of Germany, and in these mountains several rivers take their rise.

EXERCISE LXXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.

After these days, according to agreement, the ambassadors met Caesar on his arrival at a place about twelve miles from their own encampment. When Caesar did not grant their demands, they earnestly begged him that he would not advance further into their lands. They also entreated him to send some of his officers in advance, to keep his soldiers in check and to prevent them from making an attack against their people. They further requested him to allow them an opportunity to send ambassadors to their neighbors, for they said that if their neighbors would accede to their demands they also themselves would accept the proposals Caesar made. Caesar knew well that the object of this proposal was to gain time until the cavalry, which the enemy had been waiting for, should arrive. He told the envoys that he should advance four miles further to get water,

proposals had to
or discussing the
they requested, in
to their territory.
for. The enemy
se had been sent
and they were
abt but that the
reason why the

n the Alps, and
lands of several
branches, and
rbarous people,
ves a tributary
tains, and flows
Aal, also, is a
by the junction
the territory c
hese mountain.

ors met Caesar
r encampment.
egged him that
ntreated him to
check and to
They further
sadors to their
ccede to their
Caesar made.
gain time until
d arrive. He
to get water,

and bade as many as possible on the next day to assemble at headquarters, but he sent orders to his advanced guard not to attack the enemy till he should be on the field in person.

EXERCISE LXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.

The enemy, as we have said, had sent most of their cavalry across the Meuse, and these had not yet returned. They, therefore, had not more than eight hundred cavalry in camp, while our men numbered five thousand. When our men were least of all expecting it, the enemy made a vigorous attack on them, and at once threw our ranks into confusion. According to their custom they dismounted, stabbed our horses, unhorsed the riders, drove the rest in flight and made such havoc that the advanced guard of our cavalry did not stop till they came up with the main body of the infantry. Among those who fell in this skirmish was Piso, a man most valiant. He met his death in an attempt to rescue his brother, who had been surrounded by the enemy.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.

At the very time when the Germans were sending ambassadors and suing for peace, they treacherously, without provocation, made an attack on the Roman lines. From what Caesar knew of the fickleness of the Gauls, he realized what the effect of defeat would be. He considered it would be the height of folly to wait till the enemy were reinforced by the arrival of their cavalry, and he thought it wise to allow the enemy no time to perfect their plans. Calling a council of war, he gave orders to his officers to bring on the battle early next day. Even then the Germans exhibited the same treacherous spirit as they had on the day before, for they came in numbers to the Roman camp for the purpose, as they alleged, of clearing themselves of the charge of beginning a battle. Caesar, ordering the arrest of all the deputies, then left the camp, and commanded his cavalry to follow closely the main body of the infantry.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV-XV.

Caesar, by the rapidity of his march, gave no time to the enemy to form their plans, for he covered the distance of eight miles, which lay between his camp and the enemy, before they were aware of his advance. On his arrival, therefore, they were utterly at a loss what to do. On his arrival,

indignant at the treachery the enemy had displayed the day previous, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a general attack on the camp of the Germans. When once the Romans entered the camp, they began an indiscriminate massacre of the enemy. Some of the latter retreated to the baggage waggons, where they held out a short time; others took to flight, and in their haste they threw away their arms and military standards. Many of the Germans did not stop in their flight till they reached the river Rhine, and in their attempts to swim across perished in the stream. Our men, however, returned to the camp without much loss.

EXERCISE LXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI.

When Caesar noticed that the Germans were easily induced by the Gauls to cross the Rhine and to make war on the Roman people, he resolved to lead his forces across the river to make the Germans understand the extent of the power of the Roman army. Another reason was this, that a part of the Germans who had as yet refrained from taking part in the war, had formed a junction with those who had crossed the river. When Caesar demanded the surrender of the aggressors in this war, they sent the following reply: "If you consider it wrong for the Germans to cross the Rhine, why do you claim any power in our territory?" When the Ubii sent ambassadors to you, and earnestly implored you to send aid to them, nothing would have prevented you from doing so, had you been in Gaul at that time. Your army has such a name and reputation that even the most distant tribes of Germany feel protected by your alliance with it.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XVIII, XIX.

The bridge across the Rhine was built with such speed that the whole work was completed within ten days, from the time that the timber began to be collected from the neighboring district. When our army crossed, many chiefs came to the headquarters of Caesar to offer submission; others, however, left their lands and took all their effects to the woods. The lands of the latter Caesar caused to be devastated with fire and sword; but those of the inhabitants who were well affected, he willingly spared. When the Suebi, the most powerful of the German tribes, learned that the bridge had been built, they called a council of war, and resolved to collect as many men as possible to await the arrival of the Romans, and to fight a pitched battle in a central part of their territories. Caesar, however, did not march against them, for he considered that all the objects aimed at had

been attained. He had struck terror into the hearts of the Germans, he had wreaked vengeance on the Sugambri, and had saved the Ubii from attack. After cutting down the bridge, he returned to Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.

Caesar decided to visit Britain before winter set in, to prevent the Britons from assisting the Gauls. He thought it would be of advantage to ascertain the size of the island, the kind of the inhabitants, and the extent of their power, for almost nothing was known to Rome. Merchants had told him that if he visited it, he would find on the sea coast a people possessing ships and harbors. The ships they use both for visiting the localities that lie opposite the island, and for making war on their enemies. Their skill in war, accordingly, was considerable, and time would fail me to enumerate the wars they have carried on. They live under institutions which have been extolled by almost all who have investigated them, and no one has ever visited the island without learning something which proved of advantage to himself.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.

Roman merchants had occasionally touched at Britain, but they were unable to give any information as to the size of the island, the qualities of the harbors, the character or habits of the inhabitants. Caesar desired to look at these with his own eyes, and the fleet which had been used in the Venetic war¹ was ordered to assemble in the channel. He directed Caius Volusenus, an officer whom he could trust, to take a galley and reconnoitre the coast of the island, while he himself followed to Boulogne,² where his vessels were waiting for him. The gathering of the flotilla and the object had been reported to Britain, and envoys from various tribes were waiting there with offers of hostages and humble protestations. Caesar received them graciously, and sent back with them a Gaul surnamed Commius, whom he had made chief of the Atrebates, to tell the people that he was coming over as a friend, and that they had nothing to fear.

¹ *bellum Veneticum.* ² *portus Itius.*

—Froude's *Caesar* (Adapted).

EXERCISE LXXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.

When Caesar was on the point of setting out for Britain, he summoned from all sides traders, to ascertain the size of the island and the character

of the inhabitants that dwell there. From these he learned very little, for they were very chary of risking their lives among the barbarians who inhabited the island. He, therefore, selected Caius Volusenus, an officer in whom he had the greatest confidence, and commanded him to reconnoitre the island in a war-ship, as far as his opportunities would allow him to do so. When the officer had inspected the coast, he returned five days after his departure, and reported the results of his observations to Caesar. Summer had almost closed, and there was slight hope of finishing the campaign that year, as the winter in these northern climates sets in early. He mustered all the men-of-war he could, and proceeded with all speed to carry on war against the Britons.

EXERCISE LXXX.

Caesar, B. IV, XXII.

Volusenus had just returned to the camp after an absence of five days, unable to find anything of importance about Britain or its people. The ships that had arrived at port were unable to carry over more than two legions, but for Caesar's purpose they were sufficient. Leaving Sabinus and Cotta in charge of the rest of the army, he despatched Rufus to the coast to look after the vessels. The general, thinking that nothing should interfere with his design of crossing into Britain, also started at once for the port from which there was the shortest sea passage to Britain, and there he awaited for several days the arrival of the cavalry. But the latter did not come up till after Caesar left Gaul, for they were wind bound about eight miles, so that they could not reach the harbor from which they intended to sail.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

"I have called you together, officers, in order that I may convey my wishes to you personally. All arrangements are completed; the troops will embark during the present watch. As soon as wind and tide are favorable, I shall give you the signal for embarkation. Thereupon let all embark, weigh anchor, and set sail at once. When you have gone forward about seven miles, you will see a large island; there the ships of the enemy are stationed. Hem them in on all sides, and, if possible, let not a single man escape. Meantime let all await on the open shore till the signal is given."

Turn the above also into oblique narration.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII-XXIV.

When he obtained fair weather, he set sail about midnight and reached Britain at 10 a.m. On his arrival at the island, many difficulties presented themselves to him. In the first place, the shore was not suitable for disembarkation, for it was so steep that the enemy could hurl from the cliffs their darts on our soldiers, who had taken up their position on the shore. Our ships, too, could be moored only in deep water owing to their size, and, therefore, the soldiers were compelled to leap down from their vessels into the water, form in line, and meet the onset of the enemy. Besides, the soldiers knew little of the locality, while the enemy knew every shoal. Under these circumstances our men did not exhibit the bravery that usually characterized them on such occasions.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII, XXIV.

A council of war was called, and the general addressed his staff as follows: "I consider it a fortunate thing that we have had fair weather for the expedition; still you must not imagine that the campaign will be an easy one. I recognize the magnitude of the difficulties you will have to face. You will meet in battle the fiercest foe you have yet encountered—a foe, too, that knows every foot of the ground; you will need to disembark in deep water, where it will be difficult for you to keep your footing. Everything must be done punctually and simultaneously, for naval evolutions, even more than other evolutions of war, require instant despatch. The land we are approaching is almost unknown to you; of this, however, rest assured, the inhabitants are brave, and will stubbornly contest every foot of our advance. You will, therefore, have to stand your ground, and exhibit that bravery which you have so often displayed in former battles."

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.

The ships of war were moored on the right of the enemy, and by their unusual form caused dismay to the barbarians, for they had never seen vessels so large. The vessels were then rowed forward, and the soldiers, along with the artillery, were sent ashore to dislodge the enemy from their position which they had taken up on the heights. When the Britons saw our men advancing, some of them came to a halt, others retreated. At first our men hesitated to leap down from the vessels, on account of the

depth of the water, but the standard-bearer of the tenth legion, after uttering a prayer for the success of the enterprise, advanced against the foe. "Let us not," said he, "betray the eagle to the enemy, for this would be disgraceful to a Roman." Then all, with a cheer, leaped down from the ships and advanced against the enemy.

EXERCISE LXXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

The difficulty of disembarkation was very great, owing to the depth of water. Our men could not obtain a firm foothold, nor could they rally round their own standard, for they disembarked not in a body, but singly. The enemy, on the other hand, knew every foot of the ground, and, with their horses at full speed, attacked our men, who were hampered in their movements by the waves and by the heavy weight of their armor. Caesar at once despatched some ships manned with soldiers to the aid of the landing party. As soon as they reached the shore they attacked and put the enemy to flight. They were unable, however, to advance very far, owing to the want of cavalry, which latter had not made the island, owing to the storm.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

Over this river there was a bridge, and beside the bridge the general resolved to post a garrison at once. He put in charge of this garrison a member of his staff (*legatus*), with instructions that it was of the utmost consequence to the safety of the country to hold out as long as possible. But the enemy were indignant that we should have the audacity to pitch a camp right in the heart of their country; and mustering their forces to the number of twenty thousand men, they proceeded at once to assault the place. The garrison held out with difficulty; nevertheless they did hold out; and after several days the enemy, losing hope of making a capture, withdrew from the field.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1892.*

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Caesar determined to cross over to Britain, because the Belgians of South Britain had sent help to their kinsmen in Gaul, with whom he was fighting. So he set sail to Britain with a small army. When the Britons, who were watching for him, saw his fleet draw near the shore, they came down and kept the Romans from landing, till a brave standard-bearer leapt from a galley into the water among the Britons. When the Roman soldiers saw him in the midst of their foes they followed him to save the standard, and at last made good their landing, and drove the Britons up

into the country. Then Caesar marched through most of the people of Kent, fought several battles and forced the tribes near him to give hostages and sue for peace. But he was not able to profit by his success. He was afraid of the bad weather in the channel, for it was getting late in the year, so he went back to Gaul.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1894.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

The spring had not yet passed when the Roman armament sailed for Britain. Caesar took with him five legions and an equal (*par*) number of cavalry, the usefulness of which had been proved in the late expedition. These legions were left under Labienus to provide for the security of Gaul. The landing was effected, without opposition, at the same spot as in the previous summer; and Caesar, leaving two cohorts to protect his naval station, repaired with the main body to a spot not far from the shore, where he constructed a camp to which he might retreat in case of defeat. This, it is thought, is the foundation of the famous (*celeber*) station of Rutupiae, whose ruins attest to this day the greatness of Roman military works.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

Having finished the German war, Caesar resolved, for many reasons, that he must cross the Rhine, a very broad, deep, and rapid river, which divides Gaul from Germany. His strongest reason was that seeing the Germans were easily induced to make inroads into Gaul, he wished to show them that the Romans had both the power and the courage to carry the war into their country. Accordingly he made the necessary preparations, and caused a bridge to be constructed over the river, by which to transport his troops.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

EXERCISE XC.

Before the task was completed, a deputation of chiefs arrived, bringing word that their warriors were encamped in good numbers about eight miles distant, and desiring our general to appoint the time and place for a council. He ordered them to meet him on the next day near his camp. In the morning the little army moved in battle order to the place of council, and at the appointed hour the deputation appeared. The orator declared that the war had arisen without any fault of theirs; they desired that there should be peace between us and his people; and to show their good will, at once delivered eighteen prisoners whom they had brought with them, promising that we should receive the rest as soon as they could collect them.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1897.*

VOCABULARY.

LATIN-ENGLISH.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The references in the Vocabulary are to the pages and sections of this book and to the chapters of Nepos and Caesar. Thus: 82, 5 = page 82, § 5; N. T. 3 = Nepos, Themistocles, Chapter III; N. A. = Nepos, Aristides; N. H. = Nepos, Hannibal; c. iv, 2 = Caesar, Book IV, Chapter II.

abl.	ablative.	intr.	intransitive.
acc.	accusative.	irreg.	irregular.
adj.	adjective.	M.	masculine noun.
adv.	adverb.	N.	neuter noun.
cf.	compare.	num.	numeral.
comp.	comparative.	ord.	ordinal.
conj.	conjunction.	p.	page.
dat.	dative.	part.	participle.
defec.	defective.	pass.	passive.
dem.	demonstrative.	perf.	perfect.
dep.	deponent.	pl. or plur.	plural.
dim.	diminutive.	prep.	preposition.
distrib.	distributive.	pro.	pronoun.
F.	feminine noun.	rel.	relative.
gen.	genitive.	sc.	scilicet (one may under-stand).
impers.	impersonal.	sing.	singular.
indecl.	indeclinable.	sup.	superlative.
indef.	indefinite.	tr.	transitive.
interrog.	interrogative.	v.	verb.

The quantity of vowels long or short by position and of diphthongs (which are all long) and of final short syllables, is not given.

VOCABULARY.

A.

a, ab, prep. with abl. (**a** only before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants); from (85, 2; 156, 4; 158, 2); by (71, 2); **puer a ianua**, the door-keeper, porter (N. H. 12); **a pueris**, from boyhood (c. iv, 1); **a suis finibus**, on the side of their territories (c. iv, 3); **a Suebis**, on the side of the Suebi (c. iv, 3); **ab millibus passuum octo**, eight miles off (c. iv, 22); **ab aperto latere**, on the exposed flank (the right side) (c. iv, 26); **a Pirustis**, on the side of the Pirustae (c. v, 1).

ab-do, -dère, -didi, -ditum, v. tr., hide.

ab-dūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., lead away, withdraw.

ab-ēo, -ire, -ivi (-II), -itum, v. intr., go away.

ab-hinc, adv., ago; abhinc decem annos or **abhinc decem annis**, ten years ago (82, 5).

ab-icō, -icere, -icēci, -iectum, v. tr., throw away.

ab-lēs, -lētis, F., a fir-tree, spruce.

abs-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., go away, leave off.

absen-s, -tis (pres. part. of **absum**), adj., absent.

ab-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, v. intr., desist; **ab signis legionibusque non absistere**, not to stop short of the standards of the legions (c. v, 17).

ab-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, v. tr., acquit.

abs-tinenti-a, -ae, F., disinterestedness.

ab-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be absent, distant from; **abesse a bello**, to take no part in war; **abesse decem millia passuum**, to be ten miles off; **neque multum abesse quin**, to be not far from (c. v, 2).

ac (used before consonants); another form of **atque** (used before vowels), which see.

ac-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, cessum, v. intr., go towards, reach; **accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus**, all the ships reached Britain (c. v, 8); **impers, accēdit, -cēdere, -cessit**, it is added; **accessit etiam**

quod, there was also added the fact that (c. iv, 16); **accedebat h'c ut**, to this was added the fact that (c. v, 16).

ac-cēléro, -cēlérare, -cēléravi, v. intr., hasten towards.

ac-ceptus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of accipio, used as an) adj., agreeable to.

acceso, see arcesso.

ac-cido, -cidere, -cidi, happen; usually **impers.**; **accidit, accideret, accidit**, it happens; **opportunissime res accidit**, an opportunity most favorably was presented (c. iv, 13); **opportune accidisse arbitratus**, thinking that this had happened fortunately (c. iv, 22); **accidit ut**, it happened that (c. iv, 29).

ac-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, v. tr., cut into.

ac-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, ceptum, v. tr., receive; **id accipere**, to hear this (N. H. 2).

ac-commōdo, -commōdāre, -commōdāvi, -commōdatum, v. tr., fit to.

ac-cūrātē, adv., carefully.

ac-cūrāt-us, -a, -um, (perf. part. of accuro, used as an) adj., careful.

ac-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursum, v. intr., run to.

ac-cūso, -cusare, -cusavi, -cusatum, v. tr., accuse, blame.

ac-er, -ris, -re, adj., keen, sharp, severe (comp., **acrior**; sup., **acerrimus**).

aci-ēs, -ei, F., edge, line of battle; **aciem instruere**, to draw up a line of battle; **aciem constituere**, to draw up a line (of ships) (N. H. 11).

ac-quietesco, -quiescere, -quievi, -quietum, v. intr., repose in death, sleep one's last sleep.

acriter, adv., fiercely, keenly (comp., **acrius**; sup., **acerrime**); **acriter pugnatum est**, a keen battle was fought; **acerrime occupari**, to be very actively employed (N. H. 7).

actuari-us, -a, -um, adj., impelled by oars, furnished with oars.

ac-us, -ūs, F., a needle, pin.

ac-ūtus, -ūtā, -ūtum, adj., sharp, keen.

ad, prep. (with acc.), to, against, towards, near to, at, besides; **ad voluntatem**, to suit their wishes; **ad laborem ferendum**, as regards enduring fatigue (c. iv, 2); **ad extremum**, at last (c. iv, 4); **ad haec**, in reply to this (c. iv, 8); **ad pristinam fortunam**, to complete his former good fortune (c. iv, 26); **ad diem**, on the right day, punctually (c. v, 1); **ad Cantium**, opposite Kent (c. v, 13); **ad solis occasum**, at sunset (c. v, 8); **ad hunc modum**, in this way.

ad-aequo, **-aequāre**, **-aequāvi**, **-aequātum**, v.tr., make equal.

ad-do, **-dēre**, **-didī**, **-dītum**, v.tr., add.

ad-dūco, **-dūcēre**, **-dūxī**, **-duc-tum**, v.tr., lead to, bring to (of persons), induce; **in suspicionem regi ad-ducere**, to bring under the suspicion of the king (N. H. 2).

ad-ēo, **-ire**, **-ivī** (-ī), **-itum**, v.tr. and intr., approach, visit, reach.

ad-ēō, adv., to this point, so, such, to that degree.

ad-ficio, **-ficēre**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, v.tr., treat, visit with; **morbo adfectus**, attacked with disease; **supplicio (poenā) adficere**, punish.

ad-fligo, **-figēre**, **-fixī**, **-flictum**, v.tr., dash down, damage; **navem ad-fligere**, to damage a vessel (c. iv, 31).

ad-hībēo, **-hībēre**, **-hībūī**, **-hībī-tum**, v.tr., summon, call in, admit; **adhibitis principibus maioribusque natu**, summoning the chiefs and elders (c. iv, 13).

ad-huc, adv., to this place, thus far, as yet.

ad-icio, **-icēre**, **-icēcī**, **-iectum**, v.tr., throw to, throw up; **in litus telum adici poterat**, a dart could be thrown to the water's edge (c. iv, 23); **aggerem ad munitiones adicere**, to throw up a mound against the fortifications (c. v, 9).

ad-igo, **-igēre**, **-ēgi**, **-actum**, v.tr., drive in, hurl to.

ad-imo, **-imēre**, **-ēmī**, **-emptum**, v.tr., take away, deprive of.

ad-ipsco, **-ipisci**, **-eptus sum**, v.tr. dep., attain to, acquire, obtain.

ad-itus, **-itūs**, M., approach, landing-place; **mercatoribus est aditus**, merchants go there (c. iv, 2).

ad-iungo, **-iungēre**, **-iunxī**, **-iunctum**, v.tr., join to, add.

ad-iuvo, **-iuvāre**, **-iuvī**, **-iūtum**, v.tr., aid, help, assist.

Admēt-us, -i, M. Admetus, king of the Molossi, a people of Thrace. He protected Themistocles when a suppliant. Thucydides (i, 136) says that Themistocles took the son of Admetus in his arms and seated himself as a suppliant at the hearth, adding that the step he adopted was the strongest mode of entreaty known in the country. The historian also adds that Admetus was at variance with Themistocles.

ad-minister, **-ministri**, M., a servant, assistant.

ad-ministr-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v.tr., do, manage; **cum paulo tardius administratum esset**, when this was done somewhat slowly (c. iv, 23); **republicam administrare**, to carry on the government.

ad-miror, **-mirārī**, **-mirātus sum**, v.tr. dep., wonder at, admire.

ad-mitto, **-mittere**, **-misi**, **-mis-sum**, v.tr., allow, permit; **facinus admittere**, to commit a crime; **dedecus admittere**, to be guilty of a disgrace (c. iv, 25).

ad-mōdum, adv., very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.

ad-mōnēo, **-mōnēre**, **-mōnūī**, **-mōnītum**, v.tr., advise, warn, remind.

ad-ōlescens, **-ōlescentis**, M., a youth.

ad-ōlescentī-a, -ae, F., youth.

ad-ōlesco, **-ōlescere**, **-ōlēvī**, **-ultum**, v.intr., grow up, reach adult age.

ad-ōrior, **-ōriri**, **ortus sum**, v.tr. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.

ad-plico, **-plicare**, **-plicāvī** (-**plī-cūī**), **-plicatum** (-**plīcitum**), v.tr., lean against; **ad societatem Atheniensium se applicare**, to attach themselves to an alliance with the Athenians (N. A. 2). (Also written **applicō**.)

Adrumēt-um, -i, N., Adrumetum, a city of Africa Propria, south of Carthage. (See **Adrumetum**.)

ad-sidū-us, **-ā**, -um, adj., incessant, unbroken, diligent.

ad-sisto, **-sistere**, **-stīti**, **-stītum**, v.intr., stand near or by.

ad-spectus, **-spectus**, M., look, appearance.

ad-suēficio, **-suēfācere**, **-suē-fēcī**, **-suēfactum**, v.tr., accustom.

ad-suēfact-us, **-ā**, -um, adj., accustomed to; **Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti**, they have become familiar with the Gallic customs (c. iv, 3).

M. Admetus, king of Thrace. He proposes when a suppliant. He says that Themistocles was in his arms and a suppliant at the step he adopted mode of entreaty. The historian thus was at variance

ministri, *M.*, a ser-

re-āvi, *-ātum*, *cum paulo tar-*
tum esset, when
at slowly (c. iv, 23);
ministrare, to
ent.

iri, *-mirātus*
ler at, admire.

re-misī, *-mis-*
permit; **facinus**
ait a crime; **dede-**
be guilty of a dis-

very much, great-
y, at least.

nēre, *-mōnūi*,
rise, warn, remind.
escentis, *M.*, a

e, *F.*, youth.

re, *-ōlēvi*, *ul-*
reach adult age.

rtus sum, *v. tr.*
tack, assail.

-plicāvi (*-pli-*
-plicitum), *v. tr.*,
tatem Atheni-
are, to attach
with the Atheni-
ten applico.)

N., *Adrumetum*, a
outh of Carthage.

a, *adj.*, incessant,

stīti, *-stītum*,

ūs, *M.*, look, ap-

facēre, *-suē-*
rum, *accusom*.

um, *adj.*, *accus-*
ant moribus
become familiar
c. iv, 3).

ad-suesco, *-suescōre*, *-suēvi*,
-suētum, *v. tr.*, *accusom* to (acc. of
person and abl. of thing).

ad-sum, *-esse*, *-fūi*, *v. intr.*, be pres-
ent, near; aid.

ad-tribūo, *-tribūere*, *-tribūi*,
-tribūtum, *v. tr.*, assign, show.

adūlescens, see *adōlescens*.

adūlescētia, see *adōlescētia*.

ad-vēno, *-vēnīre*, *-vēni*, *-ven-*
tum, *v. tr.*, reach.

ad-ventus, *-ventūs*, *M.*, arrival.

ad-versārius, *-versāriā*, *-versā-*
rium, *adj.*, opposed, hostile.

adversāri-us, *-i*, *M.*, an enemy.

ad-versūs, *-ā*, *-um*, *adj.*, turned
to, opposed to, unfavorable; **nocte ad-**
versā, in the teeth of night, or in a foul
night (c. iv, 28).

adversus, prep. (with acc.), opposed
to, over against.

ad-vertō, *-vertēre*, *-verti*, *-ver-*
sum, *v. tr.*, turn to; **animum ad-**
vertēre, to notice.

ad-vōlo, *-vōlāre*, *-vōlāvi*, *-vōlā-*
tum, *v. tr.*, fly to, hasten to.

aed-es, *-is*, *F.*, a temple; in plural, a
house or temples.

aedifici-um, *-i*, *N.*, dwelling, house.

aedific-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v. tr.*,
build.

Aedū-i, *-ōrum*, *M. pl.*, the Aedui,
a tribe of Gaul (*France*).

Aedū-us, *-ā*, *-um*, *adj.*, Aeduan.

Aegāt-ēs, *-i*, *M. pl.*, the Aegates,
islands in the Mediterranean, west of
Sicily.

aeg-er, *-rā*, *-rum*, *adj.*, sick (comp.
aegrior; sup., *aegerrimus*).

Aegina, *-ae*, *F.*, Aegina, an island
in the Saronic gulf, west of Athens.

aegr-ē, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely,
hardly.

aegrōt-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v. intr.*,
be sick.

Aegypt-us, *-i*, *F.*, Egypt, a country
of north-eastern Africa.

Aemili-us, *-i*, *M.*: (1) Lucius Paulus
Aemilius, a Roman consul who fell at
Cannae, a village of Apulia, a district of
Italy, 216 B.C.; (2) Lucius Aemilius
Paulus: according to some Hannibal died
in his consulship, 182 B.C.

āenē-us, *-ā*, *-um*, *adj.*, made of
bronze or copper.

aequāl-is, *-e*, *adj.*, of the same age
(with dative).

aequāl-is, *-is*, *M.*, a contemporary.

aequē, *adv.*, equally, in an equal
degree.

aequinocti-um, *-i*, *N.*, the equinox,
either 21st March or 21st September; in
Caesar, the latter.

aequiper-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.*
intr., equal.

aequit-as, *-ātis*, *F.*, evenness; **ani-**
miaequitas, contentment.

aequ-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v. tr.*,
make equal.

aequ-us, *-ā*, *-um*, *adj.*, equal, fair;
aequum est, it is only fair (*N. T. 7*).

āer, *āeris*, *M.*, a mist.

aerāri-um, *-i*, *N.*, treasury; in
aerario reponere, to deposit in the
treasury (*N. H. 7*).

aes, *aeris*, *N.*, bronze, copper;
money; **aes alienum**, debt (literally,
money belonging to another).

aest-as, *-ātis*, *F.*, summer; **mediā**
aestate, in the middle of summer;
extremā aestate, at the end of
summer; **primā aestate**, at the be-
ginning of summer; **aestatem con-**
sumere, to spend the summer (c. v, 4).

aestimāti-o, *-ōnis*, *F.*, value, valua-
tion, esteem.

aestim-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v. tr.*,
value, think, reckon; **litem aestimare**,
to assess the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

aest-us, *-ūs*, *M.*, tide.

aet-as, *-ātis*, *F.*, period of life, life;
haec aetas, the present moment
(*N. H. 2*).

affēro, *-ferre*, *attūli*, *allātum*,
v. tr., bring to, assign, report, announce.
afficio, see *adfficio*.

af-firmo, *-firmāre*, *-firmāvi*,
-firmātum, *v. tr.*, assert, declare.

af-ficto, *-fictāre*, *-fictāvi*, *-flic-*
tātum, *v. tr.*, damage, wreck.

af-fligo, *-figēre*, *-fixi*, *-flictum*,
v. tr., damage; **navem affligere**, to
damage a vessel (c. iv, 31).

Afric-a, *-ae*, *F.*, Africa.

Afric-us, *-i*, *M.* (properly an *adj.*,
with *ventus* understood); the south-
west wind, still called *Africo* by the
Italians.

Āgāmēmn-on, *-ōnis*, *M.*, Agamem-
non, king of Mycenae in Greece, and
commander of the Greek forces at Troy.

āg-er, *-ri*, *M.*, a field, land; *pl.*, lands,
territories.

ag-ger, *-gēris*, *M.*, a mound.

- ag-grēdiōr**, -grēdī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., go against, assail, attack.
- ag-grēgo**, -grēgāre, -grēgāvī, -grēgātum, join to; **se aggregare** (military term), fall in (c. iv, 26).
- ag-men**, -minis, N., an army on the march; a column.
- āgo**, -āgere, -ēgi, actum, v. tr., move, go, do, drive; **hiemem agere**, to pass the winter; **gratias agere**, to return thanks; **id agitur**, this is the object (N. T. 5); **est actum de nobis**, it is all over with us.
- āgricolā**, -ae, M., a farmer.
- āgricōlūrā**, -ae, F., agriculture.
- āio**, v. tr., defective, say yes, assert, say (see page 275).
- ālāc-er**, -ris, -re, adj., active, quick, impetuous.
- ālācrit-as**, -ātis, F., dash, haste; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (c. iv, 24).
- alb-us**, -ā, -um, adj., white; **album plumbum**, tin (c. v, 12).
- alc-es**, -is, F., the elk.
- Ālexand-er**, -rī, M., Alexander, the Great, king of Macedonia; born 356 B.C., died 323 B.C.
- ālias**, adv., at another time, elsewhere; **alias... alias**, at one time... at another time.
- ālīen-us**, -ā, -um, adj., belonging to another; another's; strange, foreign, hostile; **aes alienum**, debt (another's money); **alieno loco**, on unfavorable ground; **alienum tempus**, an unfavorable time (c. i, 34).
- ālio**, adv., elsewhere.
- āliquamdiu**, adv., for some time; for a while.
- āliquando**, adv., at some time or other; occasionally, at last.
- āliquanto**, adv., somewhat, considerably, rather.
- āliquant-us**, -ā, -um, adj., considerable, some; **aliquantū itin-eris**, some distance (c. v, 10).
- āliqui**, -quae, -quod, indef. pro., some one, any one.
- āliquis**, -qua, -quid, indep. pro., some one, any one; **aliquid temporis**, some time.
- āliquot**, indef. indeclinable pro., some, several.
- ālīter**, adv., otherwise.
- ālī-us**, -ā, -ud (for declension see p. 27), pro., another, other, different; **alius... alius**, one... other; **alīl... alīl**, some... others; **alius alla ex navi**, one from one ship, another from another (c. iv, 26).
- Allōbrōg-ēs**, -um, pl. M., the Allobroges, a tribe of Gaul.
- ālo**, -ālere, -ālūi, -ālītum or -altum, v. tr., rear, nourish; **publice alere**, to maintain at the public expense.
- Alp-ēs**, -ium, pl. F., the Alps.
- Alpic-us**, -ā, -um, adj., Alpine; in pl. **Alpici**, -ōrum, Alpine tribes.
- alt-er**, -ēra, -ērūm, adj., one of two; **alter... alter**, the one... the other; **alteri... alteri**, the one party... the other party.
- altitūd-o**, -inis, F., height, depth.
- alt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., high, deep; in **alto**, on the deep.
- āma-ns**, -ntis, adj., loving; as a noun: a lover.
- Ambiān-i**, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ambiani, a tribe of north-eastern Gaul, from which the modern town, Amiens, takes its name.
- amb-io**, -ire, -ivī (-īī), -itum, v. tr., go around, canvass.
- Ambivārīt-i**, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ambivari, a tribe on the Mosa (*Meuse*).
- amb-o**, -ae, -o, adj., both.
- ambūlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., walk.
- āmentī-a**, -ae, F., madness, folly.
- āmicē**, adv., friendly.
- āmicitī-a**, -ae, F., friendship; **amicitiam facere**, to form an alliance (c. iv, 16).
- āmic-us**, -ā, -um, adj., friendly.
- āmic-us**, -ī, M., a friend.
- ā-mitto**, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum, v. tr., lose.
- ām-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., love.
- āmoen-us**, -ā, -um, adj., beautiful (of scenery).
- amphōrā**, -ae, F. [Gk. ἀμφορά fr. ἀμφι, φέρω, to carry on both sides], a two handled jar; **summa amphora**, the top of the jar (N. II. D).
- amplē**, adv., abundantly; comp. **amplius**, more.
- amplitūd-o**, -inis, F., greatness.
- amplius**, neut. comp. of adj., **amplius**, more, further. Often used with numerals without any influence on the construction: **amplius duo millia passuum**, more than two miles.
- ampl-us**, -ā, -um, adj., large, noble, distinguished; **amplissimo genere**

ex navi, one from
another (c. iv, 26),
ul. pl. M., the Allo-

altum or altum,
; publice alere,
public expense.

F., the Alps.

m. adj., Alpine; in
Alpine tribes.

m. adj., one of two;
ne... the other; al-
ne party... the other

r., height, depth.

ij., high, deep; in

adj., loving; as a

pl. M., the Ambi-
eastern Gaul, from
Amiens, takes its

-itum, v. tr.,

pl. M., the Ambi-
the Mosa (*Meuse*).

, both.

vi, -atum, v.

madness, folly.

friendship: ami-
form an alliance

adj., friendly.

end.

-misi, -mis-

-atum, v. tr.,

adj., beautiful

Gk. ἀμφόρα fr.
both sides), a
amphora,

ly; comp. am-

greatness.

of adj., am-
ten used with
fluence on the
duo millia
miles.

, large, noble,
mo genere

natus, born of a most illustrious family
(c. iv, 12).

an, interrogative participle, whether,
or (p. 291, 5).

Ancalit-ēs, -um, pl. M., the An-
calites, a British tribe in Berkshire and
Oxfordshire.

an-ceps, -cipitis, adj., two-fold;
anceps periculum, a danger in front
and rear (N. T. 3).

ancōr-a, -ae, F., an anchor; navem
tenere in ancoris, to keep a ship at
anchor (N. T. 8); ancoram tollere,
to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23); in ancoris
expectare, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23);
ancoram iacere, to cast anchor (c. iv,
28); ad ancoras naves deligare,
to ride at anchor (c. v, 9).

ancill-a, -ae, F., a hand-maid, servant.

angŭl-us, -i, M., a corner.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely.

angusti-ae, -arum, pl. F., defile,
strait (of sea).

angust-us, -ā, -um, adj., narrow,
contracted.

ānim-a, -ae, F., life, soul; animam
deponere, to relinquish his life (N. H. 1).

ānim-adverto, -advertēre, -ad-
verti, -adversum, v. tr., notice.

ānim-al, -ālis, N., an animal.

ānim-us, -i, M., mind, soul, spirit,
courage; nunquam destitit animo,
he never ceased in his heart (N. H., 1);
magnanimi, of great courage (c. v, 6);
animis impeditis, when the attention
of all was engaged (c. v, 7); animi
voluptatisque causā, for recreation
and amusement (c. v, 12).

annon, interrog. participle, or not (in
the second member of a direct question,
p. 130, 6).

annotin-us, -ā, -um, adj., of the
year before.

ann-us, -i, M., a year.

annŭ-us, -ā, -um, adj., a year's; an-
num tempus, a year's time (N. T. 9).

ans-er, -eris, M., a goose.

ante, (1) adv., previously, before;
paucis ante diebus, a few days be-
fore; (p. 182, 3); (2) prep. with acc. only;
before, in front of, in advance of. For
antequam see antequam.

antēā, adv., previously, before, once.

ante-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-
sum, v. tr., precede, surpass; agmen
antecedere, to head the line (c. iv, 11).

ante-fēro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum,
v. tr., excel, prefer.

ante-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsi, -pōsi-
tum, v. tr., prefer.

antequam, conj., before (p. 201, 5).

ante-sto, -stāre, -stīti, no sup.,
v. tr. and intr., be preferred to.

Antioch-us, -i, M., Antiochus, sur-
named the Great, king of Syria, reigned
B.C. 233-B.C. 187. After conquering the
greater part of Western Asia, he was
induced by Hannibal to cross over to
Europe, but was defeated at Thermopylae,
191 B.C., by the Romans. Next year he
was defeated near Magnesia, in Lydia, and
was compelled by the Romans to pay a
yearly tribute of 2,000 tal. Being unable
to pay this sum, he attempted to plunder
the temple of Belus, in Susiana, which so
incensed the inhabitants that they killed
him and his followers, 187 B.C.

antiquit-as, -ātis, F., old times;
antiquity.

antiqu-us, -ā, -um, adj., old, ancient.

antr-um, -i, N., a cave.

Ap.=Appius, a Roman praenomen
(see nomen).

āpēr-io, -īre -ŭi, -tum, v. tr., open,
show, reveal.

āpērtē, adv., openly.

āpērt-us, -ā, -um, adj., open, ex-
posed, undefended; loca aperta, open
country; ab latere aperto, on the
exposed flank (on the right side) (c. iv, 26).

Āpoll-o, -inis, M., Apollo.

ap-pāreo, -pārere, -pārui, -pāri-
tum, v. intr., attend, appear, be clear.

ap-pāro, -pārāre, -pārāvi, -pārā-
tum, v. tr., prepare, make preparations
for, provide for.

appell-o, -āre, -āvi -ātum, v. tr.,
call.

ap-pello, -pellere, -pŭli, -pul-
sum, v. tr., bring to land (of ships); in
passive, call at, touch at.

Appennin-us, -i, M., the Apennines.

applico, see adplico.

Appius, a Roman praenomen (see
nomen).

ap-porto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
to bring, carry to (a place).

ap-prōpinqu-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
(with dat.), v. intr., approach, come near.

apt-us, -ā, -um, adj., fit, suitable

āpud, prep. (with accusative); near,
at, beside; apud urbem, near the
city; apud Artemisium, at Arte-
misium (N. T. 3); apud Caesarem, at
the headquarters of Caesar; apud eos,
before them (N. T. 7).

Āpŭll-a, -ae, F., Apulia, a district of south-eastern Italy.

āqu-a, -ae, F., water.

āquātio, -ōnis, F., fetching water, watering; **aquationis causā**, to obtain water (c. iv, 11).

āquill-a, -ae, F., an eagle. As the eagle was the ensign of the legion, **aquila** came to mean a standard.

Āquilei-a, -ae, F., Aquileia, a city in north-eastern Italy.

āquillifer, -fēri, M., the eagle-bearer, the standard-bearer.

Āquitān-us, -i, M., an Aquitanian; an inhabitant of Aquitania, a district of south-western Gaul (*France*).

ār-a, -ae, F., an altar.

Ār-ar, -āris, M., the Arar (now the *Saône*), a tributary of the Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

ārātr-um, -i, N., a plough.

arbit-er, -rī, M., judge; **dare arbitros**, to appoint arbitrators (c. v, 1).

arbitrī-um, -i, N., a judgment, decision.

arbitr-or, -āri, ātus sum, v. tr. dep., think, suppose, consider.

arb-or, -ōris, F., a tree.

arcess-o, -ēre, -ivī, -itum, v. tr., send for, summon.

arc-us, -ūs, M., a bow.

Ardūenn-a, -ae, F., the Ardennes, a forest of north-eastern Gaul which extended through the territories of the Treveri to those of the Remi (c. v, 3).

ardū-us, -ā, -um, adj., steep.

argent-um, -i, N., silver, money.

Arg-i, -ōrum, pl. M., Argos, a city of Argolis, in the eastern part of the Peloponnesus.

Argos (only used in nom. and acc. sing.), N., see *Argi*.

argū-o, -ēre, i. argūtum, v. tr., accuse of, charge with.

ārid-us, -ā, -um, adj., dry. As a substantive, **aridum**, dry land; **ex arido**, on the shore (c. iv, 24).

ārī-es, -ētis, M., a battering ram.

Arīōvist-us, -i, M., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him, 58 B.C.

Aristid-ēs, -ae, M., Aristides, an Athenian statesman, rival of Themistocles.

arm-ā, -ōrum, pl. N., arms; in

armis esse, to bear arms (c. v, 3); **ab armis discedere**, to lay down arms.

armāment-um, -i, N., tackle (of a vessel).

armātūr-a, -ae, F., armor; **levis armaturae milites**, light-armed soldiers (p. 130, 7).

armāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., armed.

armig-er, -ērā, -ērum, adj., armor-bearer.

arm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., arm; **regem armare**, to excite a king to arms (N. H. 10); passive, **armari**, to put on armor; **ad armandas naves**, for the equipment of the vessels (c. v, 1).

ār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., plough.

ar-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpui, -reptum, v. tr., seize upon, devote oneself eagerly to.

ar-s, -tis, F., art, pursuit, stratagem. **Artaxerx-es**, -is, M., Artaxerxes, king of Persia B.C. 465-B.C. 425. He was a son of Xerxes. During his reign Themistocles fled from Greece and took up his abode in Asia Minor.

art-ē, adv., tightly, closely.

Artēmisi-um, -i, N., Artemesium, one of the promontories of Euboea.

articul-us, -i, M., little joint.

artifici-um, -i, N., mechanical art.

art-us, -ūs, M., joint.

arv-um, -i, N., a ploughed field.

ar-x, -cis, F., citadel. In *Nepos* (Themistocles 2 and 4), **arx** means the Acropolis of Athens.

a-scendo, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum, v. tr., ascend, mount; **navem ascendere**, to embark.

a-sensus, -scensūs, M., ascent.

Asi-a, -ae, F., Asia.

a-spect-us, -ūs, M., appearance, look, sight.

asper, -ērā, -ērum, adj., rough, uneven, wild, fierce.

as-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., carry from.

assidū-us, -ā, -um, adj., see *adsiduus*.

assisto, see *adsisto*.

assuesco, see *adsuesco*.

assuefacio, see *adsuefacio*.

astu, indeclinable neuter sing. (Gk. *ἄστυ*, city); the city, i.e., Athens.

at, conj., but, yet.

āt-er, -ra, -rum, adj., black, dark.

Āthēn-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Athens.
Āthēnensis, -e, adj., of Athens,
 Athenian.

atque (contracted **ac**; **atque**, before vowels, **ac**, before consonants), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than **et**); **par atque**, the same as; **aliter atque**, different than; **contra atque**, otherwise than.

Atrēb-as, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian.

Atrebat-ēs, -ium, M., the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul in the modern Artois or Arras (*Flemish Atrecht*).

Atri-us, -i, M., Quintus Atrius, an officer in Caesar's army, who was left on the south coast of Britain to look after the fleet while Caesar marched inland on his second expedition. B.C. 54.

ātrō-x, -cis, adj., dark, terrible.

Attic-a, -ae, F., Attica, a district of the south-eastern part of Northern Greece in which Athens was situated.

Attic-us, -i, M., Titus Pomponius Atticus, a friend of Cicero.

at-tingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, v. tr., touch on, border upon, reach; **Rhenum attingunt,** they border on the Rhine (C. iv, 3); **terram attingere,** reach land (C. v, 23).

at-tollo, -tollere, v. tr., raise.

attribuo, see adtribuo.

auct-or, -ōris, M., adviser, helper; **me auctore,** at my suggestion.

auctōrit-as, -ātis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

auctumn-us (or autumnus), -i, M., autumn.

audāci-a, -ae, F., boldness, daring.

audāciter, adv., boldly.

audacter, same as audaciter.

aud-ax, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

aud-ēo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. v. tr. and intr., dare, be bold.

aud-i-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., hear.

auditi-o, -ōnis, F., hearing, listening; pl., auditions, tales, rumors.

aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablātum, v. tr., carry away, remove (p. 154).

augēo, augere, auxi, auctum, v. tr., increase.

aul-a, -ae, F., a hall.

Aurēli-us, -i, M., Caius Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul, B.C. 200.

aurē-us, -ā, -um, adj., golden, of gold.

aurig-a, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

aur-is, -is, F., an ear.

aur-um, -i, N., gold.

Auruncūlei-us, -i, M., Lucius Auruncleius Cotta, one of the lieutenants of Caesar in Gaul. He fell in an ambush planned by Ambiorix, B.C. 54.

aut, conj., or; aut...aut, either...or; occasionally used by Caesar for neque (B. iv, 1, 2, 20).

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now. (Never put first in a clause.)

autumnus, see auctumnus.

auxili-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep. (with dat.), give help.

auxili-um, -i, N., aid, support; in plural, auxili-a, -ōrum, auxiliary troops.

āvāriti-a, -ae, F., avarice, greed.

āv-ers-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of averto used as an) adj., turned away.

āvīd-us, -ā, -um, adj., eager, covetous.

āv-is, -is, F., a bird.

āv-us, -i, M., a grandfather.

B.

Baebī-us, -i, M., Cneius Baebius Tamphilus, consul 182 B.C.

Balbus, see L. Cornelius Balbus under Cornelius.

barbār-i, -ōrum, M. pl., barbarians, a name first applied by the Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

barbār-us, -ā, -um, adj., savage, barbarous.

Batāv-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Batavi, a people who inhabited the islands at the mouth of the Rhine, corresponding to the district of modern Holland.

bēat-us, -ā, -um, adj., happy, prosperous.

Belg-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Belgae, a general name applied to a warlike people of north-eastern Gaul, from the Mosa (*Meuse*) to the Sequana (*Seine*), partly Celtic, partly Teutonic. The chief tribes were the Remi, Morini, Nervii, Suessiones.

bellicōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., warlike.

bell-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., be at war, war.

bell-um, -i, N., war; belli, in war (p. 86, 3); bellum populo Romano facere, to make war against the Roman people (C. iv, 22).

bēne, adv., well, prosperously; comp., **melius**; sup., **optime**.
bēnēfic-um, -i, N., kindness, favor.
bēnēvōl-us, -ā, -um, adj., benevolent, kind; comp., **benevolentior**; sup., **benevolentissimus**.
bib-o, -ēre, **bibi**, no sup., v. tr., drink.
Bibrōc-i, -ōrum, M. pl., the Bibroci, a tribe of Britain which occupied Berks, Sussex, Surrey and adjoining district.
bidū-um, -i, N., a space of two days.
bienni-um, -i, N., a space of two years.
bīn-i, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., two each, two by two (p. 60, 8).
bīpēdāl-is, -e, adj., two feet long or thick.
bis, adv., numeral, twice.
Bithyn-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Bithyni; a people who dwelt in Bithynia, a district between the Propontis (*Sea of Marmora*) and the Euxine (*Black Sea*).
Bithynia, -ae, F., Bithynia (see preceding).
Bithyni-us, -ā, -um, adj., Bithynian; see **Bithyni**.
bland-ior, -iri, -itus sum, v. intr. dep., flatter (with dative).
Blith-o, -ōnis, see **Sulpicius**.
bōn-ā, -ōrum, N. pl. of **bonus**; goods, property; **bona publicare**, to confiscate goods (N. H. 7).
bōnit-as, -ātis, F., goodness, richness.
bōn-us, -ā, -um, adj., good; comp., **melior**; sup., **optimus**.
bos, **bōvis**, M. or F., an ox, cow; pl., **bōves**, cattle.
brāchi-um, -i, N., arm.
brēv-is, -e, adj., short, brief; **brevi** (tempore), in a short time, soon.
brēvit-as, -ātis, F., shortness.
brēviter, adv., shortly, briefly.
Britann-i, -ōrum, pl. M., Britons.
Britanni-a, -ae, F., Britain.
Britannic-us, -ā, -um, adj., British.
brūm-a, -ae, F., the winter solstice; Dec. 21st.
Brundūs-i-um, -i, N., Brundisium, a town in south-eastern Italy (now *Brindisi*).
Brūt-us, -i, M., Brutus.

C.

C., an abbreviation for **Calus**, a Roman praenomen; see **Aurelius**, **Caesar**, **Claudius**, **Centenius**, **Flaminius**.
cādo, **cādere**, **cēcidi**, **cāsum**, v. intr., fall, be slain.
cādūc-us, -i, M., or **cādūc-um**, -i, N., a herald's staff.
caec-us, -ā, -um, adj., blind.
caed-es, -is, F., slaughter, murder.
caedo, **caedere**, **cēcidi**, **caesum**, v. tr., cut, kill, fell.
caelest-is, -e, adj., heavenly; in the plural **caelestes** (supply *dei*), the gods of heaven.
cael-um, -i, N., sky, heavens.
caerimōn-i-a, -ae, F., rite, reverence, veneration, awe.
caerul-us, -a, -um, adj., deep blue, sky-blue.
Caes-ar, -āris, M., **Caius** (or **Gaius**) **Julius Caesar**, born 100 B.C., died 44 B.C.; for **Caius** (or **Gaius**) a Roman praenomen; see **C**.
cālāmit-as, -ātis, F., disorder, misfortune, defeat.
calc-ar, -āris, N., a spur.
cāl-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, v. intr., be warm.
cāl-id-us, -a, -um, adj., warm.
callid-ē, adv., skillfully; comp., **callidius**; sup., **callidissime**; **de futuris callidissime coniciebat**, he was most skillful in forecasting the future (N. T. 1).
callidit-as, -ātis, F., skill, sagacity.
callid-us, -a, -um, adj., skillful.
Camill-us, -i, M., **Camillus**, the deliverer of Rome from the Gauls in 389 B.C.
camp-us, -i, M., plain, field; **campus Martius**, a plain between the walls of Rome and the Tiber, where the elections were held and all kinds of athletic sports were practised.
cān-is, -is, M. or F., a dog.
Cannens-is, -e, adj., of, or belonging to **Cannae**, a village of Apulia, where the Romans were defeated by **Hannibal**, 216 B.C.
cāno, **cānere**, **cēcini**, **cantum**, v. tr. and intr., sing.
Cantāb-er, -rī, M., a **Cantabrian**. The **Cantabri** were a mountain tribe of Spain dwelling in the Pyrenees.
Cantābr-i, -ōrum, pl. M.; see **Cantaber**.

C.
for Caius, a Roman
urelius, Caesar,
nius, Flaminius.
cēcidi, cāsūm, v.

t., or cādūcō-um,
f.

a, adj., blind.

slaughter, murder.

cēcidi, caesum,

j., heavenly; in the
upply del), the gods

ky, heavens.

F., rite, reverence,

um, adj., deep blue,

L., Caius (or Galus)
40 B.C., died 44 B.C.;
a Roman praeno-

F., disorder, mis-

a spur.

intr., be warm.

adj., warm.

fully; comp., cal-
didissime; de
ne coniciebat,
in forecasting the

F., skill, sagacity.

adj., skilful.

Camillus, the de-
Gauls in 389 B.C.

ain, field; camp-
between the walls
where the elec-
kinds of athletic

a dog.

of, or belonging
of Apulia, where
ed by Hannibal,

ini, cantum,

a Cantabrian.
ountain tribe of
renneae.

n, pl. M.; see

Canti-um, -i, N., Kent, a county in
south-eastern England.

cant-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and
intr., sing.

cant-us, -ūs, M., song.

cāp-er, -ri, M., a he-goat.

cap-esso, -essēre, -essivi, -essit-
tum, v. tr., undertake the management
of; capessere rempublicam, to
take part in the administration of the
state (N. T. 2).

cāpill-us, -i, M., hair; esse pro-
misso capillo, to wear long hair.

cāpio, cāpēre, cēpi, captum, v.
tr., take; captus misericordia, over-
come with pity (N. T. 8); capere con-
silium, to form a plan (N. H. 9); port-
um capere, to make the harbor (C. iv,
30); so insulam capere (C. iv, 26;
v. 8).

cap-ra, -ae, F., a she-goat.

captiv-us, -i, M., a captive, prisoner.

capt-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of
capio), taken, captured, charmed, influ-
enced.

capt-us, -ūs, M., capacity, idea;
ut est captus Germanorum,
according to German ideas (C. iv, 3).

Cāpū-a, -ae, F., Capua, the chief
city of Campania, near the present village
of Santa Maria.

cāp-ut, -itis, N., head; chief city;
mouth of a river (C. iv, 10).

carc-er, -ēris, M., a prison; in plur.,
barriers in a race-course.

cārē, adv., dearly, with affection.

cārīn-a, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

carm-en, -inis, N., song.

car-o, -nis, F., flesh; carne vivere,
to live on flesh (C. v, 14).

carp-o, -ēre, -si, -tum, v. tr., pluck.

car-r-us, -i, M., a waggon, cart.

Carthāginiens-is, -e, adj., of or
belonging to Carthage, Carthaginian.

Carthāg-o, -inis, F., Carthage, or
Karthage, a city of Northern Africa
which carried on war with Rome almost
continuously from 264 B.C. to 146 B.C.

cār-us, -ā, -um, adj., dear, beloved,
agreeable to.

Carvili-us, -i, M., Carvilius, a petty
king of Kent (C. v, 22).

cās-a, -ae, F., a cottage.

cāsē-us, -i, M., cheese.

Cass-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Cassi, a
British tribe that inhabited Hertford-
shire.

Cassi-us, -i, M., Caius Cassius
Longus, one of the assassins of Caesar.
He died 42 B.C., at Philippi.

Cassivellaun-us, -i, M., Cassivel-
launus, or Caswallon, the able command-
er-in-chief of the British army opposed
to Caesar. His chief town was Veru-
lamium (now St. Albans).

castell-um, -i, N., a fortress.

Castic-us, -i, M., Casticus, a chief of
the Sequani, whom Orgetorix induced to
seize the supreme power in his state.

castr-um, -i, N., a hut, fort; in pl.,
castr-a, -ōrum, a camp; castra
ponere, to pitch a camp; castra
munire, to fortify a camp, to pitch a
camp; castra habere, to be encamped
(N. H. 5); castra movere, to advance;
castra navalia, an encampment on
the shore for protecting the fleet and
the troops while landing; sometimes con-
nected with the ships drawn up on land
(C. v, 22).

cāsū, (abl. of cāsus, used as an) adv.,
by chance.

cās-us, -ūs, M., chance, accident.

cātēn-a, -ae, F., a chain.

Cātilīn-a, -ae, M., Lucius Sergius
Catiline, an ambitious and profligate
Roman of Cicero's time.

caus-a, -ae, F., cause, reason, pre-
text; causam interponens, alleging
as an excuse (N. T. 7); in eadem
causa, in the same position (C. iv, 4);
multis de causis, for many reasons
(C. iv, 16).

causā, adv. (really abl. of causa,
with the noun depending on it in the
gen.), for the sake of, on account of;
meā causā, for my sake; frigoris
depellendi causā, for the purpose of
warding off the cold.

cāvēo, cāvēre, cāvi, cautum,
v. tr. and intr., take precaution; ali-
quem cavere, to avoid any one; in
aliquem cavere, to take means
against one; alicui cavere, to take
means for one's safety.

cāv-um, -i, N., a cave.

cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum,
v. intr., go, yield; insequi cedentes,
to overtake the retreating foe (C. v, 16).

cēlēbr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
celebrate.

cēl-er, -ēris, -ēre, adj., swift; comp.,
celerior; sup., celerrimus.

cēlērīt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

cēlērīt-er, adv., quickly; comp., cele-
rius; sup., celerrime.

- cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,** conceal, hide.
- cēn-a, -ae, F.,** dinner, feast.
- Cēnimagni -ōrum, M. pl.,** the Cenimagni. The word Cenimagni is said to be a corruption for Icenimagni. They inhabited Norfolk and Suffolk, north of the Trinobantes.
- censēo, censēre, censūi, censum, or censitum, v. tr.,** think, consider.
- Centēnius, -i, M.,** Caius Centenius, a Roman praetor who fell in an engagement with Hannibal, 217 B.C.
- centum, num. adj., indecl.,** hundred.
- centūri-o, -ōnis, M.,** a centurion, a commander of a centuria, which at full complement numbered 100 men.
- cerno, cernere, crēvi, crētum, v. tr.,** see, perceive.
- certāmen, -inis, N.,** conflict, battle, struggle.
- certē, adv.,** at least, certainly.
- cert-us, -a, -um, adj.,** certain, fixed, true, *aliquem certiorē facere*, inform; *certior fieri*, to be informed; *certus locus*, a definite place; *certa dies*, a fixed day (c. v. 1).
- cerv-us -i, M.,** deer, stag.
- (cētēr-us), -ā, -um (nom. sing. not found), adj.,** rest.
- Cethēg-us, -i, M.,** see Publius Cornelius Cethegus, under Cornelius.
- cib-us -i, M.,** food, nourishment.
- Cicēro, -ōnis, M.,** Marcus Tullius Cicero, the most noted of Roman orators. He lived B.C. 106-B.C. 43.
- cicōnī-a, -ae, F.,** a stork.
- Cingētōr -ix, -igis, M.,** Cingetorix; (1) a Gaul attached to Caesar, and rival of Indutiomarus for the chieftainship of the Treveri (c. v. 3). (2) a British chief of Kent (c. v. 22).
- cingo, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, v. tr.,** surround.
- circā, adv. and prep. (with acc.),** about, around, in the neighborhood of (see *circum*).
- circiter, adv. (with numeral adjectives),** about, nearly.
- circū-ēo, see circumeo.**
- circūit-us, -ūs, M.,** circumference, circuit.
- circum, prep. (with acc.),** around, in the neighborhood of; *circum Aquileiam*, in the neighborhood of Aquileia.
- circum-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsi, clūsum, v. tr.,** enclose.
- circum-do, -dāre, -dēdi, -dātum, v. tr.,** place around, surround; *urbem muro (abl.) circumdare*, or *urbi (dat.) murum circumdare*, to surround the city with a wall.
- circum-dūco, -dūcēre, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr.,** lead around, draw around.
- circum-ēo, -īre, -ivi (or -ii), -itum, v. tr.,** go around, visit; *hiberna circumire*, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v. 2).
- circum-fundo, -fundēre, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr.,** pour around; in passive, surround, hem in, crowd around.
- circum-sisto, -sistēre, -stētī, no sup., v. tr. and intr.,** surround (p. 277, 7).
- circum-sto, -stāre, -stētī, no sup., v. tr. and intr.,** stand around, surround (p. 277, 7).
- circum-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēni, -ventum, v. tr.,** surround (p. 277, 7).
- cis, prep. (with acc.),** on this side of.
- citāt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of cito used as an) adj.,** rapid, swift.
- citēri-or, -ōris, adj. (p. 59, 2),** on this side, hither; *Gallia citerior*, Gaul on this (i.e., the Roman) side of the Alps (*Northern Italy*), opposed to *Gallia ulterior*, Gaul beyond the Alps (*France*).
- citō, adv.,** rapidly, swiftly; comp., *citius*; sup., *citissime*.
- cit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,** urge on, hasten.
- citrā, prep. (with acc.),** on this side of, within.
- civil-is, -e, adj.,** civil; *bellum civile*, civil war.
- civ-is, -is, M. or F.,** citizen, native.
- civit-as, -ātis, F.,** state, commonwealth; *e civitate elicere*, to banish (N. T. 8).
- clād-es, -is, F.,** defeat, disaster.
- clam, adv.,** secretly.
- clāmīf-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,** shout, exclaim.
- clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,** call, shout; *clamatum est*, a shout was raised (p. 164, 2).
- clām-or, -ōris, M.,** shout.
- clandestīn-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** secret; *consilia clandestina*, privy counsels (N. H. 2).
- clār-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** bright, clear, distinguished.

-cludere, -clūsi,
close.

-re, -dēdi, -dātum,
surround; urbem
circumdare, or urbi
circumdare, to sur-
round wall.

-ducere, -dūxi,
lead around, draw

-ivi (or -ii), -itum,
sit; hiberna cir-
ca, the winter quarters

-fundere, -fūdi,
surround; in passive,
draw around.

-istere, -stēti, no
sup., surround (p. 277, 7).

-re, -stēti, no sup.,
surround, surround

-venire, -vēni,
surround (p. 277, 7).

-), on this side of,
(perf. part. pass. of
rapid, swift.

-), (p. 59, 2), on this
interior, Gaul on
this side of the Alps
descended to Gallia ul-
tra Alpes (France).

-), swiftly; comp.,
rapidly.

-tum, v. tr., urge

-), on this side of,

-civil; bellum

-citizen, native.

-state, common-
-cere, to banish

-at, disaster.

-ātum, v. intr.,

-ātum, v. intr.,
-n est, a shout

-hout.

-um, adj., secret;
-), privy counsels

-), bright, clear,

-classari-i, -ōrum, pl. M., soldiers
serving in the fleet, marines.

-classari-us, -ā, -um, adj., belong-
ing to the fleet.

-class-is, -is, F., fleet.

-Clastidi-um, -i, N., Clastidium (now
Chiasteggio), a fortress on the Padus (*Po*),
in Gallia Cisalpina. Nepos confuses the
taking of this fortress with the battle of
Ticinus, B.C. 218.

-Claudi-us, -i, M., Claudius; (1) Mar-
cus Claudius Marcellus, born about 268
B.C., died 208 B.C., consul 222 B.C., 215
B.C., 214 B.C., 210 B.C., 208 B.C., in which
year he was slain by Hannibal in battle
at Venusia. He took Syracuse in 212
B.C. (2) M. Claudius Marcellus, son of
No. 1, in whose year of office, 183 B.C.,
both Hannibal and Scipio Africanus died.
(3) Appius Claudius, consul with Lucius
Domitius, B.C. 54. He was brother of
the infamous Clodius whom Milo mur-
dered, and was a well known lawyer and
politician of Rome.

-claudo, claudere, clausi, clau-
sum, v. tr., shut, close.

-clémenti-a, -ae, F., kindness, mercy.

-clien-s, -tis, M. or F., a dependant.

-clipe-us, -i, M., a shield.

-cliv-us, -i, M., a slope.

-Cn. = Cneius, see Baebius, Pompeius,
Servilius.

-Cnei-us, -i, M., see Cn.

-coact-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass.
of *cogo* used as an) adj., forced; *hac*
necessitate coactus, compelled by
this necessity (N. T. 8).

-caelum, see caelum.

-cō-ēo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, v.
intr., come together, assemble, meet.

-coep-i, -isse, v. defec. (p. 145), begin,
begin.

-cō-ercō, -ercere, -ercūi, -er-
citum, v. tr., check, restrain.

-cōgitāti-o, -ōnis, F., a thinking,
thought, reflection, meditation.

-cōgit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
weigh well, ponder, think, plan.

-cognāti-o, -ōnis, F., relationship,
kindred.

-cognōm-en, -inis, N., a family name,
a name. Each Roman had regularly three
names, the praenomen, indicating the in-
dividual like our Christian name; the no-
men indicating the gens, or clan, or tribe
to which he belonged; the cognomen or
family name. Caius (praenomen),
Julius (nomen), Caesar (cognomen);
an agnomen was often added for honor

or character, as Africanus to Scipio,
or Iustus to Aristides; hence cog-
nōmīne (N. A. 1) = agnōmīne.

-cōgnosco, cognoscere, cognōvi,
cognitum, v. tr., know, learn, ascertain
(p. 145, 2).

-cōgo, cōgere, cōegi, cōactum,
v. tr., collect, compel, oblige; equita-
tum *cogere*, to collect cavalry (C. v. 3).

-cōhor-s, -tis, F., a cohort, the tenth
part of a legion (see *legio*).

-cōhort-or, -āri, ātus sum, v. tr.
dep., exhort, encourage, animate, urge.

-collābēfact-us, -ā, -um, perf. part.
of *collabefio*.

-collābē-fio, -fiēri, -factus sum,
v. pass., be supplanted.

-collaud-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., praise, extol.

-collēg-a, -ae, M., colleague, part-
ner in office.

-col-ligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum,
v. tr., collect, assemble.

-coll-is, -is, M., a hill.

-col-lōco, -lōcare, -lōcāvī, -lōcā-
tum, v. tr., station; in *matrimo-
nium collocare*, or *collocare* alone,
to give in marriage (N. A. 3); in *statione*
collocati, stationed on guard (C. v. 15).

-col-lōqui-um, -i, N., conversation,
conference.

-cōlo, cōlere, cōlūi, cultum, v.
tr., till, cultivate; honor, worship.

-cōlōnī-a, -ae, F., settlement, colony.

-cōl-or, -ōris, M., color.

-cōm-a, -ae, F., hair.

-cōm-es, -itis, M., companion (on a
journey).

-cōmīt-or, -āri, ātus sum, v. tr.
dep., attend, be a companion to.

-commēat-us, -ūs, M., a coming and
going; supplies; *duobus commē-
atibus*, by two relays (C. v. 23).

-commēmōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. tr., make mention of, recall to mind,
relate.

-com-mendo, -mendāre, -men-
dāvī, -mendātum, v. tr., commit to
protection, entrust.

-commilit-o, -ōnis, M., fellow-soldier,
comrade.

-com-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. tr., engage; *committere*
proelium cum hostibus, to engage
in battle with the enemy; in *Nep. A. 1*,
commit a crime; *nihil his com-
mittere*, to entrust nothing to these
(C. iv. 5).

Commī-us, -i, M., *Cominius*, a Gaul, chief of the *Atrebatēs*.

commōdē, adv., correctly, profitably; **commodius verba dicere**, to speak more correctly (N. T. 10).

com-mōdum, -mōdi, N., convenience, profit; **quas sul quisque commodi fecerat**, which each had made for his own convenience (C. V. 8).

com-mōdus, -mōdā, -mōdum, adj., convenient, favorable, fit, easy.

com-mōror, -mōrārī, -mōrātus sum, v. dep. intr., delay, stay, remain.

com-mōvō, -mōvēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr., disturb, agitate, alarm.

commūnī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., share with, communicate, impart.

commun-fo, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., fortify strongly.

commūn-is, -e, adj., common, general, affable, courteous; **classis communis**, the combined fleet (N. T. 3); **communi consilio**, after joint deliberation (C. V. 11).

commutāti-o, -ōnis, F., change.

commūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., change, alter, abandon.

compār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., make ready, prepare; **copias comparare**, to collect forces; **re frumentaria comparata**, after collecting a supply of corn (C. IV. 7).

compār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., compare.

com-pello, -pellere, -pūllī, -pūllum, v. tr., drive in a body.

com-pērio, -pērire, -pēri, -pērtum, v. tr., find out, discover.

com-plēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, v. tr., fill completely; **naves militibus complere**, to man ships with soldiers (C. IV. 26).

com-plūres, -plura, adj. pl., very many, several.

com-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. tr., settle; **bellum componere**, to make peace, to put an end to the war (N. H. 6).

comport-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bring together, collect.

com-prēhendo, -prēhendere, -prēhendī, -prēhensum, v. tr., seize, arrest.

com-prōb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., approve of, ratify.

cōnāt-um, -i, N., attempt.

cōnāt-us, -ūs, M., attempt.

con-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-

sum, v. tr., yield, grant, allow; **Argos concessit**, he withdrew to Argos (N. T. 8).

con-cīdo, -cīdere, -cīdi, no sup., v. intr., fall completely, fall together.

con-cido, -cīdere, -cīdi, cīsum, v. tr., cut to pieces, rout utterly.

con-cīl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., win over, gain, reconcile.

concīl-um, -i, N., a meeting, assembly; **habere concilium**, to hold a meeting (C. IV. 19).

con-cit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., urge forward, arouse; **risum concitare**, to excite laughter (N. II. 11).

con-clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., shout, or cry out together.

con-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursum, v. intr., run together, rush; **eo concursus est**, a rush was made to that point; **in navem concurrere**, to charge a vessel (N. II. 10).

con-curs-us, -ūs, M., assembly, attack; **ex eo concursus**, from that collision (C. V. 10).

con-demn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, sentence.

con-dīc-i-o, -ōnis, F., terms.

con-ditio, same as *condicio*.

condit-or, -ōris, M., founder of a city.

con-do, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum, v. tr., found, establish, build.

con-dōn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., forgive, pardon.

Condrūs-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Condrusi*, a people of north-eastern Gaul, on the right bank of the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liège*.

con-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxi, -dūctum, v. tr., bring together, hire.

con-fercio, -fercire, -fersi, -fertum, v. tr., pack together; to cause to take close order; **legione conferta**, owing to the legion being in close order (C. IV. 32).

con-fēro, -ferre, -tūllī, -collātum, v. tr., bring together, gather, collect; **se conferre**, to betake oneself; **facta conferre**, to compare deeds (N. H. 13).

confertus. see *confercio*.

confestim, adv., immediately; **confestim a proelio**, immediately after the battle.

con-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., do thoroughly; **bello confecto**, when the war was over (C. IV. 16); **rem**

grant, allow; Argos
withdrew to Argos (N.

ère, -cidi, no sup.,
tely, fall together.

ère, -cidi, cisum,
rout utterly.

e, -avi, -atum, v.
reconcile.

N., a meeting, as-
concilium, to hold

-avi, -atum, v. tr.,
se; risum concil-
ter (N. II. 11).

e, -avi, -atum, v.
ut together.

rère, -curri, cur-
together, rush; eo
a rush was made to
em concurrere,
II. 10).

s, M., assembly, at-
ter, from that col-

re, -avi, -atum.
ence.

s, F., terms.

consecro.

M., founder of a

idi, -ditum, v. tr.,

-avi, -atum, v.

m, pl. M., the Con-
th-eastern Gaul, on
Mosa (*Meuse*) in
modern Namur and

re, -duxi, -duc-
ether, hire.

re, -fersi, fer-
ther; to cause to
ione conferta.
ing in close order

ttili, collatum,
ather, collect; se
oneself; facta
deeds (N. II. 13).

infercio.

mediately; con-
mediately after

-feci, -fectum,
ello confecto,
(C. IV. 16); rem

conficere, to complete a matter (C. IV. 11); itinere confecto, after the march was made (C. IV. 14).

con-fido, -fidere, -fusus sum, semi-dep., v. intr., trust thoroughly (p. 278, foot note).

con-firm-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., establish, cheer up.

con-fitèor, -fitèri, -fessus sum, v. tr. dep., confess fully, avow.

con-fligo, -figère, -fixi, -flictum, v. tr., strike; proelio configere, to engage in battle (C. V. 15).

con-fluè-us, -ntis, M., of rivers; the confluence, the meeting of rivers (C. IV. 15).

con-fodio, -fodère, -fodi, -fos-sum, v. tr., pierce through.

con-fugio, -fugère, -fugi, -fugitum, v. intr., flee for refuge.

con-gèro, -gèrere, -gessi, -gestum, v. tr., carry or bring together, collect.

con-grèdi-or, -grèdi, -gressus sum, v. tr., meet, charge; inter se congredi, to charge each other.

con-icio, -icère, -icèci, -iectum, v. tr., throw together (at a point); in fugam conicere, to put to flight; se in fugam conicere, to betake oneself to flight (C. IV. 12); culpam in aliquem conicere, to cast the blame on some one (C. V. 27); in vincula conicere, to throw into prison (C. IV. 27); de futuris callidissime conicere, to forecast the future most skilfully (N. T. 1).

con-iunctim, adv., jointly in common.

con-iungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum, v. tr., unite, join.

con-iurati-o, -onis, F., league; facere coniurationem, to form a league (C. IV. 30).

con-iur-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., form a league.

con-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr. dep., attempt; conor ut faciam, I attempt to do (p. 292, 1).

con-quir-o, -quirère, -quisivi, -quistum, v. tr., seek after.

con-scendo, -scendère, -scendi, -scensum, v. tr., embark in, mount; in navem conscendere, to embark on a vessel (C. V. 7); in equum conscendere, to mount a horse.

con-scienti-a, -ae, F., conscious-ness, knowledge, feeling.

con-scisco, -sciscère, -scivi (scii), -scitum, v. intr., unite, agree.

consci-us, -a, -um, adj., conscious, accessory to.

con-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr., enrol, levy troops.

conscript-us, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of conscribo), usually in the phrase Patres conscripti, Conscrip-t Fathers, i.e., the Roman Senators, so called because their names were entered on the roll of the Senators.

con-secr-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., consecrate.

con-sect-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr., dep., follow after, pursue vigorously.

consedissent, see consido.

consens-us, -us, M., consent, agree-ment.

con-sentio, -sentire, -sensì, -sensum, v. intr., agree, conspire.

con-séquor, -séqui, -sécutus (or séquutus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow, overtake, gain, get; id consequi, to carry out this (N. II. 10).

con-séro, -sérere, -sérui, -ser-tum, v. tr., join together, unite, bring together; proelium or pugnam or manum conserere, to engage in battle.

con-serv-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., save, maintain.

con-sidèr-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., examine carefully, consider.

con-sido, -sidère, -sédi, -sessum, v. intr., settle, halt; copiae consi-dunt, the forces encamp (C. V. 9).

consili-um, -i, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence; capere consili-um, to form a plan (N. II. 9; C. IV. 13); inire consilium, to adopt a plan (C. IV. 5); communi consilio, after joint deliberation (C. V. 6); publico consilio, by a public plan (C. V. 1); consilio in-stituto, from carrying out his appointed plan (C. V. 4).

con-sim-il-is, -e, adj., very like, like in every particular.

con-sisto, -sistère, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr., stand, halt; consist of; con-sistit in carne, it consists of flesh; in fluctibus est consistendum, they had to keep their footing among the waves (C. IV. 24).

con-sól-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

con-spect-us, -us, M., sight, appear-ance.

con-spicio, -spicère, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., observe, see, perceive.

con-spic-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr. dep., see, get a sight of, espy.

constanter, adv. steadily, resolutely, uniformly.

constantia, -ae, F., firmness, constancy, resolution.

con-sterno, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, v. tr., cover with, cover over.

con-stitūo, -stitūere, -stitui, -stitūtum, v. tr., draw up, a line of battle; classem, navem, constituere, to move a fleet, a ship; die constituta, on a set day; portus constitutus est, a port was made (N. T. 6); domicilium constituere, to fix his abode (N. T. 10); his rebus constitutis, when this was arranged (C. V. 5).

con-sto, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, v. intr., be formed; impers. constat, it is admitted, it is certain (p. 162).

consuerunt = **consueverunt**.

con-suēco, -suescere, -suevi, -suetum, v. intr., become accustomed; pass., be accustomed.

con-suētūd-o, -nis, F., custom, habit; ex consuetudine, according to custom (C. IV. 32).

consueverant, see **consuesco**.

consul, -ulis, M., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates chosen annually at Rome.

consul-āris, -āre, adj., of, or belonging to a consul, consular.

consul-āris, -āris, M., one of consular rank, one who had been consul.

consulāt-us, -ūs, M., the consulship, the office of consul.

consul-o, -ere, -ūi, -ultum, v. tr., deliberate, plan; alicui consulare, to consult for one's benefit; aliquem consulare, to ask one's advice; in aliquem consulare, to take measures against one; consulare sibi, to look after himself (N. T. 8); civitati consulare, to take measures for the interest of the state (C. V. 3).

consulto, adv., on purpose, designedly; often de consulto; consulto cedere, to purposely retreat (C. V. 16).

consult-um, -i, N., decree, resolution, decision.

con-sūmo, -sūm, v., -sumpsi, -sumptum, v. tr., waste; tempus consumere, to waste time; aestatem consumere, to spend the summer (C. V. 4); magna pars diei consumpta, after a great part of the day had been spent (C. V. 2).

con-surgo, -surgere, -surrexi, -surrectum, v. intr., rise in a body, arise.

con-tāgi-o, -ōnis, F., contact.

con-temno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum, v. tr., despise, hold in contempt.

contemptus, perf. part. pass. of **contemno**.

con-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, v. intr., strive for, hasten to, push forward, fight; apud eos contendit, he maintained before them (N. T. 7); in fines Sugambrorum contendit, he marches into the territories of the Sugambri (C. IV. 18).

contenti-o, -ōnis, F., struggling; gaining a battle.

con-tent-us, -ā, -um, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4), content with.

con-test-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr., invoke.

con-texo, -texere, -texui, -textum, v. tr., weave, bind together.

con-ticesco, -ticescere, -ticui, no sup.; v. intr., be silent.

contine-re, -ntia (properly pres. part. of **contineo**, used as an adj., with terra understood; literally, the uninterrupted land, the continent).

continenter, adv., constantly, continually.

continenti-a, -ae, F., self-restraint.

con-tinēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr., hold together, bound, restrain, hem in; se continere, to keep themselves together; civitatem in officio continere, to keep the state loyal (C. V. 3); in officio continere, to keep him loyal (C. V. 7).

con-tingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, v. tr., touch, extend to, reach; impers. contingit (p. 182), it happens.

continūo, adv., immediately.

continūus, -ā, -um, adj., continuous.

con-tio, -tioniis, F., assembly; in contione populi prodire, to appear before an assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

con-trā, prep. (with acc. only), against, opposite to; contra Gallias, facing the divisions of Gaul (C. IV. 20).

con-trā, adv., contrary to; contra atque esset dictum, contrary to what has been said (C. IV. 13).

con-trāho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractum, v. tr., draw together, collect.

con-trāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., opposite, contrary.

contrōversi-a, -ae, F., dispute.

con-tūmēli-a, -ae, F., slight.

h, F., contact.
nnère, tempel,
espise, hold in con-

rf. part. pass. of

ère, tendi, ten-
or, hasten to, push
eos contendit,
them (N. T. 7); in
um contendit,
territories of the

s, F., struggling;

-um, adj. (with
with.

-atus sum, v.

e, texui, tex-
ed together.

escère, ticul.
ent.

(properly pres.
ed as an) adj., with
terally, the unin-
tinent.

, constantly, con-

F., self-restraint.

a, tinui, ten-
together, bound,

continere, to
her; civitatem

, to keep the state
cio continere,

(7).

re, tigi, tac-
xtend to, reach;

182), it happens.
mediately.

, adj., continuous.

, assembly; in
prodire, to ap-
ply of the people

cc. only), against,
Gallias, facing

iv, 20).

ary to; contrâ
m, contrary to

3).

s, traxi, trac-
er, collect.

a, adj., opposite,

F., dispute.

F., slight.

con-valesco, -valescère, -vālūi,
no sup.; v. intr., grow strong, recover.

con-vall-is, -is, F., valley.

con-vēho, -vēhère, -vexi, -vec-
tum, v. tr., carry together, convey.

con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ven-
tum, v. tr. and intr., come together,
assemble; with acc., intervī, v., meet;
condiciones non convenerunt,
the terms were not agreed to (N. II. 6).

convenit, impers. v. intr. (with dat.),
it becomes.

con-ventus, -ventus, M., an assem-
bly, assize; conventum peragere,
to hold an assize (C. V. 1).

con-vertō, -vertère, -verti, -ver-
sum, v. tr., turn, turn about; in fugam
convertere, to turn in flight.

con-vinco, -vincère, -vici, -vic-
tum, v. tr., conquer completely; prove
guilty, convict.

con-voco, -vocāre, -vocāvi, -vō-
cātum, v. tr., summon, assemble.

co-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum, v.
intr. dep., of a storm; arise, spring up.

cōpi-a, -ae, F., abundance, plenty,
quantity; pl., copiae, forces, troops;
summis copis, with all his forces (C.
v. 17); copias instruere, to draw up
troops (C. v. 18).

cōpiōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., well sup-
plied, rich, wealthy.

cōquo, cōquere, coxi, coctum,
v. intr., cook.

cōr, cordis, N., heart.

cōram, prep. (with abl.), face to face
with, in presence of; coram populo,
in presence of the people; coram per-
spicit, he sees in person (C. v. 11).

Corcyr-a, -ae, F., Corcyra (now
Corfu), one of the Ionian islands on the
coast of Epirus and Acarnania.

Corcyræ-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to Corcyra, Corcyraean.

Cōrinth-us, -i, F., Corinth, the chief
town of Achaia, a district on the northern
part of the Peloponnesus.

Cornēli-us, -i, M., Cornelius, (1)
Publius Cornelius Scipio, consul 218 B.C.,
killed in Spain 211 B.C. (2) Publius Cor-
nelius Scipio Africanus (son of No. 1),
born about 234 B.C., died 183 B.C. He
conquered Hannibal, at Zama, 202 B.C.

(3) Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus
(brother of No. 2), consul 190 A.C., defeated
Antiochus. (4) Caius Cornelius Cethegus,
consul 197 B.C., when Philip V. of Mace-
don was defeated by Flaminius at Cynos-
cephalæ. (5) Publius Cornelius Cethegus,
consul 181 B.C.

corn-ū, -ūs, N., horn, wing of an
army.

cōrōn-a, -ae, F., crown.

corp-us, -ōris, N., body.

cor-ripō, -ripere, -ripui, -rep-
tum, v. tr., seize violently, carry off.

cor-rumpo, -rumpere, -rupi,
-ruptum, v. tr., break in pieces, destroy,
ruin, bribe (N. II. 2).

Cōr-us (or Caurus), -i, M., the
N.-W. wind.

cōtidian-us, -ā, -um, adj., daily.

cōtidie, adv., daily.

Cott-a, -ae, M., see Aurunculeius.

cras, adv., to-morrow.

crass-us, -ā, -um, adj., thick, coarse.

Crass-us, -i, M., Marcus Licinius
Crassus, surnamed Dives (the Rich),
was a member of the First Triumvirate
along with Caesar and Pompey (60 B.C.).
He fell at Carrhae, 53 B.C., in a war
against the Parthians.

crāt-is, -is, F., wicker-work, a hurdle.

crēb-er, -rā, -rum, adj., thick,
numerous, frequent.

crē-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, v. tr.
and intr., trust, believe, think, suppose
(p. 164).

crē-mo, -māre, -māvi, -mātum,
v. tr., burn.

crē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
make, elect, choose, appoint (p. 90, 2).

cre-sco, -scere, -vi, -tum, v. intr.,
increase, grow, grow up.

Crēt-a, -ae, F., Crete (now Candia),
an island in the Mediterranean, south of
Greece.

Crētens-is, -e, adj., of or belonging
to Crete; in the plural, Cretenses,
Cretans.

crī-men, -minis, N., charge.

crī-nis, -nis, F., hair.

crūcīā-tus, -tūs, M., torture.

crūdēl-is, -ē, adj., cruel, hard-
hearted.

crūdēl-itas, -itātis, F., cruelty,
barbarity.

crūdēl-iter, adv., cruelly.

crus, crūris, N., leg.

cūbil-e, -is, N., a bed.

cūius, gen. sing. of quis or qui
(p. 126).

cūiusque, gen. sing. of quisque
(p. 132).

cūiusvis, gen. sing. of quivis
(p. 132).

cul-men, -mīnis, N., height, summit, top.

culp-a, -ae, F., blame, fault; **culpam incere**, to throw the blame upon (c. iv, 2); **culpam conicere**, to throw the blame (c. iv, 27).

culp-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., blame, find fault with.

cultūra, -ae, F., culture; **agri cultura** or **agricultura**, agriculture.

cult-us, -ūs, M., cultivation, mode of life, civilization.

cum, prep. (with abl.), with, along with; enclitic with **me**, **te**, **se**, **nobis**, **vobis**, **quibus**, as **mecum**, **tecum**, **secum**, **nobiscum**, **vobiscum**, **quibuscum** (p. 105, 8).

cum (also written **quum**), adv., when, after, since, although (p. 203, 297, 4; 300, 9, 10); **cum...tum**, both...and; **cum** (or **quum**) **primum**, as soon as (p. 298, 2).

cunctāti-o, -ōnis, F., delay.

cunct-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., delay, hesitate, doubt.

cunct-us, -ā, -um, adj., all, altogether.

cūpidē, adj., eagerly.

cūpidit-as, -ātis, F., eagerness.

cūpid-us, -ā, -um, adj., desirous of (with genitive, p. 281, 9); **cupidus rerum novarum**, anxious for a change of government (c. v, 6).

cūp-īo, -ēre, -īvi (-ī), -itum, v. tr., long for, wish, desire.

cūr, adv., why?, for what purpose?

cūr-a, -ae, F., care, anxiety.

Cūr-ēs, -ium, pl. F., Cures, a town near Rome.

cūrī-a, -ae, F., Senate house.

Cūrī-us, -ī, M., Curius, a Roman name.

cūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., care for; in Caesar always with acc. of object and gerundive part.; **exercitum transportandum curare**, to cause the army to be transported (c. iv, 29); **naves aedificandas curare**, to have ships built (c. v, 1).

curro, **currēre**, **cūcurri**, **cursum**, v. intr., run; **curritur**, they ran (p. 164, 2).

curr-us, -ūs, M., chariot.

cur-sus, -sūs, M., a running (c. iv, 35); voyage; **tenere cursum**, to hold on their course (c. iv, 28; v, 5).

cur-vus, -vā, -vum, adj., crooked, bending, winding.

custōdī-a, -ae, F., guard, picket.

cus-tōd-īo, -īre -īvi -itum, v. tr., guard, watch.

cus-tōs, -tōdis, M., guard, watch.

Cyrēnae-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the people of Cyrene, a town of Northern Africa.

D.

D.C. = **sexcenti**, six hundred.

Dāc-us, -ī, M., a Dacian. The Dacians occupied the south-eastern part of the modern kingdom of Austria.

damn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, pass sentence upon; **capitis damnare**, to condemn to death (p. 281, 12).

damn-um, -ī, N., loss.

Danūbī-us, -ī, M., the Danube.

dātus, perf. part. of **do**.

dē, prep. (with abl.), of, from, concerning; **his de rebus certior factus**, being informed of these events (c. iv, 5); **de tertia vigilia**, after the third watch was set; **multis de causis**, for many reasons (c. iv, 10); **qua de causa**, and for this reason; **de oppidis demigrare**, to remove from the towns (c. iv, 19); **de improvise**, unexpectedly.

dē-a, -ae, F. (for declension, p. 6, 2), goddess.

dēb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr., owe; ought (p. 162, 4, note).

dēbil-ito, -itāre, -itāvi, -itātum, v. tr., weaken, enfeeble, crush.

dē-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., retire, leave, depart from; **e vita decessit**, he died.

dēcēm, indecl. card. num., ten.

dē-erno, -ernēre, -crēvi, -crētum, v. tr., decide, determine; **cum hoc eodem decernit**, he fights a decisive battle with this same one (N. II, 4); **erant decreturi**, they intended to fight (N. II, 10).

dē-cert-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., fight earnestly, fight a pitched battle, decide by a battle.

dēcet, **dēcēre**, **dēcūit**, no sup., impers., it is becoming.

dēcīmus, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., tenth.

dē-cīpio, -cīpere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr., catch, deceive, cheat.

dēclār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., make clear, announce.

dēcliv-is, -ē, adj., sloping.

F., guard, picket.
-ivi -itum, v. tr.,
M., guard, watch.
m., pl. M., the people
Northern Africa.

six hundred.
badian. The Dacians
eastern part of the
Austria.

-avi, -atum, v. tr.,
ence upon; capitis
to death (p. 281,

loss.
., the Danube.
of do.

bl.), of, from, con-
bus certior fac-
of these events
vigilia, after the
set; multis de
reasons (c. iv, 16);
draw for this reason;
grare, to remove
(p. 19); de impro-

declension, p. 6, 2),

-itum, v. tr., owe;
le, crush.

-itavi, -itatum,
le, crush.
e, -cessi, -ces-
leave, depart from;
died.

rd. num., ten.
re, -crēvi, -crē-
determine; cum
nit, he fights a de-
same one (N. II. 4);
they intended to

-avi, -atum, v.
tr., fight a pitched
battle.

-decūit, no sup.,

.,
a, ord. num. adj.,

-cēpi, -ceptum,
cheat.

-avi, -atum, v. tr.,

sloping.

dēcōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
adorn.

dēcrēt-um, -i, N., decree, decision;
stare decreto, to abide by a decision.

dē-curro, -currere, curri (or cū-
curri, -cursum, v. intr., run down,
hasten.

dēc-us, -ōris, N., ornament, honor.

dē-dēc-us, -ōris, N., disgrace; de-
decus admittere, to commit a dis-
graceful act (c. iv, 25).

dē-diti-o, -ōnis, F., surrender; in
deditionem accipere (or recipere),
to receive in surrender; in deditionem
venire, to surrender.

dē-do, -dōre, -didi, -ditum, v. tr.,
give up, surrender; totum se de-
didit reipublicae, he devoted himself
wholly to public affairs (N. T. 1).

dē-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -duc-
tum, v. tr., lead away, bring down, with-
draw; navem deducere, to launch a
vessel; uxorem deducere (or du-
cere), to lead home a wife, to marry
(c. v, 14); suos deducere, to with-
draw their men (c. iv, 30).

dē-fecti-o, -ōnis, F., revolt, rebel-
lion.

dē-fendo, -fendēre, -fendi, -fen-
sum, v. tr., defend, repel, guard.

dēfens-or, -ōris, M., defender.

dē-fero, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, v. tr.,
carry down or away; report, announce;
summum imperium ad eum de-
ferre, to confer the supreme command
on him (N. H. 3); paulo infra deferri,
to be carried a little farther down
(c. iv, 36); Caesaris mandata de-
ferre, to bear the orders of Caesar
(c. iv, 27).

dē-fervesco, -fervescēre, -fer-
vūi, no sup., v. intr., cool down.

dē-fess-us, -ā, -um, adj., grow
weary, exhausted.

dē-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum,
v. tr., fail, be insufficient, run short; si
tempus anni deficeret, if the time
of the year was insufficient (c. iv, 20); ab
amicitia populi Romani deficere,
to cast off the alliance of the Roman
people (c. v, 3).

dē-figo, -figēre, -fixi, -fixum, v.
tr., fix, fasten, drive down.

dē-flāgro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
intr., be burned down.

dē-flūo, -flūere, -fluxi, -fluxum,
v. intr., flow down.

dē-form -le, -e, adj., ill-shaped, un-
sightly (c. iv, 2).

dē-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgi, -fūgi-
tum, v. intr. and tr., flee from, avoid.

dē-icio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v.
tr., throw down, cast down; de spe
deiectus, disappointed in hope;
magno sui cum periculo deici, to
be driven down with great danger to
themselves (c. iv, 28).

dēinceps, adv., one after the other,
in succession, in turns.

dēinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards,
then, next.

dēlāt-us, see dēfēro.

dē-lect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
delight, please (p. 278, foot note).

dē-lect-us, -ūs, M., a selection, levy
of soldiers.

dē-lēo, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētum, v. tr.,
destroy, annihilate, wipe out.

dē-libē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
weigh, consider; re deliberata, when
they had considered the proposal (c. iv, 9).

dē-lig-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
fasten; navem ad ancoram deli-
gare, to anchor.

dē-lig-o, -ligēre, -lēgi, -lectum,
v. tr., choose, select, levy.

dē-litesco, -litescēre, -lītūi, no
sup., v. intr., lie hid, lie in ambush.

Delph-i, -ōrum, pl. M., Delphi (now
Kastri), a city of Phocis, in Northern
Greece, famed for its temple and oracle of
Apollo.

Dēli-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belong-
ing to Delos; Delian.

Dēl-us (or Dēl-os), -i, F., Delos
(now Dili), the central island of the
Cyclades, noted for the temple of Apollo,
which served as the treasury of the
states that formed the Delian confederacy.

dē-menti-a, -ae, F., madness; sum-
mae dementiae esse, to be the
height of madness (c. iv, 13).

dē-mēto, -mētēre, -messūi,
-messum, v. tr., cut down, reap.

dē-migr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
intr., move from, depart from, emigrate.

dē-minū-o, -minūere, -minūi,
-minutum, v. tr., lessen, impair.

dē-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. tr., send down; se animo
demittere, to lose heart.

dēmo, dēmēre, dempsī, demp-
tum, v. tr. take down or off, remove.

dē-monstr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. tr., point out, show, state, mention;
explain.

- dē-mōr-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v.**
intr. dep., delay, linger.
- dēmum, adv.,** at length, at last.
- dēnār-i-us, -i, M.,** denarius, a Roman coin worth about twenty cents.
- dēn-i, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj.,**
ten each, ten apiece, by tens.
- dēniquē, adv.,** at last, finally; in a word, in short.
- den-s, -tis, M.,** tooth.
- dens-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** thick, closely packed, crowded.
- dē-nunti-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.**
tr., announce, declare, threaten, order.
- dē-pello, -pellēre, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr.,** drive away, dislodge, turn aside;
ab eodem gradu depulsus est, he was driven from his foothold by the same one (N. T. 5).
- dē-pēreo, -pērire, -pēriui (-pērii),**
no sup., v. intr., be lost, perish.
- dē-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsi, -pōsitum, v. tr.,** lay aside, cast away;
animam deponere, to relinquish his life;
spem deponere, to give up hope (A. V. 19).
- dē-pōpū-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v.**
tr. dep., lay waste, plunder.
- dē-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.**
tr., carry off, remove.
- dē-prēc-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr.**
dep., beg for mercy; **neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa,** for the purpose of neither denying the fact nor of begging him for mercy (C. V. 6).
- dē-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
fight to the last, fight a pitched battle.
- dē-rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
withdraw, take away from, weaken.
- dē-scendo, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum, v. tr.,** climb down, descend;
in Graeciam descendere, to attack Greece (N. A. 1).
- dē-sēro, -sērēre, -sērui, -sertum, v. tr.,** desert, leave.
- dēs-ert-or, -ōris, M.,** deserter.
- dē-sidē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
wish for, long for, want; **neque ulla omnino navis desideratur,** not a single ship is lost at all (C. V. 23).
- dēs-id-i-a, -ae, F.,** sloth, indolence, idleness.
- dē-silio, -silire, -silui, -sultum, v.**
intr., leap down, dismount.
- dē-sino, -sinēre, -sivi (-sifi), -situm, v. intr.,** leave off, cease, stop.
- dē-sisto, -sistēre, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr.,** leave off, give over, cease from;
- proello desistere,** to give up the battle; **sententia desistere,** to give up the notion.
- dē-spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**
and intr., give up hope, despair; **rebus desperatis,** despairing of success (N. H. 8).
- dē-spicio, -spicēre, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr.,** look down upon, despise.
- dē-spondēo, -spondēre, -spondi, -sponsum, v. tr.,** promise in marriage, betroth.
- dē-stringo, -stringēre, -strinxī, -strictum, v. tr.,** draw a sword, unsheath.
- dē-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr.,** be wanting, fail, be lacking.
- dē-sūper, adv.,** from above.
- dētēr-ior, -iōris, adj.,** comp. (positive wanting), inferior, worse; superlative, **deterimus.**
- dē-terreo, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, v. tr.,** frighten, frighten off, prevent; **deterreere ne or quin** (p. 185, 2).
- dē-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr.,** keep back, stop, delay, hinder.
- dē-triment-um, -i, N.,** injury, loss, damage.
- dēturb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
cast down, drive away.
- dē-us, -i, M. (for declension, p. 13, 2),**
a god.
- dē-vinco, -vincēre, -vici, -victum, v. tr.,** conquer, overcome.
- dē-volvo, -volvēre, -volvi, -volutum, v. tr.,** roll down.
- dē-vōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
devour.
- dē-vōvēo, -vōvēre, -vōvi, -vōtum, v. tr.,** devote.
- dext-er, -rā, -rum, adj.,** right, on the right hand.
- dextērā or dextrā (with manus understood), adj.,** the right hand.
- Diā-na, -ae, F.,** Diana, the goddess of archery and hunting.
- dīc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
dedicate, devote, offer.
- dico, dicēre, dixi, dictum, v. tr.,**
say, speak, tell, appoint; **causam dicere,** to plead a cause; **de quo ante ab nobis dictum est,** of whom we have made mention before (C. V. 6).
- dictāt-or, -ōris, M.,** dictator, a Roman magistrate appointed only in seasons of emergency and invested with absolute

re, to give up the
desistere, to give

-āvi, -ātum, v. tr.
hope, despair; rebus
siring of success (N. H.

ere, -spexi, -spec-
tūm upon, despise.

pondere, -spondi,
promise in marriage,

ringere, -strinxi,
draw a sword, un-

-fui, v. intr., be
ing.

from above.

-i, adj., comp. (posi-
tor, worse; superla-

ere, -terrui, -ter-
ren, frighten off, pre-
e or quin (p. 185,

re, -tinui, -ten-
back, stop, delay,

-i, N., injury, loss,

-vi, -ātum, v. tr.,

declension, p. 13, 2),

re, -vici, -vic-
overcome.

re, -volvi, -vōiū-

-vi, -ātum, v. tr.,

re, -vōvi, -vō-

-a, adj., right, on

-ā (with manus
right hand.

-ana, the goddess

-ātum, v. tr.,

-i, dictum, v.
point; causam

-e; de quo ante
st, of whom we

re (c. v. 6).

-i, dictator, a Ro-
ed only in seasons
ed with absolute

power during his term of office, which was
not to exceed six months.

dict-um, -i, N., word, order, com-
mand.

dis-es, -ei, M. or F. (in sing.), M. (in
pl.), day.

diff-ero, differre, distūli, dilā-
tum, v. tr., spread, scatter; put off,
delay; inter se differre, to differ from
each other; multum differunt, they
differ greatly (c. v. 14).

difficile, adv., with difficulty.

difficilior, -e, adj., difficult; comp.
difficillior; sup. difficillimus.

difficult-as, -ātis, F., difficulty,
trouble.

diff-ido, -fidere, -fusus sum, v.
intr., semi-dep. (for construction, p. 278,
foot note); distrust.

diffundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fū-
sum, v. tr., spread out, extend.

dig-itus, -iti, M., finger.

dignit-as, -ātis, F., splendor; tri-
buere dignitatem, to treat with re-
spect (c. v. 7).

dign-us, -ā, -um, adj., worthy of,
deserving (p. 64, 4).

di-icid-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
decide, determine.

di-lect-us, -ūs, M., levy.

diligen-s, -tis, adj., careful, attentive.

diligenter, adv., earnestly, diligently.

diligenti-a, -ae, F., diligence, care.

di-ligo, -ligere, -lexi, -lectum, v.
tr., value, esteem, love.

di-mētor, -mētiri, -mensus
sum, v. tr. dep., measure.

di-mico, -micare, -micāvi, -mī-
cātum, v. tr., fight; cum dimicar-
etur, since the battle was fought (c. v.
16).

di-midi-um, -i, N., middle, half; di-
midio minor, half the size (c. v. 13).

di-midi-us, -i, M., Dionysius, a
tyrant of Syracuse.

dis (abbreviated di-), inseparable pre-
fix; apart, asunder, in pieces.

dis, ditis, adj., rich; comp., ditior;
sup., ditissimus (p. 57, 4).

Dis, Ditis, M., Pluto, god of the lower
world.

dis-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-
sum, v. intr., depart, withdraw, forsake;

ab armis discedere, lay down arms;
discessit superior, he came off vic-
tor (N. H. 1); ab signis discedere, to
desert their standards (c. v. 16).

dis-cess-us, -ūs, M., departure.

discipl-ina, -inae, F., learning,
training, system.

discipul-us, -i, M., pupil.

dis-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsī, -clūs-
um, v. intr., keep apart, separate.

disco, discere, didici, no sup.,
v. tr. and intr., learn.

dis-crimen, -criminis, N., risk,
crisis, danger.

dis-icio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, v.
tr., drive asunder, scatter, rout; dom-
um discicere, to raze a house (N. H. 7).

dis-pāl-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v.
intr. dep., straggles, stray.

dis-par, -pāris, adj., unequal, un-
like; dispari proelio, in an unequal
contest (c. v. 16).

di-sp-ergo, -sp-ergere, -spersi,
-spersum, v. tr., scatter, disperse.

di-spersus, -spersā, -spersum
(perf. part. pass. of dispergo, used as
an) adj., scattered.

dis-plīc-ō, -plīcēre, -plīcūi, -plī-
cītum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot
note), displease.

dis-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsī-
tum, v. tr., set in order, draw up (of
forces).

dis-pūtāt-i-o, -ōnis, F., discussion,
debate.

dis-pūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
intr., treat of, investigate, discuss.

dis-sens-i-o, -ōnis, F., disagreement.

dis-sentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sen-
sum, v. intr., differ in opinion, disagree.

dis-sid-ēo, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum,
v. intr., disagree; dissidere ab eo, to
be at variance with him (N. H. 10).

dis-simil-is, -ē, adj., unlike (with
dat., p. 277, 2); comp., dissimilior;
sup., dissimillimus.

dis-simul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr. and intr., disagree, conceal.

dis-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solvū-
tum, v. tr., break down; pontem
dissolvere, to break down a bridge
(T. 5).

dis-pāl-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr.
dep., wander about; be scattered.

dis-tin-ēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tent-
um, v. tr., perplex, distract.

di-sto, -stare, no perf., no sup., v.
intr., stand apart, be separated.

dis-tribūo, -tribūere, -tribūi, -tribūtum, v. tr., divide, assign, distribute.

district-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *distingo*, used as an) adj., occupied with, busy.

dīū, adv., long, for a long time; comp., diutius; sup., diutissime.

dī-urn-us, -ā, -um, adj., by day.

divers-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *diverto* used as an) adj. in different directions; some one way, some another way.

div-es, -itis, adj., rich; comp., divitior; sup., divitissimus.

Divic-o, -ōnis, M., Divico, chief of the Helvetii, who led an army against Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.

divido, dividere, divisi, divisum, v. tr., divide, separate.

divin-us, -ā, -um, adj., divine; res divina, a sacrifice (N. H. 2).

diviti-ae, -arum, pl. F., riches, wealth; divitils ornare, to enrich (N. T. 2).

do, dare, dedi, datum, v. tr., give; in fugam dare, to put to flight; manus dare, to yield; tempore dato, at an appointed time (N. H. 2); dare verba, to deceive (N. H. 5); dare vela ventis, to set sail (N. H. 5); dare operam, to take pains (N. T. 7; C. V. 7); dare arbitros, to appoint judges (C. V. 1).

dōcēo, dōcēre, dōcui, doctum, v. tr., teach, inform, point out.

doct-or, -ōris, M., a teacher; uti doctore, to have as a teacher (N. H. 13).

doctr-ina, -inae, F., teaching, learning, knowledge.

doct-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *doceo* used as an) adj., learned, experienced.

dōlēo, dōlēre, dōlui, dōlūtum, v. intr. and tr., grieve, be grieved.

dōl-or, -ōris, M., grief, pain; hoc dolore exardescere, to be aroused through grief of this (C. V. 4).

dōl-us, -ī, M., craft, fraud; per dolum, by deceit (C. IV. 13).

dōmes-tic-us, -ā, -um, adj., domestic; bellum domesticum, civil war (C. V. 9); domesticae opes, his own resources (N. H. 10).

dōmicili-um, -ī, N., abode; domicilium constituere, to fix his abode (N. T. 10).

dōmināt-us, -ūs, M., tyranny.

dōmīn-us, -ī, M., a master, ruler.

Dōmītī-us, -ī, M., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul with Appius Claudius, B.C. 54. He was a staunch aristocrat, and brother-in-law of Marcus Cato. He fell at Pharsalia, B.C. 48, by the hand of Antony.

dōm-o, -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr., tame, subdue.

dōm-us, -ūs (for declension, see p. 62, 6), F., a house, home; domi, at home (p. 285, 3); domum, home (p. 285, 1); domo, from home (p. 285, 2).

dōnec, conj., till, until, while (p. 290, 5, 6).

dōn-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr., give, present.

dōn-um, -ī, N., gift, present.

dorm-i-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. intr., sleep, rest.

dōs, dōtis, F., marriage portion, dowry.

Druid-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Druids, priests of the ancient Gauls.

dūbitāti-o, -ōnis, F., doubt, hesitation.

dūbit-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr., doubt, hesitate.

dūbī-us, -ā, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain; non dubium est quin, there is no doubt that (p. 188, 6); sine dubio, undoubtedly.

dūcent-ī, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., two hundred.

dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductum, v. tr., lead, think; in matrimonium uxorem ducere or simply uxorem ducere, to marry (said of a man), (N. T. 1); nubere viro (said of a woman); tempus ducere, to spin out the time (N. T. 7); poena dignum ducere, to consider one worthy of punishment (N. A. 1).

dulc-is, -e, adj., sweet.

dum, conj., while, until (p. 298, 3; 290, 4, 5, 6); provided that (p. 202).

dummōdo, conj., provided that, if only (p. 302, 7).

Dumnor-ix, -igis, M., Dumnorix, chief of the Aedui and brother of Divitiacus. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed while trying to escape from Caesar (C. V. 7).

dū-o, -ae, -o (for declension, see p. 247), adj. pl., two.

dūdēcim, indecl. num. adj., twelve.

dūdēcim-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., twelfth.

, a master, ruler.
M., Lucius Domitius
I with Appius Claudi-
a staunch aristocrat,
of Marcus Cato. He
c. 48, by the hand of

-itum, v. tr., tame,

r declension, see p.
one; domi, at home
m, home (p. 285, 1);
p. 285, 2).

ll, until, while (p.

-atum, v. tr., give,

ift, present.

vi, -itum, v. intr.,

marriage portion,

pl. M., the Druids,
Gauls.

s, F., doubt, hesi-

vi, -atum, v. tr.,

adj., doubtful, un-
certuin, therefore
p. 188, 6); sine

card, num. adj.,

duxi, ductum,
matrimonium
simply uxorem
(said of a man),
viro (said of a
man), to spin out
poena dignum
the worthy of pun-

reet.

until (p. 298, 3;
that (p. 202).

provided that, if

M., Dumnorix,
brother of Divi-
us hostile to the
I while trying to
(p. 7).

declension, see p.

um, adj., twelve.

-um, ord. num.

dūdōden-i, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj.,
twelve at a time, by twelves.

dūdōdetrīginta, num. adj., twenty-
eight.

dūdōdēviginti, num. adj., eighteen.

dūplex, dūplīcis, adj., two-fold,
double; duplex memoria, a two-fold
account (N. H. 8).

dūplīc-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
double; numerum obsidum dupli-
cavit, he demanded double the number
of hostages (c. iv, 36).

dūrītīa, -ae, F., hardness, hard-
ship.

dūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
harden, make hard.

Dūrus, see Laberius.

dūr-us, -ā, -um, adj., hard, severe,
difficult.

dux, dūcis, M., leader, general,
guide.

E.

ē (ē before consonants; ex, generally
before vowels, sometimes before conso-
nants), prep. (with abl.); from, out of,
in accordance with, in consequence of,
on; una ex parte, on one side (c. iv, 3);
ex equo, on horseback; ex itinere,
on the march (c. iv, 11); ex litteris, in
accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38);
ex usu, of advantage (c. v, 6); ex hac
fuga protinus, immediately after this
defeat (c. v, 17); duabus ex parti-
bus, on two sides (c. v, 21).

ēā (properly abl. sing. fem. of is, ēa,
id, agreeing with parte or via under-
stood), adv., there, on that side.

Eburōn-es, -um, pl. M., the Ebu-
rones, a Belgic tribe, living between the
Meuse and the Rhine, dependents of
the Treveri.

ē-dīco, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, v.
tr., speak out, make known, announce.

ē-dīscō, -discere, -dīdici, v. tr.,
sup., v. intr., learn by heart, commit to
memory.

ēdītus, -itā, -itum, adj., high.

ēdo, ēdēre, ēdi, ēsum, v. tr. (for
conjugation, p. 274), eat.

ē-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum, v. tr.,
set forth, publish, relate.

ē-dōcēo, -docēre, -dōcui, -doc-
tum, v. tr., teach, instruct, inform, tell.

ē-dūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum,
v. tr., lead out, lead forth.

ēdūc-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
bring up, rear.

ef-fēmīn-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
make weak or effeminate.

ef-fēro, -fferre, -extulī, -ēlatum,
v. tr., carry forth, bring out, publish,
bury; qui efferretur, wherewith to
be buried (N. A. 3).

ef-fīcio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
v. tr., effect, make; opus efficere, to
complete a work (c. iv, 18); with ut and
subjunctive, cause that; reliquis ut
navigari commode posset, effectit,
he caused that it might be suitably sailed
with the rest, i.e., he had the rest put in
sailing trim (c. iv, 31).

ef-fūgio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fūgitum,
v. tr. and intr., escape.

ef-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum,
v. tr., pour out; se effundere, to
spread out, scatter.

ēgen-s, -tis, adj., needy.

ēgēn-us, -ā, -um, adj., needy, in
want, destitute.

ēgēo, -egere, -ēgūī, no sup., v. intr.,
be in need (for construction, pp. 281, 10;
282, 1, foot note).

ēgest-as, -ātis, F., poverty, want,
need.

ēgo, mēī (for declension, p. 104, 1),
pers. pron. I; pl. nos, we.

ē-grēdiōr, -grēdī, -gressus sum,
v. intr. dep., go out; disembark; navi
egredi, to disembark (c. iv, 21).

ēgrēgiō, adv., admirably, splendidly.

ēgrēgi-us, -ā, -um, adj., eminent,
marked, remarkable.

ē-gress-us, -ūs, M., landing, disem-
barkation.

ē-īcio, -icere, -ēcī, -iectum, v. tr.,
cast out, throw out, repel; se eicere,
to rush out; e civitate eicere, to
banish (N. T. 8); se ex silvis eicere,
to rush out of the woods (c. v, 15).

ēius: see is (p. 250).

ēiusdem: see idem (p. 250).

ēiusmodī (= eius modi), of such a
kind, of such a sort.

ē-lābōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. intr.,
suffer greatly, make great efforts.

ē-lāt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of
efferō used as an) adj., proud, haughty.

ē-lēgan-s, -tis, adj., elegant.

ē-lēphant-us, -ī, M., elephant.

ē-līgo, -līgere, -lēgi, -lectum, v.
tr., choose out, select.

ē-lōquen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of elo-
quor used as an) adj., eloquent.

ē-lōquentī, -ā, -ae, F., eloquence.

- ē-mendo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**, correct, amend.
- ē-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -misum, v. tr.**, send out, release.
- ēmo, -ēmere, -ēmi, -emptum, v. tr.**, buy.
- ēnim** (placed after the first emphatic word in its clause), conj., for, in fact.
- ē-nūmēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**, reckon up, count over, enumerate.
- ē-nuntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**, tell, repeat, report.
- ēō, adv.**, thither, to that place, to such a degree; correlative of **quo** before comparatives (p. 195, 4): **quo...eo**, the...the (by how much...by that much).
- ēo, ire, ivi (ii), itum, v. intr.** (for conjugation, p. 273), go, march.
- ēodem, adv.**, to the same place, in the same direction, to the same purpose.
- Ēphēs-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, of or belonging to Ephesus; Ephesian.
- Ēphēs-us, -i, F.**, Ephesus, a city of Asia Minor.
- ēphippiā, -ōrum, pl. N.**, saddle, pack.
- ēphippiāt-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, furnished with a saddle.
- ēphōr-us, -i, M.**, an Ephor, one of the five Spartan magistrates who were elected annually as "overseers" of the state.
- ēpistolā, -ae, F.**, a letter; **epistolam solvere**, to open a letter (N. H. 11).
- epistula**: same as **epistola**.
- ēpūl-um, -i, N.**, banquet, feast; **pl. F.**, epulae, meal.
- ēqu-es, -itis, M.**, a horseman, cavalry soldier; **pl. equites**, the knights; **equitum magister**, master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.
- ēques ter, -tris, -tre, adj.**, belonging to horsemen, cavalry.
- ēquidem, adv.**, truly, indeed.
- ēquitāt-us, -ūs, M.**, cavalry.
- ēqu-us, -i, M.**, horse.
- Ēratosthēn-ēs, -is, M.**, Eratosthenes, a Greek of Cyrene, in Africa, noted as a geographer. He lived B.C. 276-B.C. 192.
- ērect-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of erigo used as an) adj.**, high.
- ergā, prep.** (with acc.), towards.
- ergō, conj.**, therefore, accordingly.
- ērigo, ērigere, ērexi, ērectum, v. tr.**, arouse.
- ēripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, v. tr.**, take away from, snatch from, rescue.
- err-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.**, wander, err, be wrong.
- err-or, -ōris, M.**, a mistake, error, fault.
- ē-rūd-īo, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.**, instruct, teach, educate, train.
- ē-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, v. tr.**, break out, make a sortie.
- ē-rupti-o, -ōnis, F.**, attack, sortie.
- Ēryx, -ycis, M.**, Eryx (now *St. Giuliano*), a mountain and town on the west coast of Sicily.
- ē-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, v. tr.**, mount, ascend; **in naveim escendere**, to embark (N. T. 8).
- essēd-a, -ae, F.**, a war chariot of the Britons.
- essēdāri-us, -i, M.**, a charioteer.
- essēd-um, -i**, same as **esseda**.
- et, conj.**, and; **et...et**, both...and.
- ētiam, adv.**, also, even.
- ētiamtum, adv.**, even then.
- Ētrūri-a, -ae, F.**, Etruria (now *Tuscany*), a district of Central Italy.
- etsi, conj.**, even if, although (p. 303, middle of page).
- Euboe-a, -ae, F.**, Euboea (now *Negropont*), an island, east of Northern Greece.
- Eumēn-es, -is, M.**, Eumenes II., King of Pergamus, a friend of the Romans, who reigned B.C. 197-B.C. 159.
- Eurōp-a, -ae, F.**, Europe.
- Eur-us, -i, M.**, Eurus, the east wind.
- Eurybiād-es, -ae, M.**, Eurybiades, an admiral of Sparta, at the time when Xerxes invaded Greece, 480 B. C.
- ē-vādo, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum, v. intr.**, go forth, escape from.
- ē-vēnio, -venire, -venī, -ventum, v. intr.**, pass, happen.
- ēvenit**, it happens (p. 182, 4); **usu venit**, it turned out by chance (N. H. 12).
- ē-vent-us, -ūs, M.**, result, fortune.
- ē-vert-o, -vertēre, -verti, -ver-sum, v. tr.**, overthrow, drive out, destroy.
- ē-vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**, call out, summon.
- ex**: see 3.
- exadversum, prep.** (with acc.), over against, opposite.
- ex-āgit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.**, harass, drive out.

from, snatch from,

vi, -atum, v. intr.,
ing.

M., a mistake, error,

ivi, -itum, v. tr., in-
ate, train.

mpere, -rupi, -rup-
out, make a sortie.

s, F., attack, sortie.

M., Eryx (now St.
ain and town on the

endēre, -scendi,
mount, ascend; in
e, to embark (N. T. 8).

a war chariot of the

M., a charioteer.
me as esseda.

... et, both...and.
even.

even then.

F., Etruria (now
of Central Italy).

f, although (p. 303,

F., Euboea (now
d, east of Northern

M., Eumenes II.,
friend of the Romans,
B.C. 159.

Europe.

rus, the east wind.

e, M., Eurybiades,
at the time when
e, 480 B. C.

-vāsi, -vāsum,
pe from.

-vēni, -ventum,

(p. 182, 4); usu
y chance (N. H. 12).

, result, fortune.

e, -verti, -ver-
arow, drive out,

i, -atum, v. tr.,

(with acc.), over

vi, -atum, v. tr.,

ex-āmin-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., test; ad certum pondus ex-
aminatus, of a fixed standard weight,
literally, weighed to a fixed weight (c. v, 12).

ex-ānimo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., kill.

ex-ardesco, -ardescere, -arsi,
arsum, v. intr., he kindled, burst
forth; hoc dolore exarsit, he was
roused through grief at this (c. v, 4).

ex-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-
sum, v. intr., leave, depart.

ex-cello, -cellere, -cellui, -cel-
sum, v. intr., excel, surpass.

ex-cels-us, -ā, -um, adj., high.

ex-cio, -cire, -civi, -citum, v. tr.,
arouse, awake.

ex-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
v. tr., catch, receive.

ex-citāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., en-
couraged.

ex-cit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
incite, stir up, arouse.

ex-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsi, -clū-
sum, v. tr., shut out, prevent; a navi-
gatione excludere, to prevent from
sailing (c. v, 23).

ex-cōgit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., devise, plan.

ex-cruci-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., torture, torment.

ex-cursi-o, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie,
sally.

ex-cūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
excuse, clear (of a charge).

exempl-um, -i, N., an example,
sample, pattern.

ex-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or -ii), -itum, v.
intr., go out; fama exit, the report
goes abroad (N. H. 9).

ex-ercēo, -ercēre, -ercui, -erci-
tum, v. tr., exercise, train.

exercitāt-i-o, -ōnis, F., training,
practise, exercise.

exercitāt-us, -a, -um, (perf. part.
pass. of exercito used as an) adj., well
trained, skilled.

exercit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
exercise, harass.

exercit-us, -ūs, M., a trained band;
an army; exponere exercitum, to
land an army (c. v, 9).

ex-haurio, -haurire, -hausi,
-haustum, v. tr., drain, exhaust;
exhaustis facultatibus, when re-
sources had failed (N. H. 6).

ex-hēred-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., disinherit.

ex-igo, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, v.
tr., drive out, pass the time; exacta
hieme, when winter had passed, at the
end of winter.

ex-iguit-as, -ātis, F., shortness.

ex-igū-us, -ā, -um, adj., small,
scanty.

ex-ili-um, -i, N., exile.

ex-istimāt-i-o, -ōnis, F., reputation.

ex-istim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., value, estimate, think, consider.

ex-iti-um, -i, N., destruction.

ex-itus, -itūs, M., conclusion, end.

ex-opt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
wish, desire.

ex-pēd-jo, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.,
extricate, disengage, set free; imper-
expedit, it is profitable, it is useful.

ex-pēdit-i-o, -ōnis, F., an expedition,
foray.

ex-pēdit-us, -a, -um, adj., lightly
equipped, free, unincumbered, without
baggage; ad usum expeditior, more
efficient for service (c. iv, 25); legiones
expeditae, legions without baggage (c.
v, 2).

ex-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pul-
sum, v. tr., drive out, expel.

ex-pērientia, -ae, F., experience,
practise.

ex-pērior, -pēiri, -pertus sum,
v. tr. dep., try, attempt; inimicum
ille expertus est, he found an enemy
(N. T. 9); experti, having tested their
power (c. iv, 3); omnia experti, having
tried every expedient (c. iv, 4).

ex-pers, -pertis, adj., free from,
without (with gen., p. 281, 9).

ex-plico, -plicare, -plicavi, -pli-
cui, -plicatum (-plicitum), v. tr.,
set forth, exhibit; oratione expli-
care, to set forth in a speech (N. T. 1);
naves explicare, to extend ships in
line (N. T. 4); explicare impera-
tores, to describe the commanders (N.
H. 13).

ex-plōrāt-or, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

explōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
investigate, reconnoitre.

ex-pōno, -ponere, -posui, -posi-
tum, v. tr., place out, deploy; disem-
bark; expositae hostium copiae,
the forces of the enemy deployed (c. iv,
23); cum essent expositi milites,
when the forces had landed (c. iv, 37);
exposito exercitu, when the army
had landed (c. v, 9).

ex-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
carry out, export.

ex-posco, -poscēre, -pōposci, no sup., v. tr., demand the surrender of anything.

ex-prīmo, -prīmēre, -pressi, -pressum, v. tr., press out, extort.

expugnāti-o, -ōnis, F., a storming, attack.

ex-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., take by storm, capture.

ex-qui-ro, -quirēre, -quisivī, -quisitum, v. tr., seek for, enquire, search out, ask for.

ex-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus (or **-sēquūtus sum**), v. tr. dep., follow out, maintain, enforce.

ex-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti, -stītum, v. intr., spring up, arise.

ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wait for, await; in **ancoris expectare**, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23).

ex-stinguo, -stinguēre, -stinxi, -stinctum, v. tr., obliterate (N. T. 1).

ex-sto, -stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., exist, be; **capite solo ex aquā exstare**, to have their heads alone out of the water (c. v, 18).

ex-struo, -struēre, -struxi, -structum, v. tr., build up, raise.

ex-structus, -ā, -um, adj., piled up. **ex-tērus, -tēra, -tērum**, adj. (rarely used in positive), outside, foreign, strange; comp., **exterior**; sup., **extremus** or **extimus** (p. 59, 1).

ex-terrēo, -terrēre, -terrūi, -territum, v. tr., frighten, strike down with terror.

ex-timesco, -timescēre, -tīmūi, no sup., fear greatly, dread.

ex-tollo, -tollēre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., extol, lift up, raise, exalt.

extrā, prep. (with acc.), without, beyond, outside of.

ex-trāho, -trāhēre, -traxi, -tractum, v. tr., draw out, withdraw; id **facile extrahere**, to waste this easily (c. v, 22).

extrēm-us, -ā, -um, adj. (sup. of **exterus**) of place or time, last; **hieme extrema**, at the end of winter; **ad extremum**, at last (c. iv, 4).

ex-ul, -ūlis, M., an exile. **ex-ūo, -ūēre, -ūi, -ūtum**, v. tr., strip off, despoil, deprive.

ex-ūro, -ūrēre, -ussi, -ustum, v. tr., burn up.

F.

fā-ber, -bri, M., a workman, wright.

Fābi-us, -i, M., Fabius; (1) Quintus Fabius Maximus, a Roman general of eminent qualities and virtues, surnamed **Cunctator**, or "the Delayer," because he withstood Hannibal, not by fighting him, but by harassing him with marches and counter-marches and cutting off supplies. He died 203 B.C. (2) Quintus Fabius Labeo, was dictator 221 B.C. and in 217 B.C. He commanded the fleet in 189 B.C. in the war against Antiochus, and was consul for the last time in 183 B.C. when according to Nepos, Hannibal died.

fābū-la, -ae, F., story, tale.

fācēt-us, -ā, -um, adj., affable, courteous, witty.

facile, adv., easily, readily; comp., **facilius**; sup., **facillime**.

facil-is, -ē, adj., easy; comp., **facilior**; sup., **facillimus**.

fācin-us, -ōris, N., deed, act.

fācio, fācēre, fēcī, factum, v. tr., do, make; **magni facere**, to value highly; **pluris facere**, to value more highly; **castra facere**, to pitch a camp; **iter facere**, to make a march; **vim facere**, to do violence; **imperata facere**, to obey commands; **facere pontem**, to build a bridge (N. T. 5); **naufragium facere**, to come to grief (N. T. 7); **proelium facere**, to fight (N. T. 9); **sui potestatem facere**, to put himself in the power of any one (N. H. 9); **ut scirent facere**, to see that they knew (N. H. 10); **palam facere**, to make plain (N. H. 11); **iureiurando fidem facere**, to give a pledge on oath (c. iv, 11); **bellum populo Romano facere**, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22); **rebellionem facere**, to renew the war (c. iv, 30); **pro sano facere**, to act as a sane man (c. v, 7). (For passive see **fio**.)

facti-o, -ōnis, F., party, faction.

fact-um, -i, N., deed, act.

fācul-tas, -tātis, F., opportunity, abundance; pl. **facultates**, resources, goods; **exhaustis facultatibus**, when resources were exhausted (N. H. 6).

fāg-us, -i, F., beech tree.

Fālern-us, -ā, -um, adj., Falernian; **ager Falernus**, the Falernian territory, a district at the foot of the Massic hills, famous for its vines.

fallo, fallēre, fēfelli, falsum, v. tr., deceive.

F.

a workman, wright.
 Fabius; (1) Quintus
 a Roman general of
 and virtues, sur-
 r, or "the Delayer,"
 od Hannibal, not by
 y harassing him with
 r-marches and cutting
 d 203 B.C. (2) Quintus
 dictator 221 B.C. and
 manded the fleet in
 gainst Antiochus, and
 last time in 183 B.C.
 Nepos, Hannibal died.

story, tale.

um, adj., affable,

ily, readily; comp.,
 illime.

easy; comp., faci-
 nus.

N., deed, act.

sci, factum, v. tr.,

facere, to value

ere, to value more

acere, to pitch a

to make a march;

violence; imper-

obey commands;

to build a bridge

gium facere, to

r. 7); proelium

r. 9); sui potes-

put himself in the

n. 9); ut scirent

they knew (N. H. 10);

make plain (N. H. 11);

n facere, to give

iv, 11); bellum

facere, to make

n people (c. iv, 22);

re, to renew the

sano facere, to

r, 7). (For passive

falsus, -sa, -sum, adj., false.

fama, -ae, F., report, rumor, fame;
 fama exit, the report goes abroad
 (N. H. 9).

familia, -ae, F., family, servants;
 household; pater familias or fami-
 liae, father of a family, master.

familiaris, -e, adj., belonging to a
 family; res familiaris, property,
 (N. T. 1); as a noun, familiaris, -is,
 M., an intimate friend.

familiaritas, -atis, F., intimacy,
 friendship.

fas (indecl. noun), N., right.

fateor, fateri, fassus sum, v. tr.
 dep., confess.

fatum, -i, N., destiny, fate.

favēo, fāvēre, fāvi, fautum, v.
 intr. (governs a dative), favor.

fēlicitas, -ātis, F., happiness, suc-
 cess, prosperity.

fēliciter, adv., luckily, prosperously.

fēlix, -icis, adj., lucky, fortunate,
 prosperous.

fēminā, -ae, F., woman, female.

fēm-ur, -ōris, N., thigh.

fēr-a, -ae, F., wild beast.

fēr-ax, -ācis, adj., fertile.

fēre, adv., almost, nearly.

fērio, fērire, no perf., no sup., v. tr.,
 strike.

fēro, ferro, tūli, lātum, v. tr.,
 bring, bear, carry, endure; ferunt, they
 say; fertur, it is said; auxilium
 ferre, to bring aid; iniurias ferre, to
 inflict wrongs; legem ferre, to pro-
 pose a law; consuetudo fert, the
 custom admits of (c. iv, 32); graviter
 ferre, to be annoyed (c. v, 6); ut fert
 illorum opinio, according to their
 ideas (c. v, 13).

fērociter, adv., fiercely, boldly.

fērō-x, -cis, adj., bold, warlike.

ferrēs-us, -ā, -um, adj., of iron, iron.

ferr-um, -i, N., iron.

fertilis, -e, adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitas, -ātis, F., fertility, rich-
 ness.

fēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., wild, savage,
 cruel.

fess-us, -ā, -um, adj., weary.

festin-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
 hasten, hurry, speed.

fibūl-a, -ae, F., brace.

ficilis, -e, adj., earthen; vasa fic-
 tilla, vessels of earthenware (N. H. 10).

fic-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. pass. of
 fingō used as an) adj., idle, invented;
 ad voluntatem eorum ficta re-
 spondere, to invent an answer to suit
 their wishes (c. iv, 5).

fidēl-is, -e, adj., faithful, trusty.

fidēs, -ēi, F., faith, loyalty; fidem
 habere, to repose confidence (N. T. 7);
 in fidem recipere, to receive under
 one's protection (N. T. 8); fidel credere,
 to trust to their charge (N. H. D); fidem
 facere, to give a pledge (c. iv, 11);
 fidem sequi, to be loyal to (c. iv, 21;
 v, 20); eos in fidem recipere, to
 admit them to his protection (c. iv, 22);
 fidem interponere, to pledge his
 word (c. v, 6).

fido, fidere, fisis sum, v. semi-
 dep. (for construction, p. 273, foot note),
 trust, confide.

fiduci-a, -ae, F., trust, confidence.

figur-a, -ae, F., form, shape.

filia, -ae, F., daughter (p. 229, foot
 note 2).

filius, -i, M., son.

fīdo, fīdere, fīdi, fīssum, v. tr.,
 cleave, divide.

fīngo, fīgere, fīnxi, fīctum, v.
 tr., form, shape, suppose.

fīn-īo, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., finish,
 end; populi Romani imperium
 Rhenus fīnit, the Rhine is the limit of
 the empire of the Roman people (c. iv, 16).

fīn-is, -is, M. and F., end, limit; pl.,
 fines, M., boundaries, territories.

fīnitīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., bordering
 upon, adjoining; in pl., fīnitīmī,
 -ōrum, neighbors.

fīo, fīeri, factus sum (pass. of
 facio, p. 165), become, take place; fīit,
 it happens (p. 182, 4); certior fieri, to
 be informed; quo factus est ut, the
 result was that (N. . 1); factus est
 praetor, he was elected general (N. T.
 2); non sine causa fieri, to be not
 without a reason (c. v, 6).

fīrme, adv., firmly.

fīrmiter, adv., firmly; firmiter in-
 sistere, to stand firmly, to get a good
 footing (c. iv, 26).

fīrmitūd-o, -inis, F., firmness,
 strength.

fīrm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 strengthen, make strong.

fīrm-us, -ā, -um, adj., strong.

fīgītī-um, -i, N., crime, wickedness.

- flāgit-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., demand, ask earnestly.
- Flaminin-us**, -i, M., Quinctius Flaminius, a Roman general who was sent a.c. 183 to Prusias of Bithynia to demand the surrender of Hannibal.
- Flamini-us**, -i, M., Calus Flaminius, a Roman general who commanded the Romans, and lost his life at Trasimēnus, 217 B.C.
- flamm-a**, -ae, F., flame.
- flect-o**, -ēre, flexūi, flexum, v. tr., bend, turn.
- fles-s**, -tis, (pres. part. of fleo, used as an) adj., weeping, in tears.
- flēo**, flēre, flēvi, flētum, v. tr. and intr., weep, lament.
- flēt-us**, -ūs, M., tears, weeping.
- flō**, flāre, flāvi, flātum, v. intr., blow.
- flōren-s**, -tis, adj., flourishing.
- flōr-ēo**, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., bloom, flourish.
- flōs**, flōris, M., flower.
- fluct-us**, -ūs, M., flood, wave.
- flum-en**, -inis, N., river.
- flūo**, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum, v. intr., flow.
- flūvi-us**, -i, M., river.
- fōdio**, fōdēre, fōdi, fossum, v. tr., dig.
- foedērāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., leagued together, allied.
- foed-us**, -ēris, N., treaty.
- for**, fārī, fātus sum, v. tr. dep., speak, say.
- fore**=futura esse (fut. inf. of sum, p. 107, 1).
- forem**=essem.
- fōr-is**, -is, F., door, gate.
- form-a**, -ae, F., form, shape.
- form-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., shape.
- for-s**, -tis, F., chance, luck.
- forsitan**, adv., perhaps.
- fortasse**, adv., perhaps, by chance.
- forte**, adv., perhaps, by chance.
- fort-is**, -e, adj., strong, brave.
- fortiter**, adv., courageously, bravely.
- fortitūd-o**, -inis, F., courage, bravery.
- fortuito**, adv., by chance.
- fortūn-a**, -ae, F., luck, lot, chance, good fortune.
- fortūnāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., prosperous, in good circumstance.
- fōr-um**, -i, N., market place.
- foss-a**, -ae, F., ditch, trench.
- fōv-e-a**, -ae, F., pit-fall.
- frango**, frangēre, frēgi, fractum, v. tr., break; frangere eum, to break his spirit (N. T. 1); Corcyraeos frangere, to break the power of the Corcyraeans (N. T. 2); frangere navem, wreck a vessel (C. iv, 20).
- frāt-er**, -ris, M., a brother.
- frāter-nus**, -nā, -num, adj., fraternal, brotherly.
- frau-s**, -dis, F., deceit, deception.
- Fregell-ae**, -ārum, pl. F., Fregellae (now *Ceprano*), a very old town of Latium, on the river Liris.
- frēm-itus**, -itūs, M., uproar, noise, din.
- frēquens**, -tis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.
- frē-tus**, -tā, -tum, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4); relying on.
- frigid-us**, -ā, -um, adj., cold.
- frig-us**, -ōris, N., cold.
- fron-s**, -tis, F., forehead, front; a fronte, in front.
- fruc-tus**, -tūs, M., fruit, profit, advantage.
- frūg-es**, -um, pl. F., crops.
- frūmentāri-us**, -ā, -um, adj., pertaining to corn; res frumentaria, a supply of corn; inopia frumentaria, want of corn.
- frūment-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., fetch corn, forage.
- frūment-um**, -i, N., corn.
- frū-or**, -i, fructus (or frūitus) sum, v. intr. dep., enjoy (with abl., p. 116).
- frustrā**, adv., without effect, in vain.
- frustr-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., deceive.
- fūg-a**, -ae, F., flight.
- fūgio**, fūgēre, fūgi, fūgitum, v. tr. and intr., flee, flee from, run away.
- fūgiti-v-us**, -ā, -um, adj., fleeing; as a noun, fūgiti-v-us, -i, M., a runaway slave.
- fūg-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., put to flight, rout.
- fulg-ur**, -ūris, N., lightning, brightness.
- fund-a**, -ae, F., a sling.
- fundā-mentum**, -mentī, N., foundation.

-um, adj., prosper-
stance.

arket place.
ditch, trench.

pit-fall.

ère, frégi, frac-
frangere eum, to
r. 1); Corcyraeos
k the power of the
frangere navem,
20).

a brother.

-num, adj., frater-

deceit, deception.

m, pl. F., Fregellae
old town of Latium,

M., uproar, noise,

adj., crowded, in

m, adj. (with abl.,

a, adj., cold.

cold.

orehead, front; a

, fruit, profit, ad-

F., crops.

-um, adj., per-
frumentaria, a
frumentaria,

-atus sum, v.

corn.

r fructus)sum,
abl., p. 116).

ut effect, in vain.

us sum, v. tr.

fugitum, v. tr.
run away.

adj., fleeing; as
M., a runaway

um, v. tr., put

ghtning, bright-

genti, N., foun-

fund-itor, -itōris, M., a slinger.

fundo, fundere, fudi, fūsum, v.
tr., pour, rout; exercitum fundere,
to rout an army (N. A. 2).

fund-us, -i, M., see funda.

fund-us, -i, M., a farm, estate.

fung-or, -i, functus sum, v. intr.
dep. (with abl., p. 116), discharge, per-
form; summis honoribus fungi, to
fill the highest offices (N. T. 7).

fūn-is, -is, M., rope, cable.

fūn-us, -ōris, M., burial, funeral; pl.,
funeral rites.

Furi-us, -i, M., Lucius Furius, consul
B.C. 196.

fūr-or, -ōris, M., rage, madness, fury.

fur-tum, -ti, N., theft.

fūtūr-us, -ā, -um, fut. part. of sum
(p. 107, 1); res futura, or futura
(neut. pl.), the future.

G.

G. = Gāius, another form of Caius.

Gaib-a, -ae, M., Galba; Servius
Galba, great-grandfather of the Emperor
Galba. He served under Caesar in Gaul,
and was praetor A.C. 54. After Caesar's
death he served against Antony in the
war of Mutina, 43 B.C.

gālē-a, -ae, F., helmet.

Gall-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Gauls; the
people who inhabited Gallia Trans-
alpina (or Ulterior). Further Gaul
(France), and Gallia Cisalpina (or
Citerior), Hither Gaul (Northern Italy).

Galli-a, -ae, F., Gaul.

Gallic-us, -ā, -um, adj., Gallic.

gallin-a, -ae, F., hen.

Gall-us, -i, M., a Gaul, an inhabitant
of Gallia.

Garumn-a, -ae, M., the Garumna
(Garonne), a river of Gaul.

gaudēo, gaudere, gavisus sum,
v. intr., semi-dep., rejoice.

gaudi-um, -i, N., joy, gladness, de-
light.

Gēmin-us, -i, see Servilius

gemm-a, -ae, F., a gem.

gēn-er, -ēri, M., a son-in-law.

gēnērōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., of good
birth, noble.

Gēnēv-a, -ae, F., Geneva, a town of
Switzerland.

gēnit-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of
gigno), born, descended from (p. 282, 3).

gen-s, -tis, F., nation, race, tribe,

clan.

gēn-us, -ōris, N., birth, kind; am-
plissimo genere natus, descended
from a most illustrious family (C. iv, 12);
toto hoc in genere pugnae, in all
this kind of battle (C. v, 16).

Germān-i-a, -ae, F., Germany.

Germān-i-c-us, -ā, -um, adj., German.

Germān-us, -ā, -um, adj., German.

gēro, gērere, gessi, -gestum, v.
tr., carry, bear, carry on; bellum
gerere, to wage war; rem male
gerere, to conduct a matter badly
(N. T. 1); res gerere, to conduct a
campaign (N. H. 7); gestus est ei
mos, his wish was complied with
(N. T. 7); res gestae, events.

gigno, gignere, gēnui, gēni-
tum, v. intr., beget, bring forth.

glādi-us, -i, M., sword.

glōri-a, -ae, F., glory, fame.

Gn. = Gnēius, another form for
Cneius.

Gortyni-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the people
of Gortyna, a town of Crete.

Gracch-us, -i, M., Gracchus; Tibe-
rius Sempronius Gracchus, a Roman
consul led into an ambush by Hannibal's
soldiers and slain by them (N. H. 5).

grācil-is, -ēs, adj., slender.

grād-us, -ūs, M., a step; primus
gradus capessendae reipublicae,
the first step in his political career
(N. T. 1); ab eodem gradu depulsus
est, he was driven from his foothold by
the same man (N. T. 5).

Graeci-a, -ae, F., Greece.

Graec-us, -ā, -um, adj., Greek.

Grāi-us, -ā, -um, adj., Graian;
saltus Grāi-us, the Graian pass (N. H. 3).

grand-is, -ēs, adj., large, great.

grāti-a, -ae, F., favor, courtesy,
beauty; pl. gratiae, thanks; agere
gratias, to give thanks; gratiam
facere, to pardon; gratiam habere,
to feel thankful; gratiam referre,
to be grateful to; gratiā (abl. with
genitive), for the sake of.

grātūl-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v.
intr. dep., wish joy, congratulate.

grāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., pleasing.

grāv-is, -e, adj., heavy.

grāv-itas, -itātis, F., weight, im-
portance.

grāviter, adv., heavily; graviter
ferre, feel pained (C. v, 4).

grex, grēgis, *M.*, flock, herd, troop.
gubernāt-or, -ōris, *M.*, pilot, steersman.

gust-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. tr.*, taste.

H.

hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, *v. tr.*, have, hold, possess; regard, consider; **fidem habere**, to repose confidence (*N. T. 7*); **secum habere**, to keep at his house (*N. II. 12*); **neque quidquam habetur**, nothing is regarded (*C. IV. 2*); **consilium habere**, to hold a meeting (*C. IV. 10*); **magni habere**, to value highly (*C. IV. 21*).

hābit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. tr.*, have possession of, inhabit, dwell in.

Hadrumēt-um, -i, *N.*, Hadrumetum, (now *Hammelm*), a Phœnician city of Northern Africa.

haerēo, haerēre, haesi, haesum, *v. intr.*, hold fast, stick to (with *abl. ordat.*).

Hālcarnassē-us, -ā, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to Hālcarnassus, a city of Caria, the birthplace of Herodotus, the 'Father of History.'

Hamīl-car, -āris, *M.*, Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal. He held the command from B.C. 247 to 229 B.C., when he fell in battle against the Vettones, a people of Spain. Hasdrubal succeeded him and held command from B.C. 229 to B.C. 221, when Hannibal was elected commander.

Hannib-al, -ālis, *M.*, Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general who lived from 247 B.C. to 183 B.C.

Harūdes, -um, *pl. M.*, Harudes, a German tribe, at the head waters of the Rhine and Danube.

Hasdrūb-al, -ālis, *M.*, Hasdrubal; (1) Son-in-law of Hamilcar who held command of the Carthaginians B.C. 229-B.C. 221, when he was assassinated by a Spaniard. (2) Brother of Hannibal, slain at the river Metaurus, B.C. 207.

hast-a, -ae, *F.*, spear.

haud, *adv.*, not at all (negating single words, especially adjectives and adverbs); with verbs chiefly in the phrase **haud scio an**, I don't know whether (*p. 177, 5*).

Hellespont-us, -i, *M.*, the Hellespont (now *Dardanelles*), a strait between Europe and Asia, connecting the Sea of Marmora with the Aegean.

Helvét-i, -ōrum, *pl. M.*, the Helvetii, a people who occupied Western and Southern Switzerland.

Hercūl-ēs, -is, *M.*, Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, the god of strength.

hērédit-as, -ātis, *F.*, heirship, inheritance.

hērī, *adv.*, yesterday.

hibern-a, -ōrum, *pl. N.* (properly neut. *pl.* of the *adj.*, **hibernus** agreeing with **castra** understood), winter quarters; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (*C. V. 2*).

Hiberni-a, -ae, *F.*, Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc; *dem. pron.* this, he, she, it (for declension, *p. 117*); **hic...ille**, the latter...the former.

hic, *adv.*, here, at this point.

hiem-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. intr.*, winter, pass the winter.

hiem-s, -is, *F.*, winter, storm.

hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this place.

Hispāni-a, -ae, *F.*, Spain.

histōri-a, -ae, *F.*, history, narrative.

hōdiē, *adv.*, to-day.

Hōmēr-us, -i, *M.*, Homer, a Greek epic poet, author of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*.

hōm-o, -inis, *M. or F.*, a human being; *man*; *pl. homines*, inhabitants.

hōnest-us, -ā, -um, *adj.*, honorable, upright, noble.

hōn-or, -ōris, *M.*, honor, respect, dignity, public office; **summis honoribus fungi**, to fill the highest offices (*N. H. 7*).

hōr-a, -ae, *F.*, hour. The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, each of which was called **hora**; so also with the night. The length of each **hora** would depend on the season of the year.

Hōrāti-us, -i, *M.*, Horace, a Roman poet who lived B.C. 65-B.C. 8.

horr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, *no sup.*, *v. tr.* and *intr.*, dread, shudder at.

horribil-is, -ē, *adj.*, dreadful, frightful.

horrid-us, -ā, -um, *adj.*, dreadful, frightful.

hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. tr.* dep., urge, cheer, encourage, incite.

hort-us, -i, *M.*, garden.

hos-pes, -pitis, *M.*, visitor, guest, friend, host.

hospiti-um, -i, *N.*, hospitality, friendship; **cum quo ei hospitium erat**, with whom he was on terms of friendship (*N. T. 8*).

hosti-a, -ae, *F.*, a victim offered in sacrifice.

M., Hercules, son of
a, the god of strength.
tis, F., heirship, in-

day.

m, pl. N. (properly
hibernus agreeing
custodire), winter quar-
termire, to inspect
(c. v. 2).

F., Ireland.

dem. pron. this, he,
(p. 117); hic... ille,
there.

this point.

vi, -atum, v. intr.,
er.

inter, storm.

from this place.

F., Spain.

, history, narrative.
y.

I., Homer, a Greek
the Iliad and Odyssey.

or F., a human being;
inhabitants.

am, adj., honorable,

I., honor, respect,
, summis hono-
l the highest offices

our. The Romans
between sunrise and
qual parts, each of
a; so also with the
each hora would
of the year.

Horace, a Roman
B.C. 8.

, no sup., v. tr. and
et.

, dreadful, fright-

m, adj., dreadful,

tus sum, v. tr.
ourage, incite.

den.

M., visitor, guest,

N., hospitality,
o ei hospitium

was on terms of

victim offered in

host-is, -is, M., an enemy.

huc, adv., hither, here, to this place.

hulismōdi, of this kind, of this
sort.

hūmānitas, -ātis, F., refinement,
culture.

hūmān-us, -ā, -um, adj., human,
civilized.

hūmēr-us, -i, M., shoulder.

hūm-i (locative, p. 86, 3), on the
ground.

hūmil-is, -is, adj., low, poor, humble.

hūmilit-as, -ātis, F., lowness; low-
ness in the water (c. v. 1).

hūm-us, -i, F., ground.

I.

iāc-ō, -ere, -ūi, no sup., v. intr.,
lie on the ground, lie dead.

iācō, iācēre, iēcī, iactum, v. tr.,
throw, cast; ancoram iacere, to cast
anchor (c. iv, 28).

iactūr-a, -ae, F., loss, sacrifice.

iācūl-um, -i, N., a javelin, dart.

iam, adv., by this time; ubi iam, as
soon as; iam antea, some time before;
with negatives, neque iam, no longer
(c. iv, 13).

iāmdūdum, adv., now for a long
time, long (p. 216, 2, (b)).

iampridem, adv., now for a long
time, long (p. 216, 2, (b)).

iānū-a, -ae, F., door; puer a
ianua, the porter (N. H. 12).

īber-us, -i, M., the Iberus (now Ebro),
a river of Hispania (Spain).

ibi, adv., in that place, there.

ibidem, adv., in the same place.

ico, icēre, ici, ictum, v. tr., strike,
hit, smite, stab; foedus icere, to make
a treaty.

ict-us, -ūs, M., blow, thrust.

idcirco, adv., on this account, for
this reason, therefore.

idem, idēdem, idem, dem. pro.,
the same (for decl. p. 250).

idōnē-us, -ā, -um, adj., fit, suitable,
convenient.

id-ūs, -ūum, pl. F., the Ides; a name
given to the 13th of all months, except
March, May, July, October, when the 15th
was so called.

igitur, conj., therefore, accordingly,
then.

ignāvi-a, -ae, F., sloth, cowardice.

ignāv-us, -ā, -um, adj., slothful,
cowardly.

ign-is, M., fire.

ignor-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
be ignorant of, not to know.

ign-osco, -noscēre, -novi, -nō-
tum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note),
pardon, forgive.

ignō-tus, -tā, -tum, adj., not
known, unknown.

ille, illā, illud, dem. pro. (for declen-
sion, p. 116), that, that well known; he,
she, it; ille... hic, the former... the
latter.

illic, adv., in that place, there.

illico, adv., forthwith, immediately.

illig-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
bind on, tie on, fasten.

illō, adv., to that place, thither; eo-
dem illo, to that same place.

illūdo, -ludēre, -lūsi, -lūsum, v.
tr., baffle, deceive.

illustr-is, -is, adj., famous, distin-
guished; illustriore loco natus,
born of a rather illustrious family
(p. 58, 6).

illustr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
make renowned or famous; in pass.,
become famous.

illyric-um, -i, N., Illyricum, a dis-
trict comprising the modern Dalmatia,
Bośnia and Herzegovina.

imāg-o, -inis, F., an image, likeness.

im-ber, -bris, M., a shower.

imit-or, -ari, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep.,
imitate.

im-mān-is, -is, adj., vast, huge, enor-
mous, immense.

Immanenti-us, -i, M., Immanu-
entius, father of Mandubracius (c. v. 20).

im-mātūr-us, -ā, -um, adj., un-
ripe, immature.

im-minū-o, -minūere, -minui,
-minutum, v. tr., diminish.

im-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. tr., send or drive into (the
enemy's line); se immittere, rush
into.

immo, adv., on the contrary, no in-
deed, yes indeed; used in answers to cor-
rect or modify either by contradicting or
by strengthening.

im-mōi-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
sacrifice.

im-mortāl-is, -is, adj., undying,
immortal.

im-mūnīt-as, -ātis, F., exemption.

im-pēdiment-um, -i, N., hindrance; pl. baggage (of an army); *sarcinae*, the kit of the individual soldiers.

im-pēd-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., hamper, hinder; *religionibus im-pediri*, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); *navigationem impedire*, to prevent sailing (c. v, 7); *animis impeditis*, when their attention was distracted (c. v, 7).

im-pēdit-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *impedio* used as an) adj., hampered, impassable; *loca impedita*, inaccessible places (c. v, 19).

im-pello, -pellēre, -pūll-, -pulsum, v. tr., drive to.

im-pendēo, -pendēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., overhang.

im-pendo, -pendēre, -pendi, -pensum, v. tr., to expend.

impens-us, -ā, -um, adj., of cost; great, large, high; *impenso pretio*, at an extravagant price (c. iv, 2).

impērāt-or, -ōris, M., commander-in-chief, general.

im-pērit-us, -ā, -um, adj., unskilled in, inexperienced in (with genitive, p. 281, 9).

im-pēri-um, -i, N., command, authority, government; *summam imperii transferre*, to transfer the supreme command (N. A. 2).

impēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, notes), command, order; *milites civitati imperare*, to levy troops from a state; *imperat mihi ut (or ne) faciam*, he orders me to do (or not to do): p. 181, 3.

impet-ro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., obtain by request, obtain.

impēt-us, -ūs, M., attack, assault; *facere impetum*, to make an attack (c. v, 15).

impiēt-as, -ātis, F., impiety.

im-pi-us, -ā, -um, adj., wicked.

im-plico, -plicāre, -plicāvi (or -plicūi), -plicātum (or -plicitum), v. tr., entangle; *in morbum implicari*, to be attacked with sickness.

im-plōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bewail, implore, invoke, appeal to.

im-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsūi, -pōsūtum, v. tr., place on, or upon; *modum imponere*, to make an end; *milites in navem imponere*, to put soldiers on board.

im-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bring or carry to; import.

impraesentiārum (for *in prae-*

sentia rerum, in the presence of things), adv., at present, for the present (N. H. 6).

imprimis, adv., among the first; in the first place, chiefly, especially.

im-prōb-us, -ā, -um, adj., bad, shameless.

im-prōvis-us, -ā, -um, adj., unforeseen, unexpected; *de improviso*, unexpectedly, suddenly.

im-prūden-s, -tis, adj., not foreseeing, unwise; *imprudētibz nostris*, while our men were off their guard (c. v, 15).

im-prūdentia, -ae, F., indiscretion, ignorance.

im-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., attack, assail, fight.

im-us, -a, -um, sup. of *inferus* (p. 59, 1).

in, prep. with (1) acc. (after words signifying motion), to, into, upon, against; (2) abl. (after words signifying rest), in, at, during, among; *in vicem*, in turns (c. iv, 1); *in hiemem*, for the winter (c. iv, 29); *in primis*, especially (c. v, 6); *in itinere*, while on the march (c. iv, 11); *in ancoris*, at anchor.

in-ān-is, -ē, adj., empty, vain, useless.

in-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., advance, proceed, come to.

incend-i-um, -i, N., fire.

in-cendo, -cendēre, -cendi, -censum, v. tr., set on fire, burn, inflame.

in-cert-us, -ā, -um, adj., uncertain; *incertis ordinibus*, when their ranks were broken (c. iv, 32).

in-cido, -cidēre, -cidi, -cāsum, v. tr., fall in with, attack.

in-cipio, -cipēre, -cepī, -ceptum, v. tr., begin, commence.

in-cit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., urge, arouse, encourage; *equo incitato*, with horse at full gallop (c. iv, 12); *remis incitare*, to row hard (c. iv, 25).

in-clin-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., lean against.

in-cognit-us, -ā, -um, adj., unknown.

in-cōl-a, -ae, M., an inhabitant.

in-cōlo, -cōlāre, -cōlūi, -cultum, v. tr., live in, inhabit.

in-cōlūm-is, -ē, adj., safe, in safety.

in-commōd-um, -i, N., misfortune, harm, disaster, defeat.

in-crēdibil-is, -ē, adj., incredible.

the presence of
nt, for the present

among the first; in
especially.

-um, adj., bad,

-um, adj., unfore-
se improvise,

adj., not foresee-
identibus nos-
ere off their guard

ae, F., indiscre-

-avi, -atum, v.
sail, fight.

p. of inferus (p.

(after words sig-
to, upon, against;
gnifying rest), in,
vicem, in turns
m, for the winter
especially (c. v, 6);
the march (c. iv, 11;

pty, vain, useless.
cessi, -cessum,
ed, come to.

fire.

-cendi, -cen-

burn, inflame.

adj., uncertain;

when their ranks

idi, -cāsum, v.

ēpi, -ceptum,

-atum, v. tr.,

equo incita-

allop (c. iv, 12);

hard (c. iv, 25).

-ātrū, v. intr.,

um, adj., un-

nhabitant.

-tūi, -cultum,

safe, in safety.

N., misfortune,

J., incredible.

in-cursi-o, -ōnis, F., inroad, invasion.

in-cūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,

accuse, blame.

inde, adv., from that place, thence;

after that, then.

indic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,

make known, deceive, betray.

in-dico, -dicere, dixi, dictum,

v. tr., proclaim, declare; bellum indi-

cere, to declare war.

in-dici-um, -i, N., sign, proof, mark,

token.

ind-igēo, -igere, -igui, no sup., v.

intr. (with gen. or abl., p. 281, 10; 282, 1),

be in want, need; alienarum opum

indigere, to be dependent on the help

of others (N. H. 1).

in-dign-us, -ā, -um, adj., unworthy

(with abl., p. 64, 4).

in-duc-o, -ducere, -dixi, -ductum,

v. tr., induce, persuade.

in-dūo, -dūere, -dūi, -dūtum, v.

tr., put on, don.

industri-a, -ae, F., industry.

induti-ae, -ārum, F. pl., a truce,

armistice.

Indutiōmār-us, -i, M., Indutioma-

rus, a leading man among the Treveri,

and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with

the Romans (c. v, 2).

in-ēo, -īre, -ivi (-fi), -itum, v. tr.

a. i. intr., enter, enter upon; inire con-

silium, to form a plan; inire ration-

em, to form a plan (N. H. 10); inire

consulatum, to enter upon a consul-

ship; iniens adulescentia, the be-

ginning of youth (N. T. 1); secunda in-

ita vigilia, at the beginning of the

second watch (c. v, 23).

in-erm-is, -ē, adj., unarmed, defence-

less.

in-ers, -ertis, adj., indolent, idle,

inactive.

in-fāmi-a, -ae, F., ill report, infamy.

in-fa-n-s, -ntis, M. or F., child.

in-felix, -felicitas, adj., unhappy, un-

fortunate.

in-fēro, -ferre, -tūli illatum, v.

tr., carry in, bring in; bellum hosti-

bus inferre, to make war on the enemy

infirmus: see inferus.

infini-tus, -ā, -um, adj., boundless,

immense.

infirmi-tas, -ātis, F., sickness.

in-firm-us, -ā, -um, adj., weak,

feeble.

in-fi-ti-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep.,

deny.

in-flūo, -flūere, -fluxi, -fluxum,

v. intr., flow into, empty into.

infrā, (1) adv., below; (2) prep. (with

acc.), below, beneath.

in-gēni-um, -i, N., natural disposi-

tion, talent, ability, genius.

in-gen-s, -tis, adj., huge, great, vast.

in-grātilis, adj., against one's will,

unwillingly.

in-grāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., unthank-

ful, thankless, ungrateful.

in-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus sum,

v. tr. dep., enter upon.

in-hibēo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibit-

um, v. tr., check, restrain.

in-icio, -icere, -icēci, -iectum, v. tr.,

throw or cast into; metum incicere

Germanis, to inspire the Germans with

fear (c. iv, 18).

in-imici-ti-a, -ae, F., hatred, enmity.

in-imic-us, -ā, -um, adj., unfriendly,

hostile; as a noun, a private enemy.

in-iqu-us, -ā, -um, adj., uneven;

disadvantageous, unjust.

in-iti-um, -i, N., beginning, com-

menacement; in initio, in the beginning.

in-iūri-a, -ae, F., wrong, outrage, in-

justice.

in-luste, adv., unjustly, wrongfully.

in-iust-us, -ā, -um, adj., unjust.

in-nit-or, -niti, -nisus (or nixus)

sum, v. intr., lean on, rest on, support

one's self by.

in-nōcen-s, -tis, adj., harmless, in-

nocent.

in-nōcenti-a, -ae, F., uprightness,

integrity.

in-ōpi-a, -ae, F., want, scarcity,

poverty.

in-ōpināt-us, -ā, -um, adj., un-

expected.

inquam (verb defective, p. 146, 6),

say.

in-scien-s, -tis, adj., not knowing,

at unawares, ignorant; illis inscien-

tibus, while they were unaware of it

(N. H. 9); Caesare insciente, without

the knowledge of Caesar (c. v, 7).

in-sci-us, -ā, -um, adj., not knowing, ignorant of a thing.

in-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus (or **sēquūtus**) **sum, v. tr. dep.**, overtake, attack; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating enemy (c. v, 16).

in-sidi-ae, -ārum, F. pl., ambush; **per dolum et insidias**, by guile and treachery (c. iv, 13).

in-sidi-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., lie in wait, lie in ambush.

in-signe, -signis, N., sign, mark, badge, decoration.

in-signis, -signe, adj., noted, remarkable.

in-sinū-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make a way into; **se insinuare**, to make their way among (c. iv, 33).

in-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, no sup., v. intr., stand, take one's position; **firmiter insistere**, to get a firm foothold (c. iv, 26).

insolenter, adv., haughtily, arrogantly.

instābil-is, -ē, adj., unsteady.

instan-s, -tis, (pres. part. of insto, used as an) adj., present; **de instantibus**, about present affairs (N. T. 1).

in-stitū-o, -stitū-ere, -stitūi, -stitū-tum, v. tr., draw up troops; decide upon; **sacrificare instituit**, he began to sacrifice (N. H. 2); **triplicem aciem instituere**, to draw up a triple line (c. iv, 14); **bellum parare instituit**, he decided to prepare for war (c. v, 3); **ab instituto consilio**, from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

in-stitūt-um, -i, N., custom, usage, law.

in-sto, -stāre, -stiti, no sup., v. intr., press on.

in-strū-o, -strū-ere, -struxi, -struc-tum, v. tr., build, draw up; **navem instruere**, to build a ship (c. v, 2); **omnibus rebus instrui**, to be fully equipped (c. v, 6); **copias instruere**, to draw up forces (c. v, 18).

in-suēfact-us, -ā, -um, adj., accustomed.

in-suēt-us, -ā, -um adj., unaccustomed; **navigandi insuetus**, unused to sailing (c. v, 6).

insū-lā, -ae, F., island.

in-sūper, adv., moreover, besides, above.

intel-lēgo, -lēgere, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr., understand, know; **Intellectum est**, it was observed (c. v, 16).

in-tempērantī-a, -ae, F., haughtiness, arrogance.

inter, prep. (with acc.), between, among, during.

inter-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-sum, v. tr., intervene, come to pass; **bellā intercesserant**, wars had sprung up (c. v, 11).

inter-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsi, -clūsum, v. tr., hem in; **fratril intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferre**, to bring aid to his brother surrounded by the enemy (c. iv, 12).

inter-dico, -dicēre, -dixi, -dic-tum, v. tr., forbid, exclude from.

interdum, adv., sometimes, meanwhile.

inter-ēā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

inter-ēo, -ire, -ivī (or -iī), -itum, v. intr., be wasted, perish.

interest, interesse, interfuit, intr., impersonal; it is of importance; **magni interest**, it is of great importance; **meā interest**, it is of importance to me; **virī interest**, it is of importance to the man (p. 282, 14).

inter-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fec-tum, v. tr., kill, destroy, slay.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

intērior, comparative adj., from obsolete **intērus** (p. 69, 2), inner; **intēriores**, those of the inland parts (c. v, 14); **pars intērior**, the inland part (c. v, 12); **intēriora consilia**, the private counsels (N. H. 2).

intērit-us, -ūs, M., destruction, death.

inter-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -mis-sum, v. tr., discontinue; **brevi tempore intermisso**, after the lapse of a short interval (c. iv, 34); **vento intermisso**, after the wind had died down (c. v, 8); **ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis**, not even the night time interrupting the exertions of the soldiers (c. v, 11); **intermisso spatio**, after a time (c. v, 15).

inter-nēcī-o, -ōnis, F., extermination, massacre.

inter-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. tr., allege; **causam interponere**, to allege as an excuse (N. T. 7); **moram interponere**, to cause a delay (c. iv, 9); **fidem interponere**, to pledge his word (c. v, 6).

inter-prēt-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., expound.

-a, -ae, F., haughti-

with acc.), between,

-dēre, -cessi, -ces-
-venē, come to pass;
-serant, wars had

-clūdēre, -clūsi,
-m in; -fratri inter-
-auxilium ferre,
-rother surrounded by

-cēre, -dixi, -dic-
-exclude from.

-s, sometimes, mean-

-in the meantime,

-ivi (or -ii), -itum,
-erish.

-resse, interfuit,
-is of importance;
-is of great import-
-ist, it is of import-
-interest, it is of
-m (p. 282, 14).

-cēre, -fēci, -fec-
-tro, slay.

-meanwhile, in the

-tive adj., from obso-
-59, 2), inner; in-
-the inland parts
-terior, the inland
-eriora consilia,
-N. H. 2).

-M., destruction,

-tēre, -misi, -mis-
-nue; brevi tem-
-after the lapse of a
-4); vento inter-
-had died down
-his quidem tem-
-em militum in-
-the night time
-ions of the soldiers
-o spatia, after a

-is, F., extermina-

-nēre, -pōsui,
-nge; causam in-
-ge as an excuse
-nterponere, to
-fidem inter-
-word (c. v, 6).

-i, -ātus sum, v.

inter-rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., ask, inquire.

inter-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi,
-ruptum, v. tr., break down, break up.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be
present, take part in (with dative, p. 279, 9).

inter-vall-um, -i, N., an interval of
space or time.

inter-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ven-
tum, v. intr., come between, come upon.

intrā, prep. (with acc.), between,
within.

intrō-it-us, -ūs, M., an entrance.

in-tūor, -tūeri, -tūtus sum, v.
tr. dep., behold, consider, regard.

in-ūsitāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., unusual.

in-ūtil-is, -ē, adj., useless, unservice-
able.

in-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum,
v. tr., come upon, find out, discover.

in-ven-tor, -tōris, M., discoverer,
inventor.

in-vicem, adv., by turns, alternately.

in-vict-us, -ā, -um, adj., uncon-
quered.

in-vidi-a, -ae, F., envy, ill-will.

invit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
invite.

invit-us, -ā, -um, adj., unwilling;
se invito, against his will (c. iv, 16).

in-vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
call on or upon; invoke.

ipse, ipsā, ipsum, dem. pro. (see p.
122); self, himself, herself, itself, them-
selves; ipso terrore equorum, by
mere terror caused by the horses (c. iv,
33).

ir-a, -ae, F., anger.

irācundi-a, -ae, F., anger, rage,
passion.

irācund-us, -ā, -um, adj., irritable,
passionate, angry.

irāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., angry, angered.

ir-ideō, -ridere, -risi, -risum, v.
tr., ridicule.

ir-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rup-
tum, v. intr., break into, burst into;
force one's way into.

is, eā, id, dem. pro. (p. 195, 4), this,
that, he, she, it, they; before ut, is =
talis, such; with comparatives eo
(abl.) the; eo magis, all the more.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pro., that,
that of yours (p. 118).

ita, adv., in this way, so, thus; in the
following manner, therefore; non ita
magnus, not very large.

Itāl-i-a, -ae, F., Italy.

itāque, conj., and so, therefore, ac-
cordingly.

item, adv., just, so, also, in like
manner.

iter, itinēris, N., journey, march;
iter magnum, a forced march; ex
itinere oppugnare, to storm by direct
assault; ex itinere, on the march;
iter facere, to make a march; iter
conficere, to complete a march (c. iv, 4).

itērum, adv., again, a second time.

Iti-us, -i, M., Itius, a port on the
northern coast of Gaul, opposite Britain.
From it Caesar sailed to Britain. It is
said to be *Boulogne*, or *Wissant*.

iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum, v.
tr., order, command (p. 181, 3, note).

iud-ex, -icis, M., judge.

iudici-um, -i, M., judgment, trial,
decree, opinion; in iudicis versari,
to be employed in trials (N. T. 1).

iudic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
judge, decide; verissime iudicare,
to form the most correct judgment (N. T. 1).

iūg-um, -i, N., yoke.

iument-um, -i, N., beast of burden.
In c. iv, 2, horses.

iunctū-r-a, -ae, F., joining.

iungo, iungere, iunxi, iunctum,
v. tr., join, unite.

iūni-or, -ōris, comp. of juvenis
(p. 58, note), younger.

Iūpiter, Iōvis, M., Jupiter (see p.
237).

iūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.
swear, take an oath.

iūs, iūris, N., right, authority, law;
iura in hos, rights over these; ius
commune, the common rights (N. T. 7).

iūs-iūrand-um, iūris-iūrandi, N.,
a civil oath, distinguished from sacra-
mentum, the military oath.

iustiti-a, -ae, F., uprightness, justice.

iust-us, -ā, -um, adj., according to
right, lawful, upright.

iūvenc-us, -i, M., a steer.

iūvén-is, -ē, adj., young; comp.,
junior; sup., minimus natu (p. 58,
note).

iūvent-us, -ūtis, F., youth, the
period from 17 to 46, and so the military
age; the youth of a country.

iūvo, iūvāre, iūvi, iūtum, v. tr.,
help, aid; assist (p. 278, foot note).

iuxta (prep., with acc.), close to,
beside.

K.

Kālend-ae, -ārum, F. pl., the Kalends, the first day of each month.

Karthago: see **Carthago**.

Karthaginiensis: see **Carthaginiensis**.

L.

L. = **Lucius**, a Roman praenomen: see **Domitius**.

Lābē-o, -ōnis, M., **Labeo**: see **Fabius**.

Lābēri-us, -i, M., **Laberius**; **Quintus Laberius Durus**, a tribune in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Lābiēn-us, -i, M., **Titus Labienus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. On the outbreak of the civil war he went over to Pompey and fell at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

lāb-or, -ōris, M., toil, suffering, exertion.

lābor, lābi, lapsus sum, v. intr. dep., slip, go astray; **propter imprudentiam labi**, to fall away from allegiance on account of thoughtlessness (c. v, 3).

lābor-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., toil, labor, suffer; **cupide laborare**, to be very anxious (N. A. 1).

labr-um, -i, N., lip.

lac, lactis, N., milk; **lacte et carne vivere**, to live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).

Lācēdaem-on, -ōnis, F., **Lacedaemon** or **Sparta**, a city of the Peloponnesus.

Lācēdaemōnī-us, -ā, -um, adj., **Spartan**.

lāc-er, -ērā, -ērum, adj., torn, mangled.

lāc-esso, -essēre, -essivi, -essitum, v. tr., provoke, assail, assault.

lāc-rima, -rimae, F., a tear.

lācrim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., weep.

lāc-us, -ūs, M., a lake.

laedo, laedēre, laesi, laesum, v. tr., harm, hurt, offend, injure.

laet-itia, -itiae, F., joy, delight, pleasure.

laet-us, -ā, -um, adj., joyful, glad, pleasant.

Lampsāc-us, -i, F., **Lampsacus**, a city of Mysia, on the Hellespont.

lāp-is, -idis, M., a stone.

largē, adv., bountifully.

larg-ior, -iri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., bestow, give freely, bribe.

largiter, adv.; see **largē**.

largiti-o, -ōnis, F., distribution, bribery; **largitio magistratum**, the distribution made by the magistrates (N. T. 2).

larg-us, -a, -um, adj., bounteous.

Larti-us, -i, M., **Titus Lartius**, the first Roman dictator.

lassi-tūd-o, -inis, F., weariness, fatigue.

lātē, adv., widely, broadly; **longe lateque**, far and wide (c. iv, 35); **quam latissime**, as widely as possible (c. iv, 3).

lātēo, lātēre, lātūi, no supine, v. tr., lie hid, be concealed.

lāt-ītudo, -ītudinis, F., width, breadth, extent.

Lāti-um, -i, N., **Latium**, a district of Italy, in which Rome is situated.

lātr-o, -ōnis, M., a robber, freebooter.

lātrōcīnī-um, -i, N., robbery, freebooting, piracy.

lātrōcīn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., be a brigand.

lāt-us, -ēris, N., side, flank; **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank, i.e. the right (c. iv, 26).

lāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., broad, wide.

laudābil-is, -ē, adj., praiseworthy.

laud-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., praise.

laur-us, -i, F., bay-tree.

laus, -dis, F., praise.

lāvo, lāvāre, lāvāvi (or lāvī), lāvātum (or lautum, lotum), v. tr., wash, bathe.

lēgātī-o, -ōnis, F., an embassy.

lēgā-tus, -i, M., (1) an ambassador; (2) lieutenant-general in the army, officers of senatorial rank in command of different divisions in the field, under the **imperator**. They were appointed by the Senate and were usually three in number, but Caesar had ten in Gaul.

lēgi-o, -ōnis, F., a legion; a division of the Roman army consisting, when complete, of 6,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each manipulus into two centuries. The cavalry consisted of ten squadrons (**turmae**): **legione conferta**, owing to the legion being in close order (c. iv, 32); **legioni aliquem praeficere**, to appoint one over a legion (c. v, 1); **legiones expeditae**, legions without

-itus sum, v. tr. dep.,
y, bribe.

; see *largē*.

is, F., distribution,
o magistratum,
made by the magistrates

m, adj., bounteous.

M., Titus Lartius, the
or.

nis, F., weariness, fa-

ely, broadly; *longe*
vide (c. iv, 35); *quam*
ely as possible (c. iv, 3).

lātūi, no supine, v.
ealed.

ūdinis, F., width,

Latium, a district of
he is situated.

, a robber, freebooter.

-i, N., robbery, free-

ri, -atus sum, v.
and.

l, side, flank; ab
in the exposed flank,
(26).

adj., broad, wide.

adj., praiseworthy.

āvi, -atum, v. tr.,

ay-tree.

raise.

lāvāvi (or lāvī),
um, lotum, v. tr.,

F., an embassy.

(1) an ambassador;
in the army, officers

command of different
under the imper-

appointed by the
ally three in number,

Gaul.

a legion; a division
y consisting, when

fantry and 300 cav-
was divided into ten

into three maniples,
into two centuries.

and of ten squadrons
e conferta, owing

lose order (c. iv, 32);
præficere, to

legion (c. v, 1);
ae, legions without

baggage, or in light marching order
(c. v, 2).

legionāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to a legion; milites legio-
nari, common soldiers.

lēgitim-us, -ā, -um, adj., lawful;
poena legitima, the legal penalty.

lēgo, lēgere, lēgi, lectum, v. tr.,
choose, select; read.

lēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
do by law, appoint, despatch.

Lēmann-us, -i, M., Leman, or lake
of Geneva.

lēn-is, -ē, adj., mild, gentle.

lēnit-as, -ātis, F., smoothness.

lēniter, adv., gently.

lēo, -ōnis, M., a lion.

Lēonid-as, -ae, M., Leonidas, king
of Sparta, who with his band of three
hundred Spartans held the pass of Ther-
mopylae for three days, B.C. 480.

Lēopontī-i, -ōrum, M. pl., the Leo-
pontii, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the
sources of the Rhine among the Alps,
between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore
(c. iv, 10).

lēp-us, -ōris, M., a hare.

lēv-is, -ē, adj., light; milites levis
armaturae, light armed soldiers
(p. 20, 4).

lēv-is, -ē, adj., smooth.

lēv-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
relieve, lighten.

lex, legis, F., law, terms, conditions.

liben-s, -tis, adj., willing, cheerful.

libenter, adv., willingly, cheerfully.

lib-er, -ri, M., book.

lib-er, -āre, -erum, adj., free.

liberaliter, adv., courteously, gener-
ously.

libéré, adv., freely, without restraint;
liberius vivere, to live too dissolutely,
(N. T. 1).

libēr-i, -ōrum, pl. M., children (the
singular is not found except in late
writers); unus ex liberis, one child.

libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
free, acquit; poenā liberare, to re-
lieve from punishment.

libert-a, -ae, F., a freedwoman (p.
6, 2).

libert-as, -ātis, F., liberty, freedom.

libert-us, -i, M., a freedman.

lib-et, -ēre, -ūit, -itum, v. intr.
impers., it pleases; mihi libet, I am
pleased.

lic-et, -ēre, -ūit, -itum, v. intr.
impers., it is allowed; may, might (p.
163, 5).

licet, conj. (p. 196, 7), although,
though, even if.

lic-tor, -tōris, M., a lictor; an attend-
ant of the superior magistrates. The
lictors served as a body-guard and also as
a mark of official dignity.

lign-ūs, -eā, -um, adj., of wood,
wooden; lignea moenia, wooden
walls, the term which the Pythian priest-
esses enigmatically used for the Athenian
ships.

lign-um, -i, N., wood.

Ligur-es, -um, pl. M., the Ligures,
a people inhabiting Liguria in North-
Western Italy.

lill-um, -i, N., lily.

Lingon-es, -um, pl. M., the Lingones,
a people of Gaul whose territories lay
about Mons Vosēgus (*Vosges Moun-
tains*), and the sources of the Mosa
(*Meuse*) and Matrona (*Marne*). Their
chief town was Andematunnum
(now Langres).

lingu-a, -ae, F., tongue, language.

lint-er, -ris, F., boat, skiff.

lique-n-s, -tis, (pres. part. of *liqueo*,
used as an) adj., flowing.

lis, litis, F., a dispute, law suit;
litem aestimare, to estimate the
amount of damages (c. v, 1).

Lisc-us, -i, M., Liscus, an Aeduan chief.

littēr-a (or litēr-a), -ae, F., a letter
of the alphabet; pl. litterae, -arum,
literature or a despatch, letter, epistle;
litterae Persarum, Persian litera-
ture (N. T. 10); ex litteris, in accord-
ance with the despatch (c. iv, 38).

lit-us, -ōris, N., sea shore, coast.

lōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
place, station; castra locare, to pitch
a camp.

lōc-us, -i, M., a place; pl. loca
or loci (p. 242); obsidum loco, as
hostages (c. v, 5); loca frigidissima,
very cold parts (c. iv, 1); in loca
superiora, up the country (c. v, 8);
loca temperatiora, more temperate
climate (c. v, 12).

lōcūt-us, -ā, -um, perf. part. of
lōquor; which see.

longē, adv., far; with comparatives
and superlatives, far, by far; longe
melior, far better; longe optimus,
by far the best; longius, too far
(c. v, 7); longe lateque, far and wide
(c. iv, 35).

longinqu-us, -ā, -um, adj., far removed, remote; distant, prolonged.

longitūd-o, -inis, F., length, extent.

long-us, -ā, -um, adj., long.

Longus, -i, M.; see **Sempronius** (under **Tiberius Sempronius Longus**).

lōquor, **lōquī**, **lōcūtus** (or **lōquūtus**) sum, v. tr. dep., speak.

Lūcān-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Lucani, or people of Lucania, in South-Eastern Italy.

Lucca, -ae, F., Lucca, a town of Gallia Cisalpina.

lūc-ēo, -ēre, -luxī, no sup., v. intr., shine.

lūcēt, **lūcēre**, **luxit**, v. intr. imper., it is light.

Lūcī-us, -i, M.; see **Aemilius**, **Cotta**, **Furius**.

lūcr-um, -i, N., profit, gain, advantage.

lūdo, **lūdēre**, **lūsi**, **lūsum**, v. intr., sport, play.

lūd-us, -i, M., sport, play; pl., **ludi**, games.

lūgēo, **lūgēre**, **luxī**, no sup., v. tr. and intr., lament, mourn for.

Lugotōrī-x, -igis, M., **Lugotorix**, a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

lūm-en, -inis, N., light.

lūn-a, -ae, F., moon.

lūp-us, -i, M., a wolf.

lūs-us, -ūs, M., sport, play.

lux, **lūcis**, F., light; **prima luce**, at daybreak; **orta luce**, at daybreak (c. v, 8).

luxūri-a, -ae, F., luxury, extravagance.

Lysimāch-us, -i, M., **Lysimachus**, an Athenian, father of **Aristides** (N. A. 1).

M.

M. = **Marcus**, a Roman praenomen; see **Baebius**, **Claudius**, **Minucius**.

māchinātī-o, -ōnis, F., a machine, an engine.

maer-ēo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. tr. and intr., grieve, lament.

māgis (comp. of adv., **magnopere**), more, rather (sup. **maxime**).

māgist-er, -ri, M., master; **magister equitum**, master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.

māgistrāt-us, -ūs, M., office, magistrature.

Magnēsī-a, -ae, F., **Magnesia**, a city of Caria, on the Maeander.

magnific-us, -ā, -um, adj., noble, grand.

magnitūd-o, -inis, F., greatness, size, bulk; **animi magnitudo**, nobility of spirit, magnanimity.

magnōpere, adv. (often written **magno opere**), greatly; comp., **magis**; sup., **maxime**, especially (N. T. 2); **magnopere orant**, they earnestly ask (c. iv, 11).

magn-us, -ā, -um, adj., large, great (comp. **maior**; sup. **maximus**); **magni**, at a high price; **pluris**, at a greater price; **maximi**, at a very high price (p. 280, 5); **maiores natu**, elders (N. T. 2); **maiores**, ancestors; **res maior**, matter of more than usual importance (N. T. 1); **maximam partem**, for the most part (c. iv, 1); **magni habere**, to value highly (c. iv, 21); **magni interesse**, to be of great importance (c. v, 4).

Māg-o, -ōnis, M., **Mago**, a Carthaginian, brother of **Hannibal**, died 203 B.C.

maiorēs: see **magnus**.

māle, adv., badly (comp. **pēius**; sup., **pessimē**); **rem male gerere**, to be unsuccessful (N. T. 5).

mālē-dico, -dicēre, -dixī, -dic-tum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), revile, slander, speak ill of.

mālē-dic-us, -ā, -um, adj., slanderous (p. 57, 3).

mālēficī-um, -i, N., evil deed, crime.

mālēfic-us, -ā, -um, adj., evil doing, criminal (p. 57, 3).

mālo, **malle**, **mālūi**, no sup., v. irreg. (p. 147), wish rather, prefer.

māl-um, -i, N., evil, misfortune, calamity; **mala inferre**, to cause misfortunes (N. T. 9).

māl-us, -ā, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked (comp. **pēior**; sup., **pessimus**).

mandāt-um, -i, N., order, command, charge.

mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), entrust, bid; **se fugae mandare**, to betake themselves to flight (c. v, 18).

Mandūbrāci-us, -i, M., **Mandubracius**, a chief of the **Trinobantes**, a British tribe.

mānē, adv., in the morning, early.

mān-ēo, -ēre, **mansī**, **mansum**, v. tr. and intr., remain, await, stay; in

F., Magnesia, a city under.

ī, -um, adj., noble,

nis, F., greatness, *magni magnitudo*, magnanimity.

iv. (often written greatly; comp., *maxime*, especially (N. orant, they earn-

m, adj., large, great up. *maximus*); rice; pluris, at a mi, at a very high *maiores natu*, elders, ancestors; res more than usual *imprimam partem*, (1); *magni ha-* (c. iv, 21); *magni* great importance

Mago, a Carthaginian, died 203 B.C.

gnus. (comp., *pēius*; a male gerere, (c. 5).

re, -dixi, -dic- native, p. 278, 5), of.

m, adj., slander-

, evil deed, crime.

, adj., evil doing,

ūi, no sup., v. er, prefer.

evil, misfortune, re, to cause mis-

adj., bad, evil, ; sup., *pessim-*

order, command,

-atum, v. intr. (note), entrust, are, to betake (18).

M., Mandubra-antes, a British

orning, early.

si, -mansum, wait, stay; in

officio manere, to remain in allegiance, to remain loyal (c. v, 4).

mānifest-us, -ā, -um, adj., clear, plain, evident.

Manli-us, -i, M., Manlius; Cnēus Manlius Volso, consul 189 B.C., conquered the Galatians.

mansuē-fāciō, -fācēre, -fēcī, -fac- tum, v. intr., tame.

mān-us, -ūs, F., hand; band of men; *manum conserere*, to engage in battle (N. ii, 4); *delecta manus*, a picked band.

Mārāthōnī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Marathon; *pugna Mārathonia*, the battle of Marathon, fought 490 B.C. on the plain of Marathon, about 24 miles N. E. of Athens.

Marcell-us, -i, M., Marcellus; (1) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a Roman consul who took Syracuse B.C. 212, and in his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., was slain in battle against Hannibal near Venusia, in Apulia. (2) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, in whose consulship, according to some, Hannibal died, 183 B.C.

Marc-us, -i, M., Marcus; a Roman praenomen; see *Crassus*, *Minucius*, *Marcellus* (2).

Mardōnī-us, -i, M., Mardonius, son-in-law of Darius, and general of the Persian army at Plataeae, where he was defeated, B.C. 479.

mā-re, -is, N., the sea; *et mari et terra*, both by sea and land.

margārit-a, -ae, F., a pearl.

mārītīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to the sea; maritime; *ora maritima*, the sea coast; *regiones maritimae*, the districts lying on the sea; *maritimi praedones*, pirates (N. T. 2).

Mars, -tis, M., Mars, the Roman god of war.

Marti-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Mars.

mas, *māris*, adj., male.

mā-ter, -tris, F., mother; *mater familiae* or *mater familias*, the mother of the house.

mātērī-a, -ae, F., timber.

mātrīmōnī-um, -i, N., marriage; *in matrimonium ducere*, to marry; *in matrimonium dare*, to give in marriage.

mātrōn-a, -ae, F., a married woman; *matron*.

mātūrē, adv., early (comp., *ma-*

turius; sup., *maturrime* or *maturissime*).

mātūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., make ripe, ripen, hasten.

mātūr-us, -ā, -um, adj., ripe, early.

maxime, adv., superlative of *mag-nopere*, which see.

maxīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., superlative of *magnus*, which see.

Maximus, -i, M., Maximus, a cognomen given to Quintus Fabius on account of his exploits: see *Fabius*.

me-cum; with me (p. 105, 8).

méd-ior, *méd-eri*, no perf., no sup., v. intr. dep. (with dative), heal, provide against or for, remedy.

médicīn-a, -ae, F., medicine.

médic-us, -i, M., healer, physician.

médiocr-is, -ē, adj., moderate; *non medicocris*, not ordinary, i.e., very marked.

Mēdiomātrīc-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Mediomatrici, a people of Gaul in the neighborhood of the modern city of Metz.

mēditerrānē-us, -ā, -um, adj., inland, central.

mēdi-us, -ā, -um, adj., middle; *medius mons*, the middle of the mountain; *mediā de nocte*, after midnight; *ad mediam noctem*, about midnight.

Mēd-us, -ā, -um, adj., Median or Persian; pl., *Mēdi*, -ōrum, M., the Medes or Persians.

Mēld-i, -ōrum or *Mēldae*, -ārum, pl. M., the Meldi or Meldae, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the coast east of the Parisii, near the modern town of *Meaux*, which still preserve the name.

membr-um, -i, N., limb.

mēmīn-i, -isse, v. defec. (see p. 145), remember (for construction, p. 146, 7).

mēm-or, -ōris, adj., mindful.

mēmōrī-a, -ae, F., memory, recollection; *memoriā tenere*, to recollect; *nostrā memoriā*, in our day (N. T. 10); *memoriā prodere*, to hand down by tradition (N. T. 10); *post hominum memoriam*, within the memory of man (N. T. 5); *duplex memoriā*, a twofold account (N. H. 10).

mēmōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., relate.

Mēnāpī-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Menapii, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosā (*Meuse*), and the Scaldis (*Scheldt*); their chief town was Menapi-orum Castellum (now *Kessel*).

- mendāci-um**, -i, N., falsehood.
mendā-x, -cis, adj., lying, false.
men-s, -tis, F., mind.
men-sa, -sae, F., a table.
men-sis, -sis, M., month.
men-sū-ra, -ae, F., measure; **cer-tae ex aqua mensurae**, accurate measurements by the water clock (c. v, 13).
men-ti-o, -ōnis, F., a mentioning or mention of anything.
men-tior, -tiri, -titus sum, v. dep., tr., lie, speak falsely.
mercā-tor, -tōris, M., trader; **mercatoribus est aditus**, traders go there (c. iv, 2).
mercātūr-a, -ae, F., trade, commerce.
mer-cēs, -cēdis, F., gain, profit, reward.
Mercūri-us, -i, M., Mercury, the god of gain and commerce.
mēr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr., gain.
mēr-ēor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., gain, earn, deserve.
mergo, **mergēre**, **mersi**, **mersum**, v. tr., sink, immerse, overwhelm, destroy.
mēridiān-us, -ā, -um, adj., mid-day; **meridiano fere tempore**, at about noon (c. v, 8).
mēridi-es, -ēi, M., mid-day (p. 233, foot note); **ad meridiem spectat**, it faces the South (i.e., the sun at noon).
mērit-um, -i, N., service, kindness, benefit; **pro meritis**, for his kindness (N. T. 8); **merito eius a se fieri**, to be done by him according to the deserts of the latter (c. v, 4).
mērit-us, -ā, -um: see **mereor**.
mētall-um, -i, N., mine.
mēt-ior, -iri, **mensus sum**, v. tr., dep., measure, measure out.
mēto, **mētēre**, **messui**, **messum**, v. tr., reap.
mētū-o, -ēre, -i, **mētūtum**, v. tr., fear.
mēt-us, -ūs, M., fear.
mē-us, -ā, -um, poss. adj. pro.; my, mine.
migr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., migrate, depart.
mil-es, -itis, M., a soldier.
militār-is, -ē, adj., of or belonging to a soldier, military; **res militaris**, military science.
militi-a, -ae, F., military service;
- militiae** (p. 86), on military service, abroad.
mille, adj. or noun, indecl., a thousand (p. 68, 5); pl. **millia** or **millia**.
millia passuum, miles; **mille passus**, a Roman mile, or 1,616 yards (see **passus**).
milliēs, adv., a thousand times.
Mil-o, -ōnis, M., Milo, a friend of Cicero.
Miltiād-es, -ae, M., Miltiades, a celebrated Athenian general, who commanded the Athenians at the battle of Marathon, 490 B.C.
Minerv-a, -ae, F., Minerva, a Roman goddess who presided over wisdom and war.
min-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr., threaten; **alicui morte**, or **alicui mortem minari**, to threaten anyone with death.
mīn-or, -us, adj. (comp. of **parvus**; sup., **minimus**, p. 57, 4), less; as a noun, **minores** (with or without **natu**), descendants; **dimidio minor**, half the size (c. v, 13).
Minūci-us, -i, M., Minucius; (1) **Marcus Minucius Rufus**, master of the horse under the dictator **Quintus Fabius Maximus**, in 217 B.C., the year of the battle of Lake Trasimenus. He fell at Cannae, 216 B.C. (2) **Quintus Minucius**, consul 197 B.C., in the third year of Hannibal's banishment from Carthage.
minū-o, -ēre, -ūi, **minūtum**, v. tr., lessen, diminish.
minus, comp. adv. of **pārum** (which see), less; sup., **minime**; **si or sin minus**, if not (p. 77, 6); with adjs. = not; **minus probatus**, not acceptable (N. T. 1).
mirābil-is, -ē, adj., wonderful.
mir-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., admire, wonder at.
mir-us, -ā, -um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.
mis-er, -erā, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.
mis-er-ēor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. intr., dep. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.
mis-er-esco, -escere, no pert., no sup., v. intr. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.
mis-er-et, -ēre, -ūit, -itum est, v. tr. impera., it distresses, it excites pity; **me tui miseret**, I pity you (p. 165).
misericordi-a, -ae, F., pity, compassion; **captus misericordia**, overcome with pity (N. T. 8).

), on military service,

noun, indecl., a thousand; *millia* or *millia*.

um, miles; *mille passus*, or 1,616 yards (see

thousand times.

M., Milo, a friend of

M., Miltiades, a general, who commanded the battle of Marathon,

M., Minerva, a Roman goddess, ded over wisdom and

-ātus sum, v. tr., I am morte, or alicui, I, to threaten anyone

j. (comp. of *parvus*; 57, 4), less; as a noun, without *natu*), *deo minor*, half the

M., Minucius; (1) *Quintus Rufus*, master of the dictator *Quintus*, in 217 B.C., the year of the *Trasimene*. He was B.C. (2) *Quintus*, 197 B.C., in the third banishment from Car-

ūi, *minūtum*, v.

v. of *parum* (which *inimice*; *si* or *sin* 6); with *adjs.* = not; 3, not acceptable

j., wonderful.

is sum, v. tr. dep.,

a, adj., wonderful,

um, adj., wretched,

us sum, v. intr., 146), feel pity for.

ere, no perf., no imperative, p. 146), feel

tit, *itum est*, v. es, it excites pity; *ity* you (p. 165).

e, F., pity, commiseration, *over-*

misér-or, *-āri*, *-ātus sum*, v. tr. dep. (with acc., p. 146), express pity for.

mit-is, *-ē*, adj., mild.

mitto, *mittere*, *mihi*, *missum*, v. tr., send.

mōbill-as, *-ātis*, F., activity, speed.

mōbil-is, *-ē*, adj., easily moved.

mōder-or, *-āri*, *-ātus sum*, v. tr. and intr., manage, regulate.

mōdesti-a, *-ae*, F., modesty, self-control.

mōdi-us, *-i*, M., a modius; a Roman dry measure nearly equal to the English peck.

mōdo, adv., only, merely, at all; *modo*...*modo*, now...now, at one moment...at another; *non modo*...sed etiam, not only...but also; with the subjunctive, *modo*=*dummodo*, if only, provided (p. 194, 3).

mōdō; see *modus*.

mōd-us, *-i*, M., a measure, amount, manner, method; *modo fluminis*, like a river; *nullo modo*, by no means; *modo oratoris*, in the capacity of an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

moen-i-a, *-ium*, pl. N., walls of a city, fortifications.

mōlestē, adv., with trouble, with annoyance; *res multas moleste ferre*, to be annoyed at many things.

mōlest-us, *-ā*, *-um*, adj., troublesome, annoying.

Moloss-i, *-ōrum*, pl. M., the Molossi, a tribe of Epirus, in North-Western Greece.

moll-is, *-ē*, adj., smooth.

mōl-o, *-ēre*, *-ūi*, *-itum*, v. tr., grind.

Mōn-a, *-ae*, F., Mona, the Isle of Man. *Anglesey* was also called Mona, but its position does not answer Caesar's description (c. v, 13).

mōn-ō, *-ēre*, *-ūi*, *-itum*, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.

mon-s, *-tis*, M., mountain; *summus mons*, the top of the mountain (p. 63, note).

monstr-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, v. tr., point out, show.

mōnūment-um, *-i*, N., monument, tomb.

mōr-a, *-ae*, F., delay.

mōr-a, *-ae*, F., a mora, or division of the Spartan army, consisting of 600 foot and 100 horse in Xenophon's time.

morb-us, *-i*, M., sickness, disease.

mordēo, *mordēre*, *mōmordi*, *morsum*, v. tr., bite, hurt.

mōri-or, *mōri*, *mortūus sum*, v. intr. dep., die.

Mōrin-i, *-ōrum*, pl. M., the Morini, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the north-eastern coast in the neighborhood of *Calais*. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bononia* (now *Boulogne*).

mōr-or, *-āri*, *-ātus sum*, v. intr. and tr. dep., delay.

mōr-s, *-tis*, F., death.

mos, *mōris*, M., custom, usage; pl., *mores*, customs, character, manners; *gestus est ei mos*, his wish was complied with (N. T. 7); *more suo*, according to his custom (c. iv, 19).

Mōs-a, *-ae*, F., the Mosa (now *Meuse*), a river of Gallia Belgica (described c. iv, 10).

mō-tus, *-tūs*, M., motion, evolution; *Galliae motus*, an uprising in Gaul (c. v, 5).

mōvēo, *mōvēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, v. tr., move, set in motion; *arma movere*, to take up arms; *bellum movere*, to undertake a war; *castra movere*, to break up camp.

mox, adv., presently, soon; then, afterwards.

mūl-a, *-ae*, F., a she-mule (p. 6, 5).

mūlct-a, *-ae*, F. (also written *multa*, *-ae*), fine, penalty.

mūlct-ō, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, v. tr., fine, punish.

mūl-er, *-ēris*, F., woman.

multitud-o, *-inis*, F., crowd, multitude.

mult-o, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, v. tr., fine, punish (same as *mūlcto*).

multo, adv. (used before comparatives), adv., much, by much, greatly; *multo melior*, much better (comp., plus; sup., plurimum).

multum, adv. (not used before comparative, otherwise same as *multo*); *multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur*, he was often employed in private suits (N. T. 1); *multum sunt in venationibus*, they are greatly addicted to hunting (c. iv, 1).

mult-us, *-ā*, *-um*, adj., much, many; comp., plus (p. 246); sup., plurimus (p. 77, 6).

mund-us, *-i*, M., universe, world.

mūnific-us, *-ā*, *-um*, adj., lavish (p. 57, 3).

muniment-um, *-i*, N., defence, fortification.

mūn-io, *-ire*, *-ivi*, *-itum*, v. tr., protect, defend; *iter munire*, to build a road.

mūniti-o, -ōnis, F., defence.
mūn-us, -eris, N., duty, service;
muneribus donatus, presented with
 gifts (N. T. 10).

mur-mur, -mūris, N., murmur.
mūr-us, -i, M., wall.
mūs, mūris, M., mouse.
musc-a, -ae, F., a fly.
mūsc-ā, -ae, F., or **mūsc-a, -ōrum, pl. N.,** music.

mūtil-us, -a, -um, adj., blunt,
 broken.

mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 change, exchange.

My-us, -ūntis (acc., Myunta), F.,
 Myus, a town of Caria in Asia Minor.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep.
nanciscor, having obtained.

nam, conj., for; stands first in a
 sentence and explains some previous
 statement.

namque, conj., for indeed, for truly.
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus (or
nactus) sum, v. tr. dep., obtain,
 get, find.

Nantuat-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Nan-
 tuates, a people of South-eastern Gaul, in
 the neighborhood of Geneva.

nar-ro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 tell.

na-scor, -sci, -tus sum, v. intr.
 dep., be born, be produced, be descended
 from.

nātāl-is, -ē, adj., natal, birth; **dies**
natalis, birthday.

nā-tio, -tīōnis, F., tribe, people,
 nation.

nā-to, -tāre, -tāvi, -tātum, v.
 intr., swim.

nā-tūr-a, -ae, F., nature, disposition,
 form; **naturā,** by nature, naturally;
loci haec erat natura, the following
 was the situation of the place (C. iv, 23);
natura triquetra, triangular in form
 (C. v, 13).

nā-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. dep.,
 used as an) adj., descended from, born
 from; **puer decem annos natus,** a
 boy ten years old (p. 69, 9); **amplis-**
simo genere natus, descended from
 a most illustrious family (C. iv, 12).

nā-tus, -tūs, M., used only in the
 abl., by birth; **maiores natu,** ances-
 tors; **minores natu,** descendants.

nau-frāgi am, -i, F., shipwreck;
facere nauragium, to be ship-
 wrecked (N. T. 7).

nau-ta, -tae, M., a sailor.

nau-ti-cus, -cā, -cum, adj., of or
 belonging to ships, naval.

nāv-āli-s, -ē, adj., naval; **pugna**
navalis, a sea-fight.

nāvīgāti-o, -ōnis, F., a sailing;
 navigation.

nāvigi-um, -i, N., a vessel, ship.

nāvig-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
 sail; **insuetus navigandi,** unaccus-
 tomed to sailing (C. v, 6).

nāv-is, -is, F., a ship; **navis longa,**
 a ship of war; **navis oneraria,** a
 ship of burden; **navem tenere in**
ancoris, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T.
 8); **in navem concurrere,** to charge
 a vessel (N. H. 10); **navem ascendere,**
 to embark (N. H. 7); **navem co-**
scendere, to embark (C. iv, 23 (else-
 where in Caesar we find **consendere**
in navem); navem constituere, to
 moor a ship (C. iv, 24).

Nax-us, -i, F., Naxos, an island in the
 Aegean Sea; the largest of the Cyclades.

nē, conj., (in final clauses) that not,
 lest (p. 181, 3); (after verbs -fearing)
 that, (p. 185, 3); (after verbs c. beseech-
 ing, ordering, commanding) not to (p.
 183, 4).

nē, adv., not; **ne...quidem, not...**
 even (the emphatic word between **ne** and
quidem, as **ne unus quidem**, not a
 single one); also used in negative impera-
 tive sentences, **ne hoc feceris**, don't
 do this (p. 287, 2).

-nē, interrog. enclitic particle. In
 single direct questions; **-nē** is not to be
 translated except by laying stress on the
 word to which it is joined (p. 28); in
 double questions, **-nē...an,** whether
 ... or (p. 287, 5).

nec: see neque.

necessārio, adv., necessarily, un-
 avoidably.

necessārī-us, -ā, -um, adj., un-
 avoidable, urgent, necessary.

necesse, indecl. adj. (used with est
+acc. and inf.), necessary, unavoidable,
 inevitable, needful.

necessit-as, -ātis, F., need, neces-
 sity.

neenē, adv., used in alternative in-
 direct questions; or not; **annon,** is used
 in direct (p. 177, 5).

nēc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 put to death, kill, destroy.

-i, F., shipwreck;
gium, to be ship-

..., a sailor.

..., cum, adj., of or
naval.

adj., naval; pugna
t.

nis, F., a sailing;

N., a vessel, ship.

avi, -atum, v. intr.,
vigandi, unaccus-
t., 6).

ship; navis longa,
avis oneraria, a
avem tenere in
ship at anchor (N. T.
currere, to charge
avem ascendere,
); navem co-
ark (c. iv, 23 (else-
condem condendere
n constituere, to

us, an island in the
st of the Cyclades.

(clauses) that not,
r verbs -e fearing)
r verbs c. beseech-
nding) not to (p.

...quidem, not...
d between ne and
s quidem, not a
n negative impera-
c feceris, don't

litic particle. In
; ne is not to be
ying stress on the
ined (p. 28); in
...an, whether

necessarily, un-

-um, adj., un-
sary.

(used with est
ry, unavoidable,

F., need, neces-

n alternative in-
annon, is used

-atum, v. tr.,
.

nēfari-us, -ā, -um, adj., wicked,
atrocious.

nēfas, indecl. N., a crime (against
divine law), impious deed; nefas est
dictu, it is wrong to say (p. 175).

neg-lēgo, -lēgere, -lexi, -lectum,
v. tr., slight, neglect, be indifferent to,
despise.

nēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr., say
no or not; deny, refuse; often = dicit
non: negat se esse aegrum, he
says that he is not sick.

nēgōti-or, -āri, -atus sum, v. dep.,
do, or carry on, business.

nēgōti-um, -i, N., business, enter-
prise; nihil negotii or nec quid-
quam negotii est, it is no trouble.

Nēmēt-es, -um, pl. M., the Nemetes,
a German tribe living west of the Rhine,
near the modern *Spires*.

nēm-o, -inis (only used in the sing.;
the dat. and abl. are supplied by nullus;
Caesar uses only nemo, neminem),
indef. pro., no one (p. 132, 2); non
nemo, somebody; nemo non, every-
body.

Nēōcl-es, -is and -i, M., Neocles,
father of Themistocles.

Nēpōs, Nēpōtis, M., Cornelius
Nepos, a Roman historian who lived about
44 B. C.

nēp-os, -ōtis, M., grandson, nephew;
pl., nepōtes, descendants.

nequāquam, adv., not at all, by no
means.

nēquē, or nec (In Caesar nec is not
found before vowels), conj., nor, and
not; neque...neque or nec...nec,
neither...nor; nec quisquam, no one
(c. iv, 20); neque quidquam, nothing
(c. iv, 20).

nequidquam, adv., in vain, to no
purpose.

ne-scio, -scire, -scivi (or scīi),
-scitum, v. tr., not to know.

neu; see neve.

neu-ter, -trā, -trum (gen. neu-
trius; dat. neutri, p. 26), adj., neither
(of two).

nēve, or neu, conj., nor; and...not;
neve...neve, or neu...neu, neither
...nor (p. 186, 6).

nex, nēcis, F., death; generally a
violent death.

nīg-er, -ra, -rum, adj., black, dark.

nihil, indecl. N., nothing, nothing at
all; nihil est quod, there is no reason
that; nihil habeo quod, I have no
reason that (p. 296, 5 (a)); non nihil,

something; nihil non, everything;
nihil agri, no land at all (c. iv, 1).

nihilō (abl. of degree of difference from
nihilum), by nothing.

nihilō minus, or nihilominus,
adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nihilō secius, adv. (literally, other-
wise, by nothing; secius, comp. of
secus, differently, otherwise); same
meaning as nihilominus.

nihil-um, -i, N., nothing; nihili
aestimare, to value at nothing.

nimio, adv., too much, exceedingly.

nimis, adv., too much, excessively.

nīmium, adv. (neut. of adj. nimius);
same meaning as nimis.

nīmī-us, -ā, -um, adj., too much,
excessive.

ningit, ningere, ninxit, no sup.,
v. intr., impers., it snows (p. 161, 1).

nisi, conj., if not, unless (p. 300, 1).

nitor, niti, nisus (or nixus) sum,
v. intr. dep., lean upon, strive, endeavor.

nix, nivis, F., snow.

nō-bil-is, -ē, adj., noble, noted,
famous.

nō-bilit-as, -ātis, F., nobility.

nō-cen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of noceo
used as an) adj., guilty; used as a noun,
a criminal.

nōcēo, nōcēre, nōcūi, nōcītum,
v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note),
hurt, harm, injure.

noctu, (an old abl. of obsolete noct-
us, -ūs; used as an) adv., by night, at
night.

nocturn-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to night, nocturnal.

nōd-us, -i, M., knot.

nōlo, nolle, nōlūi, no sup.; v. irreg.,
be unwilling, not to wish (p. 147).

nōm-en, -inis, N., name; nomen
Romanum, Roman people (N. H. 7;
see cognomen for praenomen,
nomen, agnomen).

nōminātīm, adv., by name; nom-
inatim evocare, to summon ex-
pressly (c. v, 4).

nōmīn-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr.,
name.

nōn, adv., not; usually preceding the
word with which it should be construed.
Before a negative word an indefinite
affirmative is produced as, non nemo,
somebody; non nunquam, sometimes;
non nihil, something; after a negative,
a general affirmative is formed, as nemo

non, everybody; **nunquam non**, every time; **nihil non**, everything.

Non-ae, -ārum, pl. F., the nones; the fifth day of each month in the year except March, May, July, October, in which it was the seventh. It was so called because it was the ninth (**nonus**) day from the **Ides (idus)**, which fell on the thirteenth, except in the four months before named, when it fell on the fifteenth.

nonāginta, num. adj., ninety.

nondum, adv., not yet.

nonne, adv., interrog. particle (p. 28, 3).

nonnihil, indecl. neuter pro., something; often used adverbially: to some extent, somewhat; **nonnihil temporis**, some time.

nonnull-us, -ā, -um, adj., some; generally in pl., **nonnull-i, -ae, -ā**, several.

nonnunquam, adv., sometimes.

nōn-us, -ā, -um, num. ord. adj., ninth.

nos, pl. of **ego** (p. 104, 1).

nosco, noscēre, nōvi, nōtum, v. tr., become acquainted with, learn; pf. **nōvi**, I know (p. 145).

nost-er, -rā, -rum, poss. adj. pro., our, ours, our own; pl., **nostri**, our troops, our men (milites understood).

nostrūm or **nostri**, gen. pl. of **ego** (p. 104, 2, note).

no-titi-a, -ae, F., fame, knowledge.

nōt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., mark, disregard.

nōt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **nosco** used as an) adj., known, well known.

nōvem, num. adj., nine.

nōv-i, -isse, v. defect., act, know (p. 264).

nōvīt-ās, -ātis, F., novelty, strangeness.

nōv-us, -ā, -um, adj., new, fresh, recent, strange (no comp.; sup. **novissimus**); **agmen novissimum**, the rear; **agmen primum**, the van; **res novae**, a change in affairs, a revolution.

nox, noctis, F., night, darkness; **prima nocte**, at nightfall; **media nocte**, at midnight; **multa de nocte**, late at night; **obducta nocte**, under cover of night (N. H. 5); **adversa nocte**, in the face of night (c. iv, 28).

nox-a, -ae, F., crime, offence.

nox-i-a, -ae, F., hurt, harm.

nox-i-us, -ā, -um, adj., hurtful, harmful.

nūb-es, -is, F., a cloud.

nūbo, nūbēre, nupsī, nuptum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), properly to veil oneself for a husband, hence said of a woman, to marry; a man was said **uxorem ducere** or **uxorem in matrimonium ducere**.

nūd-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., strip, expose.

nūd-us, -ā, -um, adj., bare, destitute of (with abl., p. 64, 4).

null-us, -ā, -um, adj. (for declension, p. 44, foot note), none, no one.

num, interrog. particle (p. 29).

Nūm-a, -ae, M., Numa, i.e., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūm-en, -inis, N., will, power, divinity.

nūmēr-us, -i, M., number.

Nūmid-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Numidians, a people inhabiting Numidia in Northern Africa, west of Carthage, corresponding to *Algeria*.

numm-us, -i, M., money; pro **nummo uti**, to use as money (c. v, 12).

nunquam, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nunt-i-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., announce, tell, narrate; **nuntiatur**, word is brought; **nuntiatum est**, word was brought.

nunt-i-us, -i, M., messenger, tidings.

nūper, adv., lately, recently.

nupti-ae, -ārum, pl. F., wedding, marriage [p. 239, 2, (4)].

nusquam, adv., nowhere, in no place.

nūt-us, -is, M., nod, command; **ad nutum**, at a nod or signal (c. iv, 23).

O.

Ō, interj., o! oh!

ob, prep. (with acc.), on account of, for; **ob eam rem**, for this reason; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, accordingly.

ob-duc-o, -ducēre, -dixi, -ductum, v. tr., cover over, cloud; **nocte obducta**, under cover of night (N. H. 5).

ob-ēd-i-o, -ēdire, -ēdixi, -ēditum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note); obey, listen to.

ob-ē-o, -ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum, v. tr., go towards; **mortem obire**, to meet

-um, adj., hurtful,

a cloud.

nupsī, nuptum, v. p. 278, foot note), oneself for a husband, woman, to marry; a *matrimonium ducere* or *matrimonium ducere*

āvi, ātum, v. tr.,

ā, adj., bare, destitute (p. 20).

ā, adj. (for declension, one, no one.

Numa, i.e., Numa king of Rome.

N., will, power,

, number.

um, pl. M., the Numidians, Numidia in Carthage, Carthage.

M., money; pro as money (c. v, 12).

never.

āvi, ātum, v. tr.,

ate; nuntiatum, nuntiatum est,

messenger, tidings.

, recently.

pl. F., wedding,

nowhere, in no

od, command; ad signal (c. iv, 23).

, on account of, for this reason; before, accordingly.

e, duxi, ducere, cloud; nocte of night (N. II. 5).

divi, editum, 278, foot note);

itum, v. tr., obire, to meet

death; officia obire, to attend to one's duties.

ob-icō, -icere, -icē, -iectum, v. tr., thrust or put in the way of, place in front of; alleui se obicere, to meet one (N. II. 5); visus obiecto, the sight meeting their gaze (N. II. 5).

ob-iectus, -iectā, -iectum, (perf. part. pass. of obicio used as an) adj., opposite.

ob-itus, -itūs, M., death.

oblique, adv., obliquely, in a slanting direction.

oblit-us, -ā, -um, perf. part. of deponent, obliviscor.

ob-liviscor, -livisci, -litus sum, v. dep. (with genitive, p. 145); forget.

ob-sēc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., beseech, supplicate.

ob-serv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., watch, observe, regard, obey.

ob-ses, -sidis, M. or F. a hostage; obsidium loco, as hostages (c. v, 5).

ob-sessi-o, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

ob-sidēo, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, v. tr., besiege, blockade.

ob-sidi-o, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

ob-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, -stitum, v. intr., stand against, resist, oppose, withstand.

ob-sōni-um, -i, N., victuals, food.

obstināte, adv., firmly, stubbornly.

ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti, no sup. (with dat., p. 278, 7); stand against, resist, oppose.

ob-tempē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), comply with, obey, conform to.

ob-test-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., implore, adjure.

ob-tinēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr., hold, possess, occupy.

ob-trectāti-o, -ōnis, F., detraction, disparagement.

ob-trect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., draw in different directions, oppose; inter se obrectare, to be opposed to each other (N. A. 1).

ob-viam, adv., in the way, towards; obviam ire, or obviam venire ei, to meet him (N. II. 4).

occāsi-o, -ōnis, F., an opportunity.

occās-us, -ūs, M., setting; occasus solis, sunset, west (c. iv, 23).

oc-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, v.

intr., fall, be killed; occidens sol, sunset, west (c. v, 13).

oc-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, v. tr., kill.

occult-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., cover, hide, conceal.

occult-us, -ā, -um, adj., hidden, concealed.

occūpāt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of occupo used as an) adj., busied with; occupatus in munitione castrorum, busied with the fortifying of the camp (c. v, 15).

occūpāti-o, -ōnis, F., being busied with, business affairs; occupationes reipublicae, state affairs (c. iv, 16); has tantularum rerum occupationes, business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

oc-cūp-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., take, seize.

oc-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursum, v. tr. (with dat.), run to meet, meet, oppose.

Ōcéan-us, -i, M., the ocean; the German Ocean (c. iv, 10).

Ōci-or, -us, adj. comparative without positive); sup. cissimus, swifter.

octāv-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., eighth.

octingent-i, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., eight hundred.

octo, card. num. adj., eight.

octodēcim, card. num. adj., eighteen.

octoginta, card. num. adj., eighty.

Ōcūl-us, -i, M., eye.

Ōd-i, -isse, v. tr. defect., hate (p. 145).

Ōdi-um, -i, N., hatred; odio (dat.) esse homini, to be hated by a man (p. 279, 2).

of-fendo, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum, v. tr., strike against, harm, hurt.

of-fēro, -ferre, obtūli, oblātum, v. tr., bring before, present, offer; se obtulit hostibus, he faced the enemy (c. iv, 12).

offici-um, -i, N., duty, allegiance; officium praestare, to do one's duty;

in officio esse, to be loyal (c. v, 3); in officio manere, to remain loyal (c. v, 4);

in officio continere, to keep him loyal, or in service (c. v, 7).

Ōlēo, -olere, -olui, no sup., v. tr., smack, smell of.

Ōlim, adv., at some time, hereafter, formerly.

Ōlymp-us, -i, M., Olympus, a mountain in Greece, the fabled home of the gods.

ō-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -misum, v. tr., let go, throw away, neglect; **ut omittam Philippum**, not to mention Philip (N. II. 2).

omnino, adv., in all, altogether, in general; after negatives, at all; **nihi omnino**, nothing at all; with numerals, in all; **decem omnino**, ten in all.

omn-is, -ē, adj., all, the whole; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man; **maritima omnīs**, wholly maritime, or on the sea (C. v. 14).

ōnērārī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of burden; **navis oneraria**, a transport (C. iv, 22, 25).

ōnēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., load.

ōn-us, -ēris, N., load, burden.

ōpēr-a, -ae, F., toil, aid; **dare operam**, to take pains (N. T. 7; C. v. 7); **meā operā**, by my aid.

ōpēr-īo, -ire, -ūi, -tum, v. tr., cover; **summas (amphoras) operit**, he covers the tops (of the jars) (N. II. 9).

ōpini-o, -ōnis, F., belief, notion; **opinio timoris**, the impression of fear; **praeter opinionem**, contrary to expectation; **celerius omni opinione**, sooner than any one expected; **opinio populi Romani**, the reputation of the Roman people (C. iv, 16); **ut fert opinio illorum**, according to their ideas (C. v, 13).

ōport-et, -ere, -ūit, v. intr. impers. (p. 162, 4); it is necessary, it behoves.

oppidān-us, -ā, -um, adj., of a town; pl., **oppidān-i, -ōrum**, town's people, inhabitants of a town.

oppid-um, -i, N., town.

op-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. tr., place against, oppose, withstand.

opportūnē, adv., favorably, suitably.

opportūnīt-as, -ātis, F., fitness, advantage.

opportūn-us, -ā, -um, adj., fit, suitable, advantageous.

op-prīmo, -prīmēre, -pressi, -pressum, v. tr., burden, crush, destroy.

op-pugnāti-o, -ōnis, F., assault, attack.

op-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., storm, attack.

(ops), nom. wanting; gen., **ōpis** (p. 240, (1), F., might, power, help; pl., **opes**, wealth, resources; **domesticæ opes**, his own resources (N. II. 10).

optime: see **bēne**.

optīmus: see **bonus**.

ōp-us, -ēris, N., work, labor, **magno opere** or **magnopere**, greatly; **quanto opere**, how greatly; **tanto opere** or **tantopere**, so much, so greatly; **egregie et natura et opere munitus**, splendidly fortified by both its natural position and its defences (C. v, 9).

ōpus, indecl. neut., found only in the expression **opus est, erat, etc.**, there is or was, etc., need, it is or was necessary (p. 283, 11).

ōra, -ae, F., coast; **ora maritima**, sea coast (C. iv, 20).

ōrāti-o, -ōnis, F., a speech; **orationem percipere**, to hear a speech (C. v, 1).

ōrāt-or, -ōris, M., speaker; **modo oratoris**, as an ambassador (C. iv, 27).

orb-is, -is, M., a circle; **orbis terrarum**, the circle of lands, i.e., around the Mediterranean, the whole world to the early Romans; **orbe facto**, forming a circle; corresponding to our forming square to resist an attack (C. iv, 37).

orb-us, -ā, -um, adj., bereft, deprived of.

ordior, ordiri, orsus sum, v. intr. dep., begin; **ab initio ordiendum**, we must begin with the beginning of his life (N. T. 1).

ord-o, -inis, M., an arrangement; rank, line; **ordines servare**, to keep the ranks (C. iv, 26).

ōrest-es, -ae or -is, M., Orestes, son of Agamemnon, who avenged his father's death by killing his mother Clytemnestra.

Orgētōr-ix, -igis, M., Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.

ōrien-s, -tis, (pres. part. of orior used as an) adj., rising; **soloriens**, the rising sun, hence, the east (C. v, 13).

ōr-ior, -iri, -tus sum, v. intr. dep., rise, spring from; **ortā luce**, at day-break (C. v, 8); **quibus orti ex civitatibus**, and sprung from these states (C. v, 12).

ornāment-um, -i, N., ornament.

ornāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., equipped, adorned, ornamented.

ornāt-us, -ūs, M., ornament.

orn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., adorn; **divitiis ornare**, to enrich (N. T. 2); **elephantus ornatus**, an elephant fully equipped (N. II. 3).

ōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., pray

e bonus.

N., work, labor, mag-
 magnopere, greatly;
 e, how greatly; tanto
 atopere, so much, so
 gie et natura et
 us, splendidly fortified
 tural position and its

neut., found only in the
 est, erat, etc., there
 eed, it is or was neces-

coast; ora maritima,

s, F., a speech; ora-
 ere, to hear a speech

s, M., speaker; modo
 ambassador (c. iv, 27).

a circle; orbis terra-
 lands, i.e., around the
 e whole world to the
 be facto, forming a
 ding to our forming
 attack (c. iv, 37).

um, adj., heret, de-

rsus sum, v. intr.
 initio ordiendum,
 the beginning of his

M., an arrangement;
 e servare, to keep

or -is, M., Orestes,
 on, who avenged his
 killing his mother

ris, M., Orgetorix, a

pres. part. of orior
 ing; sol oriens, the
 the east (c. v, 13).

s sum, v. intr. dep.,
 orta luce, at day-
 bus orti ex civi-
 bus from these states

-i, N., ornament.

um, adj., equipped,
 ed.

i, ornament.

vi, -atum, v. tr.,
 ornare, to enrich
 tus ornatus, an
 ed (N. H. 3).

-atum, v. tr., pray

for, beseech; magnopere orant, they
 earnestly ask for (c. iv, 11).

os, oris, N., mouth, face.

os, ossis, N., bone.

os-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, -ten-
 sum (or tum), v. tr., show, display,
 declare.

otios-us, -a, -um, adj., at leisure.

oti-um, -i, N., leisure, quiet.

ov-is, -is, F., a sheep.

ov-um, -i, N., egg.

P.

P=Publius, a Roman praenomen.

pabulati-o, -onis, F., foraging,
 getting fodder.

pabulāt-or, -oris, M., a forager.

pabul-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. dep.,
 forage, seek forage.

pabul-um, -i, N., fodder, forage.

pacā-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. pass.
 of paco used as an) adj., peaceful, quiet.

pac-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 subdue, pacify.

pac-tum, -ti, N., agreement, bargain.

Pād-us, -i, M., the Padus (now Po),
 the chief river of Italy.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

pāg-us, -i, M., district, canton; the
 word still exists in the French pays, as
 Pays de Calais.

pālam, adv., openly, publicly; pal-
 am facere, to make it plain (N. H. 11).

pallid-us, -ā, -um, adj., pale.

palma-a, -ae, F., palm (of the hand),
 hand.

pāl-ūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pālus, -i, M., stake.

Pamphylī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
 belonging to Pamphylia, a country of
 southern Asia Minor.

pando, pandere, pandi, pan-
 sum, v. tr., stretch, spread out.

pā-nis, -nis, F., bread.

pār, pāris, adj., equal; par est, it
 is fit, it is proper; par proelium, a
 drawn battle (N. H. 3); pari spatio, of
 the same extent (c. v, 13).

pārā-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. pass.
 of paro used as an) adj., prepared, ready.

parcē, adv., sparingly.

parc-o, -ēre, -pēperci (or parsi),
 parci-tum (or parsum), v. intr. (with
 dat., p. 105, 9), spare.

parc-us, -ā, -um, adj., sparing,
 thrifty, frugal.

pāren-s, -tis, M. or F., a parent.

pāren-s, -tis, (pres. part. of pareo
 used as an) adj., obedient.

pār-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. intr.
 (with dat., p. 105, 9), obey.

pār-io, -ēre, -pēperi, partum or
 pāritum, v. tr., bring forth, produce,
 obtain.

pār-ies, -ētis, M., a partition wall of
 a house.

pār-iter, adv., equally, evenly.

pār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 prepare, get ready, equip, procure.

pār-s, -tis, F., part, district, region;
 maximam partem, for the most
 part (c. iv, 1); unā ex parte, on one
 side (c. iv, 3); per omnes partes, in
 every direction (c. iv, 33); parte qua-
 dam ex Rheno recepta, after re-
 ceiving a certain tributary from the
 Rhine (c. iv, 10); pars... pars, some...
 others (c. iv, 27).

partim, adv., partly; partim...
 partim, partly... partly (c. v, 6).

part-ior, -iri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep.,
 divide.

pār-um, adv. (p. 77), too little, little;
 (comp., minus; sup., minime).

parvū-us, -ā, -um, adj., very little
 young; ab parvulo, from boyhood.

parv-us, -ā, -um, adj., small, trifling;
 (comp., minor; sup., minimus).

pass-er, -ēris, M., a sparrow.

passim, adv., in every direction.

pass-us, -us, M., a step, paco. As a
 measure of distance two paces, reckoned
 from the heel to the same heel, like our
 two military steps, or = five Roman pedes
 (see pes), about 4 ft. 10½ in. English
 measure; mille passus = 1616 yards,
 or 144 yards short of the English mile.

past-or, -oris, M., shepherd.

pātē-fācio, -fācere, -fēcī, -fac-
 tum, v. tr., open; pass., patefio, fieri,
 factus sum.

pāten-s, -tis, adj., open.

pāt-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v. intr.,
 be open, stand open, extend.

pāt-er, -ris, M., father; pl. patres,
 fathers, senate; pater familias or
 familiae, father of a family.

pāt-ienter, adv., patiently.

pāt-ientia, -ae, F., endurance, for-
 bearing.

pāt-ior, -pāti, -passus sum, v. tr.
 dep., allow, suffer, bear; longius bar-

baros progredi non pati, to prevent the barbarians from advancing any farther (N. T. 3).

pātrī-a, -ae, F., fatherland, native land; **patria pellere**, to banish (N. A. 1).

pātrīcī-us, -ā, -um, adj., patrician, noble.

pātrī-us, -ā, -um, adj., paternal.

paucit-as, -ātis, F., fewness, smallness.

pauc-us, -ā, -um, adj., some, few (generally in pl.).

paulātim, adv., gradually.

paulisper, adv., for a short time.

paulo, adv. (abl. of **paulus**), by a little, just a little.

paulūlum, adv., a little, gradually.

paulum, adv., a little.

paul-us, -ā, -um, adj., little.

Paulus: see **Aemilius**.

pau-per, -pēris, adj., poor (comp. **pauperior**, sup. **pauperrimus**).

paupert-as, -ātis, F., poverty.

Pausānī-as, -ae, M., Pausanias, a Spartan general who commanded the Greeks at Plataeae, 479 B.C.

pāv-or, -ōris, M., fear.

pax, pācis, F., peace; **pace tuā**, with your permission; **pace uti**, to remain quiet.

pecco-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., do wrong, sin.

pect-us, -ōris, N., breast.

pēcūnī-a, -ae, F., money, wealth.

pēc-us, -ōris, N., cattle (collectively).

pēc-us, -ūdis, P., cattle (singly).

pēd-es, -ītis, M., a foot-soldier; pl., **pedites**, infantry.

pēdest-er, -ris, -re, adj., on foot, on land; **copiae pedestres**, land forces; **copiae navales**, naval forces.

pēditāt-us, -ūs, M., infantry (collectively).

pēi-or, -us, adj. (comp. of **malus**; sup., **pessimus**), worse.

pell-is, -is, F., skin, hide; **pellibus vestiri**, to clothe themselves with skins (C. V. 14).

pello, pellere, pēpūli, pulsum, v. tr., expel, drive out; **patria pellere**, to exile (N. A. 1).

Pēlōponnēs-us, -i, F., the Peloponnesus (now the *Morea*), the part of Greece south of the Isthmus of Corinth.

pēnāt-ēs, -ium, pl. M., the Penates, or household gods, presiding over the house and all that it contained.

pendeo, pendere, pēpendi, no sup., v. intr., hang, be suspended.

pendo, pendere, pēpendi, pen-sum, v. tr., weigh out (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal, hence), pay.

pēnes, prep. (with acc.), in the power of, in the possession of.

pēnitus, adv., within, entirely, completely.

per, prep. (with acc.), through, by means of, by; in composition, through, thoroughly, very.

pēr-āgo, -āgere, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., accomplish, bring to an end; **conventus peragere**, to hold assizes (C. V. 2).

per-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, v. tr., take in, learn, perceive; **percipere orationem**, to hear a speech (C. V. 1).

per-contātī-o, -ōnis, F., enquiry.

per-curro, -currere, -curri (or -cūcurri), -cursum, v. intr., run through, run along.

per-disco, -discere, -dīdici, no sup., learn by heart.

per-dūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., complete, bring to a destination; **naves perduxit**, he brought the ships to their destination (C. V. 23).

pēr-ēo, -ire, -īvi (or -īi), -ītum, v. intr., perish, die.

pēr-ēquit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., ride, ride through.

pēr-exigū-us, -ā, -um, adj., very small.

per-fācīl-is, -ē, adj., very easy.

per-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, v. tr., carry, bring, report; endure; **perlatum est**, word was brought; **fama perlata est**, the report was spread (N. T. 2); **poenam perferre**, to endure a penalty (N. A. 1); **consilio perlato**, after their plan was reported (C. IV. 21).

per-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., execute, accomplish, finish, complete.

perfidī-a, -ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.

per-fūg-a, -ae, M., a deserter, run-away.

per-fugio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fūgitum, v. tr., flee, escape from, desert.

per-fūgī-um, -ī, N., refuge.

a, pl. M., the Penates,
presiding over the
house and the
fire contained.

tere, pependi, no
be suspended.

re, pependi, pen-
out (in early times
made by weighing out

th acc.), in the power
of.

within, entirely, com-

acc.), through, by
composition, through,

e, egi, actum, v.
ing to an end; con-
e, to hold assizes

ere, cepi, cep-
in, learn, perceive;
onem, to hear a

onis, F., enquiry.
rere, curri (or
um, v. intr., run

ere, didici, no

ere, duxi, duc-
te, bring to a des-
ruxit, he brought
ination (c. v, 23).

(or -ii), -itum, v.

, -avi, -atum, v.

, -um, adj., very

adj., very easy.

-tuli, -latum, v.

ort; endure; per-
brought; fama
report was spread
perferre, to en-
p; consilio per-
dan was reported

-feci, -fectum,
plish, finish, com-

F., faithlessness,

, a deserter, run-

e, fugi, fugi-

e from, desert.

, refuge.

per-fungor, -fungi, -functus
sum, v. intr. (with abl. p. 283, 10, dis-
charge fully, perform.

Pergamēn-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to Pergamus, a city of Mysia.

pergo, pergere, perrexī, per-
rectum, v. intr., go on, advance.

Péricl-ēs, -is, M., Pericles, an
Athenian statesman.

périculōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., dan-
gerous.

péricul-um, -i, N., danger; facere
periculum, to run the risk (c. iv, 21).

périt-us, -ā, -um, adj., with gen.,
acquainted with; rei militaris perit-
tus, skilled in military affairs.

per-lēgo, -lēgere, -lēgi, -lectum,
v. tr., read through.

per-lūo, -lūere, -lūi, -lūtum
wash thoroughly, bathe.

per-magn-us, -ā, -um, adj., very
great.

per-māneo, -mānere, -mānsi,
-mansum, v. intr., stay, remain, con-
tinue; in eā sententiā permanere,
to adhere to that policy (c. iv, 21).

per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. intr., entrust; fortunas eius
fidel permittere, to entrust their
fortunes to his protection (c. v, 8).

per-mōveo, -mōvere, -mōvi,
-mōtum, v. tr., rouse, disturb, alarm,
induce.

per-mulceo, -mulcere, -mulsi,
-mulsum, v. tr., calm thoroughly.

per-nici-es, -ēi, F., ruin, destruction.

per-pauc-i, -ae, -ā, adj. pl., very few.

per-petior, -peti, -pessus sum,
v. tr. dep., bear, endure.

per-petuo, adv., continually, con-
stantly.

per-petū-us, -ā, -um, adj., con-
stant, unbroken; in perpetuum, for
ever (c. iv, 34).

per-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi,
-ruptum, v. tr., break through.

Pers-ae, -arum, pl. M., the Persians.

per-saepe, adv., very often.

per-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi,
-scriptum, v. tr., write a report in full,
give a full account of.

per-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus
sum, v. tr. dep., follow up, pursue,
avenge.

Pers-ēs, -ae, M., a Persian.

per-sēvēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., persist in, persevere.

Persic-us, -a, -um, adj., Persian.

Pers-is, -idis, F., Persia.

per-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -sō-
lūtum, v. tr., pay in full.

per-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-
tum, v. tr., see, observe, reconnoitre;
coram perspicit, he sees in person
(c. v, 11).

per-suādēo, -suādere, -suāsi,
-suāsūm, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278,
foot note); persuade, convince, induce;
mihi persuadetur, I am persuaded
(p. 164, 1).

per-terr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr.,
greatly alarm, frighten, terrify.

per-tināci-a, -ae, F., obstinacy.

per-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, no sup.,
v. intr., tend, extend; ad irridendum
eum pertinere, to tend to ridicule
him (N. H. 11); eodem illo pertinere,
to have that same object (c. iv, 11); hoc
pertinet, this side extends (c. v, 13).

per-turbātio, -onis, F., confusion.

per-turb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., disturb greatly, agitate.

per-venio, -venire, -veni, -ven-
tum, v. intr., reach, arrive at.

per-verto, -vertēre, -verti, -ver-
sum, v. tr., overthrow.

pes, pēdis, M., foot; pedem re-
ferre, to retreat (c. iv, 25); as a measure
of length = 11.64 in.; 6 Roman pedes =
passus. (See passus.)

pest-is, -is, F., destruction, pest.

pēto, pētēre, pētivi, pētītum,
v. tr., make for, aim at, attack, try to
reach; ask, seek.

phalan-x, -gis, F., a band of soldiers
in solid column.

Phalēric-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to Phalerum, the oldest harbor
of Athens, connected with the city by
long walls.

Philipp-us, -i, M., Philip, called
Philip V, King of Macedon. He reigned
220 B.C. to 179 B.C. In 215 B.C. he formed
an alliance with Hannibal, but the Romans
did not prosecute the war against him till
200 B.C., i.e., two years after the battle of
Zama. When they had conquered Car-
thage, they began a war with Philip, which
lasted from 200 B.C. to 197 B.C., when
he was defeated at Cynoscephalae by
Flaminius.

philōsophi-a, -ae, F., philosophy.

philōsophi-us, -i, M., philosopher.

piēt-as, -ātis, F., duty to the gods,
to one's country, or to one's parents;
hence, piety, patriotism or filial affection.

piget, pigère, piguit, pigitum est, v. tr. impers. (p. 281, 13), it vexes, troubles; **me huius stultitiae piget**, I am vexed at this man's folly.

pil-um, -i, N., pike, javelin.

pingu-is, -ë, adj., fat.

pinn-a, -ae, F., feather.

Pirae-us, -i, M., the Piraeus (now *Porto Dracone*, or *Porto Leone*), the port of Athens, about five miles from the city, with which it was connected by the "Long Walls."

Pirust-ae, -arum, M. pl., the Pirustae, a tribe of Macedonia, on the southern border of Illyricum, in what is now the modern *Herzegovina*.

Pis-o, -onis, M., Piso, an Aquitanian noble (c. v, 12).

pisc-is, -is, F., fish.

pix, picis, F., pitch.

plac-ëo, -ëre, -ui, -itum, v. intr., please; often used impers., **placet mihi**, I am pleased, I vote yea; **non mihi placet**, I vote nay; **placebat**, supply eis, they decided (N. T. 3).

placidë, adv., quietly, calmly.

plac-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., appease.

plag-a, -ae, F., region, district; pl. **plagae**, a net.

planë, adv., clearly, entirely.

planiti ës, -ei, F., plain, level ground.

plan-us, -a, -um, adj., flat, level.

Platae-ae, -arum, pl. F., Plataeae (now *Palaeo Castro*), a city of Boeotia, near which the Greeks defeated the Persians in 479 B.C.

Plat-o, -o tis, M., one of the greatest of Greek philosophers (B.C. 429 to B.C. 347).

plëbi-scit-um, -i, N., a decree of the people; **scisco**, approve.

plebs, plëbis (plëbëi or plëbi), F., the common people, the commons.

plënë, adv., fully, completely.

plën-us, -a, -um, adj., full (with genitive, p. 281, 9).

plërique, plëraëque, plëràque, pl. adj., most, several; **interiores plërique**, most of the inland people (c. v, 14).

plërumque, adv., mostly, generally, usually.

plërusque, plëràque, plërum-que, adj., most; generally **plërique**.

plumb-um, -i, N., lead; **album plumbum**, tin (c. v, 12).

plürës : see **multus** (p. 57, 4).

plürim-um, adv. (superl. of **mult-um**, p. 77, 6); **longe plurimum valet**, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 3).

plürim-us, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **multus** (p. 57, 4).

plus, adj., comp. of **multus** (p. 57, 4).

pöcül-um, -i, N., drinking cup.

poen-a, -ae, F., compensation, punishment, penalty; **poenas dare, poenas pendëre, poenas persolvere**, to pay the penalty, to be punished; **poenas sumëre**, to exact a penalty, to punish; **poenam perferre**, to endure the penalty (N. A. 1).

Poen-i, -orum, pl. M., the Poeni or Carthaginians.

poenit-et, -ëre, -uit, no sup., v. tr. impers., it repents; **me facti poenitet**, I repent of the deed (p. 165, 1).

pöet-a, -ae, M., poet.

pollic-ëor, -ëri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., promise (p. 110).

Pölybi-us, -i, M., Polybius, a Greek historian who lived 220 B.C. to 122 B.C.

Pompëi-us, -i, M., Pompey; **Cnëius Pompëus Magnus**, a Roman general, born 106 B.C., consul 70 B.C., 55 and 52, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 48 B.C., and afterwards assassinated in Egypt.

pöm-um, -i, N., an apple.

pond-us, -ëris, N., weight.

pöno, pönëre, pösui, pösitum, v. tr., place, put, lay down; **castra ponere**, to pitch a camp.

pon-s, pontis, M., a bridge; **pon-tem facere**, to build a bridge (N. T. 5); **pontem dissolvere** (N. T. 5) or **pontem rescindere** (c. iv, 19), to destroy a bridge.

ponti-fex, -ficis, M., high priest, pontiff.

Pont-us, -i, M., Pontus (on the Euxine or *Black Sea*) included Pontus Proper, Cappadocia and Bithynia.

pöpülät-i-o, -onis, F., devastation, ravaging.

pöpül-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr. dep., devastate, lay waste.

pöpül-us, -i, M., people; pl. **pop-uli, nations**.

port-a, -ae, F., gate, door.

port-o, -äre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., carry.

portori-um, -i, N., toll, tax, duty.

port-us, -üs, M., port, harbor.

dv. (superl. of *multus*).
longe plurimum
the most powerful

-um, adj., superl. of

o. of *multus* (p. 57, 4).

N., drinking cup.

, compensation, pun-

; *poenas dare*,

poenas persolvere, to be pun-

sumere, to exact a

h; *poenam per-*

the penalty (N. A. 1).

pl. M., the Poeni or

-ūt, no sup., v. tr.

; *me facti poeni-*

deed (p. 165, 1).

poet.

-itus sum, v. tr.

0).

I., Polybius, a Greek

220 B.C. to 122 B.C.

M., Pompey; Cnēius

a Roman general,

al 70 B.C., 55 and 52,

at Pharsalia, 48 B.C.,

assassinated in Egypt.

an apple.

N., weight.

pōsūi, pōsitum,

lay down; *castra*

camp.

M., a bridge; pon-

old a bridge (N. T. 5);

re (N. T. 5) or pon-

c. iv, 19), to destroy

S, M., high priest,

ontus (on the Euxine

led Pontus Proper,

ynia.

is, F., devastation,

ātus sum, v. tr.

aste.

people; pl., pop-

ate, door.

ri, -ātum, v. tr.,

, toll, tax, duty.

port, harbor.

posco, poscēre, pōposcī, no sup.,
v. tr., beg, demand, ask.

possessi-o, -ōnis, F., possession.

possid-ēo, -ēre, possēdi, posses-
sum, v. tr., hold, own.

possid-o, -ēre, possēdi, posses-
sum, v. tr., win, get possession of.

possum, posse, pōtūi, no sup.;
v. irreg. (p. 146), be able, can; multum
posse, to have great power; pluri-
mum posse, to have very great power.

post, adv., after, later; (often with the
abl. of measure) anno post, a year
afterwards; paucis diebus post, a
few days afterwards (p. 82, 3).

post, prep. (with acc.), after; post
tergum, in the rear; post paucos
annos, after a few years (p. 82, 3);
post hominum memoriam, within
the memory of man (N. T. 5).

postēā, adv., afterwards.

postēāquam, conj., after that, after.

postēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., the follow-
ing, next; (comp., posterior; sup.,
postremus); pl., poster-i, -ōrum,
descendants.

posthāc, adv., after this, hereafter,
henceforth.

post-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pō-
situm, v. tr., put after, esteem less.

postquam, adv., after that, after,
when (p. 208, 2).

postrēmo, adv., at last, finally.

postrēm-us, -ā, -um, adj. (see
posterus), last.

postridiē, adv., the next day; post-
ridie eius diei mane, early next
day (c. v, 10).

postulāt-um, -i, N., demand.

postul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
ask, demand, request (p. 276, foot note).

pōten-s, -tis, adj., powerful.

pōtēti-a, -ae, F., power, might, in-
fluence.

pōtest-as, -ātis, F., power, might,
opportunity.

pōt-ior, -iri, -itus sum, v. dep., get
possession of, become master of, acquire
(with abl. p. 283, 10, or with gen.).

pōtissimum, adv., superl., chiefly,
principally, especially.

pōtius, adv., rather, preferably; su-
perl. potissimum; no positive.

prae, prep. (with abl.), in comparison
with, on account of.

prae-ācūt-us, -ā, -um, adj., sharp-
ened at the end, pointed.

prae-b-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr.,
offer, show, furnish.

prae-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -ces-
sum, v. intr., go before, surpass.

prae-ceps, -cipitis, adj., head-
long, steep, precipitous; praecipites
hostes agere, to drive the enemy
headlong (c. v, 17).

praecep-tor, -tōris, M., teacher.

praecep-tum, -ti, N., teaching, ad-
vice, order, command.

prae-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cept-
um, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 3), order,
direct.

prae-cipit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
intr., rush headlong.

prae-cipūē, adv., especially, particu-
larly.

prae-cipū-us, -ā, -um, adj., especial.

prae-clār-us, -ā, -um, adj., dis-
tinguished.

prae-clūdo, -clūdere, -clūsi,
-clūsum, v. tr., close up.

prae-co, -cōnis, M., a herald, crier.

prae-curro, -currere, -cūcurri,
(or -curri), -cursum, v. intr., run
before, outstrip.

praed-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder.

prae-dico, -dicāre, -dicāvi, -di-
cātum, v. tr., proclaim, boast.

prae-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dic-
tum, v. tr., foretell.

praedit-us, -ā, -um, adj. (with abl.,
p. 64, 4), endowed with.

praed-o, -ōnis, M., a robber; mari-
timi praedones, sea robbers, pirates
(N. T. 2).

praed-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep.
tr., plunder, pillage, obtain booty.

praefect-us, -i, M., an officer, over-
seer.

prae-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum,
v. tr., put before, prefer.

prae-ficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum,
v. tr., put over, put in command of
(p. 278, 6).

prae-figo, -figere, -fixi, -fixum,
v. tr., fix or place in front of; sudibus
prae-fixis, by driving stakes in front
(c. v, 18).

prae-fixus: see praefigo.

praelium: see proellum.

- prae-mitto**, -mittēre, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send before, send forward.
- praemi-um**, -i, N., reward.
- praepar-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., prepare.
- prae-pōno**, -pōnere, -pōsi, -pōsitum, v. tr., set over, place in command of.
- prae-rupt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., steep, precipitous.
- prae-scribo**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr., order, direct, command.
- prae-script-um**, -i, M., order, instruction.
- praesen-s**, -tis, adj., at hand, present.
- praesenti-a**, -ae, F., presence; in **praesentia**, for the time being, for the present (N. T. 8); in **praesentiarum** (=in **praesentia rerum**), for the present (N. H. 6).
- praesertim**, adv., especially.
- praesidi-um**, -i, N., guard, defence, garrison; **praesidio navibus esse**, to guard the ships (C. v, 9).
- prae-sto**, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum, stand before, show; perform, make good a promise (N. T. 10); **praestare ceteros imperatores**, to surpass the other commanders (N. H. 1); **officium praestare**, to fulfil a duty (C. iv, 25).
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 6), be over, have command of; **summā imperii praeesse**, to hold the supreme command (N. T. 4); **tantis rebus praeesse**, to have charge of such important matters (N. A. 3); **negotio praeesse**, to have charge of the matter (C. v, 2).
- praeter**, prep. (with acc.), beyond, except, contrary to.
- praetēr-ā**, adv., besides.
- praetēr-ēo**, -ire, -ivi (or -ii), -itum, v. tr., pass by, go by.
- praetēri-tus**, -tā, -tum, adj., past; **tempus praeteritum**, past time.
- praeter-mitto**, -mittēre, -misi, -missum, v. tr., let pass, let slip.
- praeterquam**, adv., except, besides, beyond.
- praeter-vēhor**, -vēhi, -vectus sum, v. tr., be carried beyond, sail past, coast along.
- praetor**, -tōris, M., general, commander.
- praetōri-us**, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to the praetor or commander; **cohors praetoria**, the general's body guard; **porta praetoria**, the gate near the general's tent.
- praetūra**, -ae, F., the office of commander.
- prae-vidēo**, -vidēre, -vidi, -visum, v. tr., foresee; to take precautions against.
- prat-um**, -i, N., meadow.
- prāv-us**, -ā, -um, adj., crooked, ill-shaped (C. iv, 2).
- prēci**, **prēcem**, **prēcē** (no nom. or gen. sing.); pl. **preces**, **precum**, etc.; F., prayer, request (p. 240, (2)).
- prē-hendo**, -hendēre, -hendi, -hensum, v. tr., seize, grasp, snatch.
- prēmo**, **prēmēre**, **pressi**, **pressum**, v. tr., press, harass, crush.
- prendo**, **prendēre**, **prendi**, **prens-um**, v. tr.; see **prehendo**.
- prēti-um**, -i, N., price, value; **impensio pretio**, at an extravagant price (C. iv, 2).
- (prex, prēcis)**, F., supposed form; see **prēci**.
- pridiē**, adv., the day before.
- primo**, adv., at first.
- primum**, adv., firstly, in the first place; **ubi primum**, as soon as; **quum primum**, as soon as possible; **cum (quum) primum**, as soon as (p. 298, 2).
- prim-us**, -ā, -um, adj., sup. of the comp., **prior**, no positive (p. 59, 2); **prima luce**, at daybreak; **prima nocte**, at nightfall; **primum agmen**, the vanguard; in **primis**, especially.
- prin-ceps**, -cipis, M., chief man, chief, prince.
- principāt-us**, -ūs, M., chief authority, leadership.
- principi-um**, -i, N., beginning.
- prior**, **prius**, adj., comp. (no positive; sup. **primus**; p. 59, 2); former, previous.
- pristin-us**, -ā, -um, adj., old, former.
- prius**, adv., before, sooner, earlier; followed by **quam**, and often written with it as one word, **priusquam**, before, before that.
- priusquam**, conj., before, sooner than (p. 299, 8).
- privāt-im**, adv., privately, individually.
- privāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., private.
- priv-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., deprive.
- prō**, prep. (with abl.), in front of, before; for, in proportion to; **pro**

praetoria, the gate tent.

prae, F., the office of com-

videre, vidi, visum, to take precautions

, meadow.

im, adj., crooked, ill-

prae (no nom. or acc., precum, etc.; (p. 240, (2)).

hendere, hendi, seize, grasp, snatch.

pre, pressi, press-

crass, crush.

prehendere, prehendi, prehendo.

price, value; im-

an extravagant price

F., supposed form;

day before.

first.

firstly, in the first
um, as soon as;
as soon as possible;
imum, as soon as

m, adj., sup. of the
positive (p. 59, 2.)
daybreak; prima
primum agmen,
rimis, especially.

is, M., chief man,

s, M., chief author-

N., beginning.

, comp. (no positive;
p. 2); former, pre-

m, adj., old, former.
re, sooner, earlier;
and often written
priusquam, be-

j., before, sooner

privately, individu-

a, adj., private.

i, -atum, v. tr.,

(abl.), in front of,
portion to; pro

merito eius, as he deserved (c. v, 4);
pro tempore et pro re, suited to the
time and the conditions (c. v, 8); pro
sano, as a sane man (c. v, 7); pro
nummo, as money (c. v, 12); pro
sua virtute, in consideration of his
excellence.

probit-as, -atis, F., uprightness.

prob-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr.,
justify (something to another), approve of;
minus probatus, less acceptable, i.e.,
than he ought to be; hence, displeasing
(N. T. 1).

prob-us, -a, -um, adj., good.

pro-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cess-
um, v. intr., advance, succeed.

pro-cer-us, -a, -um, adj., tall, high.

pro-clam-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v.
tr., shout aloud.

pro-consul, -consulis, M., pro-
consul; one who having been consul has
the government of a province entrusted
to him.

procul, adv., afar, at a distance.

pro-cumbo, -cumbere, -cubui,
cubitum, v. intr., fall, sink down.

pro-curo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr.,
have charge of, attend to.

pro-curro, -currere, -cucurri (or
-curri), -cursum, v. intr., rush forward,
hasten forward.

pro-d-eco, -ire, -ivi (-i), itum, v.
intr., go forward, advance; in con-
tentionem populi prodire, to appear
before the assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

prodesse: see prorsum.

proditio, -onis, F., treachery, be-
traying.

prodit-or, -oris, M., traitor, betrayer.

pro-do, -dere, -didi, ditum, v.
tr., betray, surrender; memoriae
prodere, hand down to memory, hand
down by tradition (N. T. 10); memoria
proditum, handed down by tradition
(c. v, 12).

pro-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -duc-
tum, v. tr., lead forward, lead forth;
productus ad proelium, enticed to
battle (N. II. 5).

proell-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. intr.,
fight.

proell-um, -i, N., battle; pro-
ellum facere, to fight a battle (N. T. 9).

pro-fanus, -a, -um, adj., not
sacred, profane.

pro-fecti-o, -onis, F., a departure,
setting out.

profecto, adv., for a fact, indeed.

pro-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, v.
tr., carry forward, bring forth.

pro-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum,
v. tr., advance, effect, gain; satis pro-
fectum arbitratus, thinking that
enough had been gained (c. iv, 19).

pro-ficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus
sum, v. intr. dep., set out, depart.

pro-fit-eor, -fiteri, -fessus sum,
v. tr. dep., profess, declare.

pro-fig-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr.,
strike to the ground; vanquish, over-
throw.

pro-fluo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum
v. intr., flow forward.

pro-fugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugi-
tum, v. intr., flee forward, escape.

pro-fug-us, -i, M., deserter, exile.

pro-gnat-us, -a, -um, adj., sprung
from.

pro-grédior, -grédi, -gressus
sum, v. tr. dep., advance, go forward.

pro-hibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibi-
tum, v. tr., hold, restrain, prevent.

pro-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum, v.
tr., throw, throw away.

pro-inde, adv., henceforth, therefore.

pro-miss-us, -a, -um, adj., long,
flowing; capillo sunt promisso,
they have long hair (c. v, 14).

pro-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. tr., promise.

pro-moveo, -movere, -movi, -mo-
tum, v. tr., move forward.

prompt-us, -a, -um, adj., ready.

pro-mulgo, -are, -avi, -atum,
v. tr., announce, enact a law.

proné, adv., headlong, leaning for-
ward.

pro-nunti-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v.
tr., tell, announce, declare.

pro-pago, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr.,
extend.

pro-pago, -inis, F., offspring, race.
pro-patium, -i, N., an open space
in front of a temple or a house.

prope, adv., near, nearly, almost;
comp., propius; sup., proxime.

pro-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pul-
sum, v. tr., drive away, put to flight.

pro-pere, adv., quickly, speedily, in
haste.

propér-o, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr.
and intr., hurry, hasten.

- pröpinquät-as, -ätis, F.**, nearness, vicinity, relationship.
- pröpinqu-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. intr.** (with dative), come near, approach.
- pröpinqu-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, near, with dative (p. 277, 2); as a noun, **pröpinqu-us, -i, M.**, relation.
- pröpt-or, -us, adj.**, comparative of obsolete **propis**; sup. **proximus**; **nocte proxima**, last night.
- pröptus**: see **prope**, and **propior**.
- prö-pöno, -pönere, -pösü, -pösütum, v. tr.**, put forward, explain; **vexillum proponere**, to hoist the flag from the general's tent (**praetorium**) as a signal for beginning a battle.
- prö-prae-tor, -töris, M.**, the praetor, a magistrate who having administered the praetorship for one year at Rome, was sent the following year to a province as a governor.
- pröpri-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, one's own, particular, peculiar.
- propter**, prep. (with acc.), on account of, in consequence of.
- proptärä, adv.**, for this reason, therefore; **propterea quod**, because.
- prö-pugnacül-um, -i, N.**, defence, protection.
- prö-pugn-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, fight.
- prö-puls-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, drive off, ward off, repel.
- prör-a, -ae, F.**, prow.
- prö-sëquor, -sëqui, -sëcütus** (or **sëquütus**) **sum, v. tr.**, dep., follow after, follow, attend.
- prö-spec-tus, -tüs, M.**, view, sight.
- pröspër-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, fortunate.
- prö-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-tum, v. tr.**, look forward, take care.
- prö-sum, prö-d-esse, prö-fui, v. intr.** (p. 261), be of benefit to, benefit (with dative, p. 279, 9).
- prötinus, adv.**, at once, forthwith, immediately; **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17).
- prö-vëho, -vëhere, -vëxi, -vëctum, v. tr.**, carry forward; in pass., sail along, coast.
- prö-vidéo, -videre, -vidi, -visum, v. tr.**, foresee, take care.
- prö-vid-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, foreseeing.
- prövinci-a, -ae, F.**, province.
- prö-vöc-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, challenge, summon.
- proxime**: see **prope**.
- proximus**: see **propior**.
- pröden-s, -tis, adj.**, prudent, foreseeing.
- prudenti-a, -ae, F.**, foresight, shrewdness.
- Prüs-i-a, -ae, M.**, Prusias, king of Bithynia, in Asia Minor, who hospitably received Hannibal in his exile, but afterwards betrayed him.
- publicë, adv.**, in the name of the state, as a state; **publice putant**, they, as a state, consider (c. iv, 3).
- public-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, confiscate; **bona publicare**, to confiscate goods (N. II, 7).
- public-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, public, common; **res publica**, the commonwealth (p. 238); **publico consilio**, by a public plan.
- Publi-us, -i, M.**, Publius; see **Rufus**, **Scipio**.
- püd-et, -ère, -cüt** (or **-itum est**), v. imp., it causes shame (p. 165, 1).
- püd-or, -öris, M.**, shame.
- püell-a, -ae, F.**, girl.
- pü-er, -ëri, M.**, child, boy; **puer aianua**, the porter (N. II, 12).
- püer-il-is, -ë, adj.**, of a child or boy; **aetas puerilis**, the age of childhood or boyhood.
- püerü-lus, -li, M.**, a mere boy.
- pug-na, -nae, F.**, fight, combat.
- pug-no, -näre, -nävi, -nätum, v. intr.**, fight; **acriter pugnatum est**, a fierce battle was fought (c. iv, 26; p. 164, 2, note 2).
- pul-cher, -chrä, -chrum, adj.**, beautiful.
- pulv-is, -ëris, M.**, dust.
- pün-ic-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.**, punish.
- pupp-is, -is, F.**, stern of a vessel.
- purg-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, clear, make clear, free from blame; **sui purgandi causä**, for the purpose of clearing themselves (c. iv, 13).
- püt-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, v. tr.**, think, fancy, consider.
- Pydn-a, -ae, F.**, Pydna, a town of Macedonia, near the Theraic Gulf, where Aemilius Paulus defeated Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, 168 B.C.
- Pyläd-ës, -ae, M.**, Pylades, a Greek, friend of Orestes.
- Pyrënae-us, -ä, -um, adj.**, usually in the pl.; **Pyrenaei montes**, the Pyrenees.

prope.
see propior.
s, adj., prudent, fore-
-ae, F., foresight,

M., Prusias, king of
Minor, who hospitably
in his exile, but after-
n.

in the name of the
publice putant,
sider (c. iv, 3).

-āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
publicare, to con-
7).

-um, adj., public,
blica, the common-
publico consilio, by

Publius; see Rufus,

lit (or -itum est),
ame (p. 165, 1).

I., shame.

girl.

child, boy; puer a
v. h. 12).

j., of a child or boy;
the age of childhood

, a mere boy.

, fight, combat.

nāvi, -nātum, v. tr.,
pugnatum est,
ought (c. iv, 26; p.

-chrum, adj.,

dust.

i, -itum, v. tr.,

ern of a vessel.

ri, -ātum, v. tr.,
e from blame; sui
for the purpose of
iv, 13).

, -ātum, v. tr.,

Pydna, a town of
ermatic Gulf, where
ated Perseus, the
168 B.C.

Pylades, a Greek,

um, adj., usually
i montes, the

Pyrrh-us, -i, M., Pyrrhus, king of
Epirus, who invaded Italy, but was finally
defeated by the Romans and driven from
Italy, 275 B.C.

Pŷthi-a, -ae, F., the Pythia, or priest-
ess of Delphi. The Homeric name for
Delphi was Pytho.

Q.

Q. = Quintus (which see).

quā, nom. sing. fem. or neut. pl. nom.
or acc. of quis or qui (p. 129).

quā (abl. fem. of qui, supply viā or
parte) adv., where, as far as.

quācumque, adv., in whatever way
or direction, wherever.

quadrāgintā, num. card. adj., forty.

quadringēn-i, -ae, -a, distrib. num.
adj., four hundred each.

quadringēn-i, -ae, -ā, card. num.
adj., four hundred.

quaero, quaerere, quaesivī,
quaesitum, v. tr., seek, look for, ask,
enquire.

quaesti-o, -ōnis, F., enquiry, inves-
tigation.

quaes-tor, -tōris, M., quaestor; the
quaestors were officers who acted as
government treasurers, received tribute
and paid the soldiers.

quaest-us, -ūs, M., gain, profit.

quā-is, -ē, adj., of what sort or kind.

quam, conj., than (after comparatives,
p. 55, 5); with superlatives, with or with-
out possum = as possible; quam
primum, as soon as possible; quam
plurimi, as many as possible; quam
maximi, as large as possible; often
joined with prius, post, as prius-
quam, postquam.

quamdiu, adv., as long as.

quamobrem, adv., for which reason,
wherefore, why.

quamquam, conj., though, although,
however, and yet (p. 196, 5).

quamvis, adv., though, although
(p. 196, 5); quamvis pauci, no matter
how few (p. 303, 3).

quando, interrog. adv., when?; rel.
adv., when, whenever.

quanto (abl. of difference from
quantus), adv., by how much; quan-
to . . . tanto, as . . . so; the . . . the
(p. 195, 4).

quantum (acc. of quantus), adv.,
how much, how far, as far as.

quant-us, -ā, -um, adj., interrog. or
rel., how great, how much, how large, as
large as.

quantusvis, quantavis, quan-
tumvis, adj., however great.

quare, interrog. and rel. adv., where-
fore, why.

quar-tus, -ta, -tum, ord. num. adj.,
fourth.

quāsi, conj., as if.

quattŭor, card. num. adj., four.

quattŭordēcim, card. num. adj.,
fourteen.

-que, conj., and; always appended to
the word, which in construction belongs
to it; generally to the first word of the
clause or to the word it couples.

quemadmŭdum, adv., in which
way, how.

quērŭr, quērī, questus sum, v.
tr. dep., complain, lament.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pro., who,
which, what (p. 126); since he (p. 198, 4);
so that he (p. 188, 4); qui, an old abl.,
wherewith (N. A. 3).

quicquam: see quisquam (p. 132, 3).

quicumque, quaecumque,
quodcumque, indef. pro., whoever,
whatever (p. 126, 2).

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or
quiddam, indef. pro., a certain one;
pl., some, certain.

quidem, adv., indeed, at least; ne . . .
quidem, not . . . even; the emphatic
word is always placed between ne and
quidem.

qui-es, -ētis, F., rest, repose, quiet.

qui-libet, quae-libet, quod-libet,
indef. rel., any one (p. 132).

quin (old abl. qui, how and ne, not),
conj., that not, but that, without; after
words expressing doubt or suspicion,
that (p. 188, 6); after words of prevent-
ing, etc., translated by from with verbals
in -ing (p. 185, 2, note); quin etiam
(c. iv, 2), nay even.

qui-nam, quae-nam, quod-nam,
interrog. pro., who, pray? who, then?
(p. 129, 3, note).

quindēcim, card. num. adj., fifteen.

quingēn-i, -ae, -a, card. num. adj.,
five hundred.

quini, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., five
each, five a piece.

quingaginta, card. num. adj., fifty.

quinque, card. num. adj., five.

quint-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj.,
fifth.

Quint-us, -i, M., Quintus; see Atri-

us, Fabius, Flaminius, Labeo, Laberius, Sabinus.

quippe, adv., surely, certainly; quippe qui, since he (p. 198, 4, note).

quis, quae or qua, quid or quod, indef. pro., anyone, any (p. 129, 1); interrog., who?

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrog. pro., who, pray? (p. 129, 3, note).

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, indef. pro., some, some one (p. 132).

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, indef. pro., any one (p. 132); neque quisquam, no one (c. iv, 20); neque quicquam, and nothing (c. iv, 20).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pro., each, every, every one; with superlatives in sing., all: optimus quisque, all the best.

quisquis, quaequae or quaquae, quidquid, quicquid or quocquod, indef. rel. pro., whoever, whatever.

quisvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pro., any one you please, any.

quo, adv., (1) rel. and interrog., whither; (2), indef. rel. after si or ne, to any place, to any point, any where.

quo (abl. of qui), final conj., used with comparatives followed by subjunctive; in order that (p. 183, 5).

quoad, adv. (with indic. in Caesar), as long as, until, till; quoad subsidio confisiquites praecipites hostes egerunt, till the cavalry trusting in the reserves drove, as they did, the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

quod, conj., because, inasmuch as (with indicative or subjunctive, p. 297, 3); propterea quod, because; quod si, but if, if (p. 192, 1, note); the fact that (with the indicative, p. 293, 2).

quominus, conj., that not; often best translated by *from* after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc., with an English verbal noun in -ing (p. 185, 2).

quondam, adv., once, formerly, some day.

quoniam, conj., since, seeing that, because (p. 193).

quodque, adv. (following the emphatic word of a clause), also, too.

quot, indecl. adj., how many? often correlative of tot; tot...quot, as many as.

quotannis, adv., yearly, every year.

quotidianus, -a, -um, adj., daily, every day.

quotidie, adv., every day (see cotidie).

quoties, adv., how often?; often correlative of toties: toties...quoties, as often as.

quotiescumque, adv., how often soever, as often as.

quotus, -a, -um, adj., what number?; quota hora est?, what hour is it?

quum: see cum (p. 203).

R.

rād-ix, -icis, F., root; montis radices, the foot of a mountain.

rādo, rādēre, rāsi, rasum, v. tr., shave.

rā-mus, -mī, M., branch, bough.

rā-na, -nae, F., frog.

rāpīdīt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, quickness.

rāpīd-us, -ā, -um, adj., swift, quick.

rāpīn-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder, robbery.

rāpio, rāpēre, rāpūī, raptum, v. tr., snatch, seize, hurry off.

rār-us, -ā, -um, adj., few, scattered, in small parties.

rāti-o, -ōnis, F., reckoning, calculation, account; rationem inire, to form a plan (N. H. 10); ratio atque usus belli, the theory and practice of war—the systematic practice of war (c. iv, 1); equestris proeli ratio, the style of the cavalry battle (c. v, 16); ratio pontis, the plan of the bridge (c. iv, 17); rei militaris ratio, military science (c. iv, 23).

rāt-is, -is, F., raft.

rāt-us, perf. part. of dep. reor, which see.

Raurāc-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Rauraci, a people of the Upper Rhine (near the modern Basle).

re, red, an inseparable particle used in composition, again, back.

rēbelli-o, -ōnis, F., renewal of war, uprising; rebellione facta, by a renewal of the war (c. iv, 30).

rēbell-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., renew the war.

rē-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., go back, withdraw.

rēcēn-s, -tis, adj., fresh, late, recent.

rē-cept-us, -tūs, M., retreat; ex-

-ā, -um, adj., daily,

, every day (see co-

how often?; often cor-
toties...quoties,

ie, adv., how often

um, adj., what num-
a est?, what hour is

n (p. 203).

R.

F., root; montis
of a mountain.

āsī, rasum, v. tr.,

, branch, bough.

frog.

is, F., swiftness,

m, adj., swift, quick.

, booty, plunder,

rāpū, raptum, v.

try off.

adj., few, scattered,

reckoning, calcula-

tionem inire, to

10); ratio atque

ory and practice of

is proeli ratio,

ry battle (c. v, 16);

plan of the bridge

taris ratio, mili-

.

t. of dep. reor,

pl. M., the Rauraci,

er Rhine (near the

able particle used in

ck.

F., renewal of war,

facta, by a re-

30).

vi, -atum, v. tr.,

, -cessi, -cess-

withdraw.

fresh, late, recent.

M., retreat; ex-

peditus receptus, a convenient
retreat (c. iv, 33).

rē-cipio, -cipere, -cépi, -ceptum,
v. tr., take back, recover, win; in fidem

recipere, to take under one's protection
(N. T. 8); or to receive as a pledge of faith

(c. iv, 22); se recipere, to retreat (c. iv, 2);
se a fuga recipere, to recover from

the flight (c. iv, 27); in deditionem
recipere, to admit to a surrender.

rē-cit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
read aloud.

rē-clino, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
make to lean.

rē-cord-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr.,
recall to mind.

rectē, adv., rightly.

rect-us, -a, -um, adj., straight, right.

rē-cūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
refuse, decline, deny; often followed by

quin or quominus (p. 294, 6, 7).

rē-d-a, -ae, F., a waggon (with four
wheels).

rē-d-o, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, v. tr.,
give back, restore, render; ferociorem

reddere civitatem, to render the
state more warlike (N. T. 2).

rē-d-ō, -īre, -īvi (or -īi), -itum, v.
intr., go back, return; pecunia quae

ex metallis redibat, the money
which came in from the mines (N. T. 2).

rē-d-igo, -igēre, -ēgi, -actum, v.
tr., reduce, render; multo humili-

ores infirmioresque redegerunt,
they reduced them to a state of far less

importance and strength (c. iv, 3).

rē-d-imo, -imēre, -ēmi, -emptum,
v. tr., buy back, purchase.

rē-d-integr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. tr., renew, revive.

rē-d-it-us, -tūs, M., return.

rē-d-ūco, -dūcēre, -dūxi, -duc-
tum, v. tr., lead back.

rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, v.
tr., bring, carry back; gratias referre,

to return thanks; gratiam referre,
to requite, to repay (N. T. 8); ad suos

referre, to report to their people (c. iv,
9); pedem referre, to retreat (c. iv, 25).

rē-fert, -referre, -rētūlit, v. imper.,
it concerns, it is of importance (p. 166, 3).

rē-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum,
v. tr., repair, reſt.

rē-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgi, -fūgi-
tum, v. tr. and intr., flee back or away,

retreat, escape.

rēgīn-a, -ae, F., queen.

rēgī-o, -ōnis, F., district, country;

regio est maritima omnis, the
district is wholly maritime (c. v, 14).

rēgī-us, -ā, -um, adj., kingly, royal;
domus regia (or regia alone), palace;

classiarī regī, the marines of the
king (i.e., Xerxes; N. T. 3).

reg-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v.
tr. and intr., be king, reign, rule; Xerxe

regnante, in the reign of Xerxes (N.
T. 9).

reg-num, -nī, N., kingdom.

rēgo, -rēgēre, -rēxi, -rectum, v. tr.,
rule.

rē-grādior, -grādī, -gressus
sum, v. dep. intr., retreat, withdraw.

rēgū-a, -ae, F., rule, line of conduct.

rē-icīo, -icēre, -icēci, -iectum, v.
tr., hurl back, drive back, repulse; tem-

pestate reici, to be driven back by the
storm (c. v, 5).

rēligī-o, -ōnis, F., religion, religious
scruples; pl. religiones, rites of religion;

maiores religione, with greater
sanctity (N. T. 8); religionibus im-

pediri, to be hampered by religious
scruples (c. v, 6).

rēliqū-ae, -ārū, pl. F., remainder.

rē-linquo, -linquēre, -liqui, -lic-
tum, v. tr., leave, abandon, leave be-

hind; relinquebatur ut, the only
course left was that (c. v, 19).

rēliqū-us, -ā, -um, adj., remaining;
nihil reliqui est, there is nothing left;

in reliquum tempus, for all time to
come.

rē-mānēo, -mānēre, -mansī,
mansum, v. intr., remain, await.

rēm-ex, -igis, M., a rower.

rēm-ig-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
row.

rēmigr-o, -āre, no perf., no sup., v.
intr., depart, return.

rē-miniscor, -minisci, no perf., v.
dep. (with gen., p. 146, 7), remember,

recall.

rē-miss-us, -ā, -um, adj., relaxed;
remissioribus frigoribus, since the

cold is less intense (c. v, 12).

rē-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, v. tr., send back.

rē-mollesco, -mollescere, no perf.,
no sup., v. intr., become soft, become

weak.

rē-mōtus, -mōtā, -mōtum, adj.,
remote, far off.

rē-mōvéo, -mōvēre, -mōvi, -mō-
tum, v. tr., remove, dismiss, get rid of.

rē-mus, -mī, M., oar.

- Rēm-i, -ōrum**, pl. M., the Remi, a powerful people of Gaul, whose capital was Durocoriorum (now *Rheims*).
- Rēm-us, i, M.**, Remus, brother of Romulus.
- rē-nōv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., renew.
- rē-nuntī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., bring back word, report.
- rēor, rēri, rātus sum**, v. dep., think.
- rē-pello, pellere, pūli, -pulsum**, v. tr., drive back, repulse.
- rēpento**, adv., suddenly.
- rēpentinō**, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.
- rēpentin-us, -ā, -um**, adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.
- rēpēr-lo, -ire, -i (or reppēri), -tum**, v. tr., discover, find, ascertain.
- rē-pēto, -pētēre, -pētīvi (or pētī), -pētītum**, v. tr., seek again, demand.
- rēpo, rēpēre, repsi, reptum**, v. intr., creep.
- rē-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum**, v. tr., deposit; in *aerario* *reponere*, to deposit in the treasury (N. H. 7).
- rē-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., carry back.
- rē-prēhendo, -prēhendere, -prēhendi, -prēhensum**, v. tr., blame, rebuke.
- rē-pūdi-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., reject.
- rē-pug-no, -nāre, -nāvi, -nātum**, v. tr., oppose, resist.
- rēs, rei**, F., matter, affair (the meaning will depend on the context); *res militaris*, military science; *res novae*, a change in government, a revolution; *res publica*, the state, commonwealth, politics; *res divina*, a sacred rite (N. H. 2); *res frumentaria*, supply of corn (C. iv, 7); *his rebus*, on these terms (C. iv, 28).
- re-scindo, -scindere, -scidi, -scisum**, v. tr., cut down, destroy.
- re-scisco, -sciscere, -scivi (or scii), -scitum**, v. tr., learn.
- rēserv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., keep, save, preserve.
- rē-sisto, -sistere, -stiti**, no sup., v. intr., resist, oppose, withstand (with dative, p. 278, 3); *nullo resistente*, without opposition (N. H. 5); *in itinere resistere*, to halt on the march (C. v, 11).
- re-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-tum**, v. tr., look back, regard.
- re-spondēo, -spondere, -spondi, -spon-sum**, v. tr., reply, answer.
- re-spons-um, -i, N.**, answer, reply.
- rēs-publicā, rei-publicae**, F. (for declension, p. 238), state, commonwealth; *republicam capessere*, to take part in the administration of public affairs (N. T. 1).
- restat, restāre**, no perf., no sup., impers., it remains (p. 182, 4).
- re-stitūo, -stitūere, -stitui, -stitūtum**, v. tr., rebuild, restore.
- rēte, rētis, N.**, net.
- rē-tinēo, -tinere, -tīnui, -tentum**, v. tr., restrain, detain, keep back.
- rē-trāho, -trāhere, -traxi, -tractum**, v. tr., draw back, save, preserve.
- retro**, adv., back, backwards.
- rē-us, -i, M.**, a party to an action; hence, defendant, prisoner.
- rē-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum**, v. tr., turn back, return.
- rēvertor, reverti, reversussum**, v. intr., return.
- rē-vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., call back, recall.
- rex, regis, M.**, king. The term *reges* was applied to the two highest magistrates of Carthage by the Romans. They were also called *Suffetes*, a word connected with the Hebrew *Shophetim*, "judges." According to Nepos, they were elected annually. In Hannibal's day, they seem to have held no military command, so his election to the office would withdraw him from the army (N. H. 7).
- rhēd-a**, same as *reda* (which see).
- Rhēn-us, -i, M.**, the Rhine.
- Rhō-dān-us, -i, M.**, the Rhine.
- Rhōdī-i, -ōrum**, pl. M., the Rhodians.
- Rhōd-us, -i, F.**, Rhodes, an island off the S.W. coast of Asia Minor.
- ridēo, -ridere, -risi, -risum**, v. tr. and intr., laugh, laugh at.
- rip-a, -ae, F.**, a bank.
- ris-us, -ūs, M.**, laughter.
- riv-us, -i, M.**, brook.
- rōb-ur, -ōris, N.**, oak, strength.
- rōbust-us, -ā, -um**, adj., strong, robust.
- rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., ask.
- Rōm-a, -ae, F.**, Rome.
- Rōmān-us, -ā, -um**, adj., Roman.

picere, -spexi, -spec-
back, regard.

-spondere, -spondi,
F., reply, answer.

-i, N., answer, reply.

rei-publicae, F. (for
state, commonwealth:

capessere, to take
ministration of public

re, no perf., no sup.,
s (p. 182, 4).

itūdere, -stitūi, -sti-
build, restore.

-i, N., net.

re, -tinūi, -tentum,
tain, keep back.

here, -traxi, -trac-
back, save, preserve.

k, backwards.

party to an action ;
prisoner.

tēre, -verti, -ver-
back, return.

ri, reversussum,

-āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,

M., king. The term
to the two highest

nage by the Romans.
ed Suffetes, a word

Hebrew Shophetim,
ing to Nepos, they

y. In Hannibal's day,
eld no military com-

to the office would
he army (N. II. 7).

reda (which see).

the Rhine.

M., the Rhine.

pl., M., the Rhodians.

Rhodes, an island off

Minor.

isi, -risum, v. tr.

h at.

nk.

ghter.

k.

oak, strength.

um, adj., strong,

-ātum, v. tr., ask.

me.

m, adj., Roman.

Rōmān-i, -ōrum, M. pl., Romans.

Rōmūl-us, -i, M., Romulus, first
king of Rome, and founder of the city.

rōs-a, -ae, F., rose.

ros-trum, -tri, N., beak; the beak of
a vessel's prow, covered with bronze and
used as a ram; pl. **rostr-a, -ōrum,**
hustings.

rōt-a, -ae, F., wheel.

rūb-er, -ra, -rum, adj., red;
Mare Rubrum, the Red Sea, which

included not only the Red Sea proper,
but also the Persian Gulf (N. II. 2).

rūbicund-us, -ā, -um, adj., ruddy.

Rūf-us, -i, M., Rufus, a Roman
agnomen; see **Minucius** (1).

rūm-or, -ōris, M., report; **rumori-**
bus servire, to be the slave of idle tales
(C. IV. 5).

rūo, rūere, rūi, rūtum, v. intr.,
rush.

rūp-es, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rursum, adv., back again, anew.

rursus : see **rursum.**

rūs, rūris, N., country, as opposed
to the town or city (**oppidum** or **urbs**);

pl., **rura,** country places; **ruri** (loca-
tive), in the country; **rure,** from the
country; **rūs** (acc.), to the country
(p. 85, 3).

S.

Sābīn-us, -i, M., Sabinus; Quintus
Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He was slain by the

treachery of Ambiorix, B. C. 54.

sācell-um, -i, N., a small temple,
chapel, shrine.

sāc-er, -ra, -rum, adj., holy, sacred;
as a noun, **sacr-a, -ōrum,** sacred rites,
sacrifice.

sācērdō-s, -tis, M. or F., priest or
priestess.

sacrāment-um, -i, N., the military
oath taken by a Roman soldier. The

chief obligations were obedience to
the commander, loyalty to the country,
etc.

sacrārī-um, -i, N., chapel, shrine.

sacrifici-um, -i, N., sacrifice.

sacrific-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.
tr., sacrifice.

saepe, adv., often; **minime saepe,**
very seldom; comp. **saeptius**; sup.,
saeptissime.

saeptenūmērō, adv., frequently.

saev-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. intr.,
be cruel, rage, be furious.

saev-us, -ā, -um, adj., cruel, fierce.

sāgitt-a, -ae, F., arrow.

sāgittāri-us, -i, M., archer.

Saguntī-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the
inhabitants of Saguntum.

Sagunt-um, -i, N., or **Sagunt-us,**
-i, F., Saguntum or Sagoneus (now *Mur-*
viedro), a town on the east coast of Spain,
besieged by Hannibal, B. C. 219.

Sālāmīnī-us, -ā, -um, or belong-
ing to Salamis.

Sālām-is, -in-; (Greek acc. *Sālā-*
mina), F., Salamis, an island off the
coast of Attica.

salt-us, -ūs, M., wood, forest,
wooded defile.

sāl-um, -i, N., surf (of the sea).

sāl-us, -ūtis, F., safety, health.

sālūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
greet, salute.

sal-vus, -vā, -vum, adj., safe.

Sām-us, or -os, -i, F., Samus or
Samos, an island on the western coast of
Asia Minor.

sanct-io, -ire, sanxi, sanctum, v.
tr., render sacred, ratify, confirm.

sanct-us, -ā, -um, adj., sacred,
solemn.

sānē, adv., truly.

sangu-is, -inis, M., blood.

sānīt-as, -ātis, F., soundness of
mind, good sense.

sān-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
make sound, cure, remedy.

sān-us, -ā, -um, adj., sound, healthy;
pro sano facere, to act as a sane man
(C. V. 7).

sāpiens, -tis, adj., wise, judicious.

sāpienter, adv., wisely.

sāpienti-a, -ae, F., wisdom.

sāpio, sāpere, sāpivi (or sāpi),
no sup., v. tr. and intr., taste, be sensible,
understand.

sarcīn-a, -ae, F., the kit of a soldier;
cf. **impedimenta,** the baggage of the
army.

sarment-um, -i, N., twig.

sātell-es, -itis, M. or F., attendant,
guard.

sātis, adv., enough; used as an indecl.
neut. noun: **satis militum,** enough
of soldiers (C. V. 2); or as adv. limiting
an adj.: **satis magnus,** very large
(C. V. 21).

sātis-fācio, -fācere, -fēcī, -fac-tum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), satisfy; in pass., **satisfio**.

sauci-us, -ā, -um, adj., wounded.

sax-um, -ī, N., a rock, stone.

scāl-a, -ae, F., ladder.

scando, scandēre, scandi, scan-sum, v. tr., climb.

scāph-a, -ae, F., boat, skiff.

scēlērāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., wicked.

scēl-us, -ēris, N., wickedness, sin.

schōl-a, -ae, F., school.

scien-s, -tis, adj., knowing, skillful.

scienti-a, -ae, F., knowledge, skill.

scil'cet, adv., evidently, certainly, forsooth.

scindo, scindēre, scidī, scissum, v. tr., cut, tear, destroy.

scio, scire, scivi, scitum, v. tr., know.

Scipi-o, -ōnis, M., Scipio, the *cognomen* of two remarkable men in Roman history: (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, surnamed Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C. (2) Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus, called Africanus Minor, who took Carthage and razed it to the ground, B. C. 146.

scit-um, -ī, N., an enactment, vote, decision.

scrib-a, -ae, M., a writer, clerk.

scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr., write, compose; **legem scribere**, draw up a law; **multimodis apud plerosque scriptum est**, various accounts have been given in several writers (N. T. 10).

scrip-tor, -tōris, M., writer.

scū-tum, -ti, N., a shield (of oblong shape, while the *clipeus* was round).

se: see *sui* (p. 105, 6).

sē-erno, -cernēre, -crēvi, -crē-tum, v. tr., separate.

sēc-o, -āre, -ūi, -tum, v. tr., cut.

sēcrētō, adv., apart, secretly.

sēcrēt-us, -tā, -tum, adj., separate, secret, private.

sēcundum, prep. (with acc.), along, next to, according to.

sēcund-us, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

sēcūr-is, -is, F., axe.

sēcūsus, adv., (comp. of *secus*): **nihilō secius**, less by nothing, nevertheless.

sēcus, adv., otherwise, differently.

sed, conj., but, yet.

sēdēcim, card. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēo, sēdēre, sēdi, sessum, v. intr., sit, be encamped, settle.

sēd-es, -is, F., seat, abode, settlement.

sēd-iti-o, -ōnis, F., dissension, discord.

sēg-es, -ētis, F., crop, harvest.

Segontiāc-i, -ōrum, M., pl., the Segontiaci, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

Segōvā-x, -cis, M., Segovax, one of the petty princes of Kent (C. V, 22).

sēgrēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., separate, remove.

sē-iungo, -iungēre, -iunxi, -iunc-tum, v. tr., divide, separate.

sell-a, -ae, F., seat, chair.

semel, num. adv., once, once for all; **non semel**, not once, i.e. several times; **semel atque iterum**, once and again, repeatedly.

sē-men, -minis, N., seed.

sēment-is, -is, F., a sowing.

sēmit-a, -ae, F., a path.

semper, adv., always.

Semprōn-i-us, -ī, M., Sempronius; (1) Tiberius Sempronius Longus, consul 218 B.C., along with Scipio; (2) Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul 215-213, killed in Lucania in 212 B.C.

sēnā-tor, -tōris, M., a senator.

sēnā-tus, -tūs, M., senate.

sēnec-tus, -tūtis, F., old age.

sēn-ex, -is, M., an old man (p. 46).

sēn-i, -ae, -ā, distrib., num. adj., six each, six a piece.

sēn-i-or, -ōris (comp. of *senex*, p. 58, note), older.

sen-sus, -sūs, M., feeling, disposition.

sentent-i-a, -iae, F., opinion, decision.

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, v. tr., think, know, observe.

sē-pār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., separate.

sēpēl-i-o, -ire, -ivi, sepultum, bury.

sēp-es, -is, F., hedge.

sēp-i-o, -ire, sepe, septum, v. tr., enclose, surround, encircle.

septem, card. num. adj., seven.

septentrion-es, -um, the Seven Stars, the constellation of the Great Bear (Ursa Major); hence, the North; **vergīt**

rise, differently.

n. adj., sixteen.

sedi, sessum,

sed, settle.

abode, settlement.

, dissension, dis-

rop, harvest.

am, M., pl., the

tribe belonging to

, Segovax, one of

nt (c. v, 22).

vi, -atum, v. tr.,

e, -iunxi, -iunc-

parate.

chair.

nce, once for all;

i.e. several times;

a, once and again,

, seed.

a sowing.

path.

M., Sempronius;

s Longus, consul

ipio; (2) Tiberius

consul 215-213,

B.C.

, a senator.

senate.

F., old age.

old man (p. 46).

trib., num. adj.,

mp. of senex,

belonging, disposition.

opinion, decision.

ensi, sensum,

rve.

, -atum, v. tr.,

i, sepultum,

septum, v. tr.,

le.

adj., seven.

um, the Seven

f the Great Bear

North; vergit

ad septentriones, it faces the North, has a northern exposure (c. iv, 20).

septim-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., seventh.

septingent-i, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., seven hundred.

septuaginta, card. num. adj., seventy.

sépulchr-um (or **sepulcrum**), -i, N., tomb, sepulchre.

Sequān-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Sequani, a people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtus (or **sēquūtus**) **sum,** v. tr. dep., follow, pursue; **aestus commutationem secutus,** following the turn of the tide (c. v, 8); **Caesaris fidem sequi,** to be loyal to Caesar (c. v, 20).

ser-mo, -mōnis, M., talk, language, speech, discourse; **sermo Latinus,** the Latin language.

sēro, sērēre, sēvi, sātum, v. tr., sow, plant.

sēro, sērēre, sērui, sertum, v. tr., sew, stitch together.

sēro, adv., late, too late.

serpen-s, -tis, F., snake, serpent.

servil-is, -ē, adj., slavish, servile.

Servili-us, -i, M., Servilius; **Cneius Servilius Geminus** who was consul 217 B.C., and slain at Cannae, 216 B.C.

serv-i-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. intr., (with dat. p. 278, 3), be a slave to, advance; **amicis famaeque serviens,** advancing the interests of his friends and his own reputation (N. T. 1); **rumoribus servire,** to be the slave of idle reports (c. iv, 5).

servi-tus, -tūtis, F., slavery, servitude.

serv-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr., keep, save, preserve; **servare ordines** to keep the ranks (c. iv, 26).

serv-us, -i, M., slave.

sese, reduplicated form of **se** (see **sei**).

sestert-i-us, -i, M., a sestertius; a coin worth originally 2½ asses, or about five cents.

sévōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr., call aside.

seu: see **sive**.

sexāgintā, card. num. adj., sixty.

sexcent-i, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., six hundred.

sī, conj., if, whether.

sic, adv., thus, in this manner.

siccit-as, -ātis, F., dryness, drought.

sicc-us, -ā, -um, adj., dry.

Sicili-a, -ae, F., Sicily.

sic-ut, adv., so as, just as, as, as if.

sid-us, -ēris, N., star, constellation.

signific-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr., mean.

sign-um, -i, N., sign, mark; **signa militaria,** military standards (c. iv, 15).

silent-i-um, -i, N., silence.

Silēn-us, -i, M., Silenus, a Greek historian who was in the camp of Hannibal and wrote a history of his wars.

silv-a, -ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestr-is, -ē, adj., wooded.

simil-is, -ē, adj., like, similar (with dat., p. 277, 2); comp. **similior;** sup., **simillimus** (p. 57, 2).

simul, adv., at the same time; **simul atque (ac),** as soon as (p. 298, 2).

simulacr-um, -i, N., image, statue.

simulāti-o, -ōnis, F., pretence, feint.

simul-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr., pretend (pretend that a thing is what it is not, **dissimulo,** pretend that a thing is not what it is).

sin, conj., but if.

sine, prep. (with abl.), without.

singillatim, adv., one by one, singly.

singulār-is, -ē, adj., extraordinary.

singul-i, -ae, -ā, num. distrib. adj., one by one, one each, one apiece.

sinis-ter, -tra, -trum, adj., left; **sub sinistra relictus,** behind him on the left (c. v, 8).

sino, sinere, sivi, situm, v. tr., allow, permit, let.

siquidem, conj., if only.

sisto, sistere, stiti, statum, v. intr., place.

sive (seu), conj., or if; **sive... sive, or seu... seu,** whether... or (p. 191, 5).

sōc-er, -ēri, M., father-in-law.

sōciēt-as, -ātis, F., fellowship, league; **societatem facere,** to form a league (N. T. 8).

sōci-us, -i, M., companion, ally, associate.

Sōcrāt-ēs, -is, M., Socrates, the father of Greek philosophy, and the instructor of Plato, Xenophon, Alcibiades and other noted Athenians (469-399 B. C.).

sōl, solis, M., sun; **sole oriente, solis ortu,** at sunrise; **sole occi-**

dente, solis occasu, at sunset; ad solis occasum, to the West.

sōlēo, sōlēre, sōlītus sum, v. intr., semi-dep., to be accustomed, be wont.

sōlītūd-o, -inis, F., solitude, desert, loneliness.

sollīcīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., stir up, incite.

sōl-um, I, N., ground,

solum, adv., alone, only, merely.

sōl-us, -a, um, adj. (for declension, p. 26, 1), alone, only, single.

solvō, solvère, solvi, sōlūtum, v. tr., loose, unbind; solvere epistolam, to open a letter (N. H. 11); solvere navem, or naves, to set sail (c. iv, 22); naves solverunt, scil. funes, the ships set sail (c. iv, 28).

sōnīt-us, -ūs, M., a sound.

sōr-or, -ōris, F., a sister.

sor-s, -tis, F., lot, fate.

Sosil-us, I, M., Sosilus, a Spartan who instructed Hannibal in Greek and also wrote a history of his campaigns.

spātī-um, -i, N., space, time; longo spatio, for a long distance (c. iv, 10).

spēcī-es, -ēi, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), show, appearance, form, view.

spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., look, observe; ad orientem solem spectat, it faces the East (c. v, 13).

spēcūlā-tor, -tōris, M., scout, spy.

spēcūlātorī-us, -ā, -um, adj., scouting, spying; navigia speculatoria, despatch boats, rowed with a single bank of oars, generally ten in number, on each side, and employed for reconnoitering purposes.

spēcūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., watch.

spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. (with fut. inf., p. 110, 1), hope, expect.

spēs, spēi (gen. and dat. pl., rare), F., hope; in spem venire, to have hopes, to entertain hopes.

spirit-us, -ūs, M., breath, air, pride.

splend-ēo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., shine.

spōlī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., strip, spoil, plunder.

spōlī-um, -i, N., spoil, booty.

sponte, of one's own accord; suā sponte, of one's own accord.

stābilit-as, -ātis, F., firmness, steadiness.

stag-num, -nī, N., pool, pond.

stātīm, adv., instantly, at once, immediately.

stāti-o, -ōnis, F., outpost, picket, guard; in statione esse, to be on guard (c. iv, 32) = in stationibus esse (c. v, 15); in stationem succedere, to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32).

stāt-ūo, -ūere, -ūī, -ūtum, v. tr., place, determine, resolve.

stātūra, -ae, F., height, size.

stell-a, -ae, F., star.

stipendi-um, -i, N., pay, tax, tribute.

sto, stāre, stēti, stātum, v. intr., stand; cost (p. 150).

strēpit-us, -ūs, M., noise, din.

strūo, strūere, struxi, struct-um, v. tr., build.

stūd-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), be eager about, aim at; novis rebus studere, to aim at a change in the government (c. iv, 15).

stūdiōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.

stūdi-um, -i, N., zeal, devotion.

stultē, adv., foolishly.

stultiti-a, -ae, F., foolishness.

stult-us, -ā, -um, adj., foolish.

suādēo, suādere, suāsī, suāsum, v. intr., recommend, advise (with dat., p. 105, 9).

sub, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), beneath, under, near, just before, at the foot of; sub sinistra, on the left (c. v, 8); sub bruma, at the time of the winter solstice (c. v, 13).

sub-dūco, -dūcere, -duxī, -duc-tum, v. tr., draw up on shore; navem subducere, to beach a ship (c. v, 11).

subducti-o, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching a vessel.

sūb-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or -ii), -itum, v. tr., come up, approach, enter; suffer.

sub-fōdi-o, -fōdere, -fōdī, -fos-sum, v. tr., stab from beneath.

sub-icī-o, -icēre, -icēci, -lectum, v. tr., place near, expose; hiemi navigationem subicere, to expose his voyage to the winter, i.e., to run the risk of sailing in winter (c. iv, 36).

sub-lect-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of subicīo), adj., adjacent, near; insulae subiectae, islands lying near (c. v, 13).

N., pool, pond.
 instantly, at once,
 F., outpost, picket,
 esse, to be on
 in stationibus
 stationem suc-
 cur place on guard
 -ū, -ūtum, v. tr.,
 solve.
 height, size.
 ar.
 I, N., pay, tax,
 stātum, v. intr.,
 M., noise, din.
 struxi, struct-
 ū, no sup., v. intr.
), be eager about,
 sus studere, to
 in the government
 gerly, zealously.
 cal, devotion.
 hly.
 foolishness.
 adj., foolish.
 e, suāsī, suā-
 mend, advise (with
 and abl., p. 222, 2),
 just before, at the
 tra, on the left
 na, at the time of
 v, 13).
 re, -dūxi, -duc-
 on shore; navem
 h a ship (c. v, 11).
 S, F., drawing up
 essel.
 (or -fi), -ītum, v.
 , enter; suffer.
 re, -fōdi, -fos-
 om beneath.
 iēci, -lectum, v.
 e; hiemi navi-
 re, to expose his
 e, to run the risk
 iv, 36).
 -um (perf. part.
 , adjacent, near;
 islands lying near

sūb-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgi, -actum, v.
 tr., subdue, conquer.
 sūbitō, adv., suddenly, quickly.
 sūbit-us, -ā, -um, adj., sudden,
 unexpected.
 sub-lēv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
 relieve.
 sub-minist-r-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 v. tr., supply, provide.
 sub-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
 sum, v. tr., send secretly.
 sub-mōv-o, -mōv-ere, -mōvi, -mō-
 tum, v. tr., dislodge, draw off.
 sub-ŏles, -ŏlis, F., posterity, race.
 sub-rūo, -rūere, -rui, -rūtum,
 v. tr., undermine.
 sub-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus (or
 -sēquūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow
 closely, follow.
 sub-sidi-um, -i, N., auxiliary troops;
 reserve, aid; ad omnes casus sub-
 sidia componere, to make provision
 for all emergencies (c. iv, 31).
 sub-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, no sup.,
 v. intr., halt, make a stand; neque
 ancorae funesque sub-sistunt,
 neither the anchors nor the cables hold
 out (c. v, 10).
 sub-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be at
 the bottom; dolus subest, there is
 deceit at the bottom (N. T. 4); aequi-
 noctium subest, the equinox is at
 hand (c. v, 23).
 subter, prep. (with acc. and abl.,
 p. 222, 2), below, beneath, underneath,
 close by.
 sub-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ven-
 tum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), come
 to one's aid, help.
 suc-cēdo, -cēd-ere, -cessi, -ces-
 sum, v. intr., approach, take the place
 of; ad alteram partem Ubii suc-
 cedunt, the Ubii border on them on one
 side (c. iv, 3); ad stationem succe-
 dere, to take their place on guard (c. iv,
 32).
 suc-cendo, -cend-ere, -cendi,
 -censum, v. tr., kindle.
 suc-censō, -cens-ere, -censui,
 -censum, v. intr., be angry with (dat.).
 suc-cido, -cid-ere, -cidi, -cisum,
 v. tr., cut down.
 suc-cumbo, -cumb-ere, -cubui,
 -cubitum, v. intr. (with dat.), submit
 to, bow the knee to.
 suc-curro, -curr-ere, -curri, -cur-
 sum, v. intr., (with dat., p. 278, 3), help,
 aid.

sūd-es, -is, F., stake.
 sūd-or, -ōris, M., sweat.
 Suēb-i, -ōrum, M., pl., the Suebi,
 a populous tribe of Germany consisting
 of several smaller tribes. The name still
 exists in the modern Suabia.
 suff-ero, -ferre, sustūli, sub-
 lātum, v. tr., bear, endure.
 sufficio, -fic-ere, -feci, -fectum,
 v. tr., to elect in place of one deceased;
 consul suffectus, one elected consul
 to serve out the unexpired time of a con-
 sul who had died in office.
 suf-frāgi-um, -i, N., vote; testu-
 larum suffragiis, by the votes of the
 tiles, i.e., by ostracism (N. T. 8).
 Sugambr-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the
 Sugambri, a German tribe in Caesar's
 time residing in the mountainous district
 of Westphalia.
 sūi, reflex. pro., of himself, herself,
 itself (p. 105, 6).
 Sull-a, -ae, M., Sulla; Lucius Cor-
 nelius Sulla, the great dictator, supporter
 of the aristocracy, as his opponent Marius
 was of the democracy. He lived B.C. 138
 to 78 B.C.
 Sūlm-o, -ōnis, M., Sulmo, a town
 N. E. of Rome, the birthplace of Ovid,
 the Latin poet.
 Sulpici-us, -i, M., Sulpicius; (1)
 Publius Sulpicius Galba, consul 211 B.C.,
 200 B.C. (2) Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman
 historian (N. H. 13). (3) Publius Sulpicius
 Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul (c.
 iv, 22).
 sum, esse, fui, v. intr., (p. 261), be.
 summa, -ae, F., total, whole; gen-
 eral administration, control; summae
 imperii praesens, to hold the supreme
 command (N. T. 4); summam im-
 perii ad eum deferre, to confer on
 him the supreme command (N. H. 3); de
 summa imperii dimicare, to fight
 for supremacy (N. H. 8); summā im-
 perii bellicue administrandi per-
 missā, the supreme command in con-
 ducting the war being entrusted (c. v,
 11).
 summoveo: see submoveo.
 sum-mus, -mā, -mum, adj., high-
 est, greatest, very great, chief (superl. of
 superus); summus mons, the top
 of the mountain; summa amphora,
 the top of a jar (N. H. 9); summa res,
 a most important matter (c. iv, 5).

**sūmo, sūmere, sumpsī, sump-
tum, v. tr., take, assume; poenas
sumere, to exact a penalty.**

sumptuos-us, -ā, -um, adj., costly.

sump-tus, -tūs, M., expense.

**super, prep. (with acc. and abl., p.
222, 2), above.**

sūperbē, adv., proudly, haughtily.

**sūperb-us, -ā, -um, adj., proud,
haughty.**

**sūpērior, -is (comp. of superus),
higher, previous; nocte superiore,
on the previous night; superiore
aestate, in the preceding summer (c.
iv, 21); in loca superiora, up the
country (c. v, 8); locus superior, a
height (c. v, 9).**

**sūpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
conquer, defeat, surpass; Euboeam
superare, to sail round Euboea (N. T. 3).**

**superstiti-o, -ōnis, F., superstition.
sūper-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr.,
remain, survive; neque multum
aestatis superest, and not much of
the summer is left (c. v, 22).**

**sūpēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., high,
(comp., superior; sup., supremus,
or summus); see superior.**

suppell-ex, -ectilis, F., furniture.

**sup-plex, -plicis, M. or F., sup-
pliant.**

**supplicāti-o, -ōnis, F., thanks-
giving.**

**suppliciter, adv., humbly, sup-
pliantly.**

**sup, -icī-um, -ī, N., punishment,
execution.**

**suprā, prep. (with acc.), and adv.,
above, over.**

sus, sūs, M. or F., pig.

**sus cīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpi, -cep-
tum, v. tr., undertake.**

**suspici-o, -ōnis, F., distrust, sus-
picion; in suspicionem venire, to
be suspected; in suspicionem regi
adducere, to bring under the sus-
picion of the king (N. H. 2).**

**sus-picio, suspicēre, suscepī,
suspexit, v. tr., suspect.**

**suspīc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr.
dep., suspect, distrust.**

**sus-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, v. tr., bear, check, withstand.**

**sū-us, -ā, -um, adj. pro., his, her, its,
their.**

**Syrācūs-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Syracuse,
a city on the east coast of Sicily.**

**Syrācūsān-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or
belonging to Syracuse, Syracusan.**

Syria, -ae, F., Syria.

T.

**T.=Titus, a Roman praenomen;
see cognomen.**

**tābellārī-us, -ī, M., a letter carrier,
messenger.**

tābernācūl-um, -ī, N., tent.

tābūl-a, -ae, F., tablet.

**tāc-ēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. and
intr., be silent; pass over in silence.**

tācīt-us, -ā, -um, adj., silent.

**taed-et, -ēre, ūit (taesum est),
impers., it disgusts, wearies; me libri
taedet, I am disgusted with the book
(p. 165).**

**tālē-a, -ae, F., bar; taleae ferreae,
iron bars (c. v, 12).**

**tālent-um, -ī, N., talent; a Greek
silver talent is variously estimated at
£235 or £243 15s. sterling, from \$1,100 to
\$1,200; a gold talent was ten times this
value.**

tāl-is, -ē, adj., such.

**tam, adv., so (before adverbs and ad-
jectives); tam...quam, as much...as
(II. N. 10).**

tandīū, adv., so long.

**tāmen, adv., yet, still, for all that,
however, nevertheless.**

**Tāmēs-is, -is (acc. Tamesim), M.,
the Thames.**

tāmetsi, adv., although.

**Tamphilus, -ī, M., Tamphilus; see
Baebius.**

**tandem, adv., at length, finally; in
questions, pray? now? as quis tan-
dem? who, pray?**

**tango, tangēre, tētēgi, tactum,
v. tr., touch, border on.**

**tanto, adv. of comparison, by so
much.**

tantōpēre, adv., vehemently.

**tantūl-us, -ā, -um, adj., so very
small, so slight, so trifling; has tan-
tularum rerum occupationes,
this business consisting of such trifles
(c. iv, 22).**

**tantum, adv., only, so much, so far,
merely.**

**tant-us, -ā, -um, adj., so great, so
large, such.**

tardē, adv., slowly.

s, -ā, -um, adj., of or
tuse, Syracusan.
Syria.

T.

Roman praenomen;

-i, M., a letter carrier,

-m, -i, N., tent.

-n, tablet.

-ūi, -itum, v. tr. and
pass over in silence.

-um, adj., silent.

-ūt (taesum est),
s, wearies; me libri
gusted with the book

bar; taleae ferreae,

-N, talent; a Greek
variously estimated at
sterling, from \$1,100 to
ent was ten times this

such.

before adverbs and ad-
quam, as much . . . as

so long.

yet, still, for all that,
less.

(acc. Tamesim), M.,

although.

-i, M., Tamphilus; see

at length, finally; in
now? as quis tan-

re, tētēgi, tactum,
r on.

comparison, by so

-, vehemently.

-um, adj., so very
o trifling; has tan-
m occupations.
isting of such triflc.

only, so much, so far,

-m, adj., so great, so

ly.

tard-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
check, delay, impede, hinder.

tard-us, -ā, -um, adj., slow.

Tarquini-us, -i, M., Tarquin, a name
given to two of the Roman kings: (1)
Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the First),
who reigned 616 B.C. to 578 B.C.; (2) Tar-
quinius Superbus (Tarquin, the Proud),
who reigned 534 B.C. to 510 B.C. Under
the last king the Romans abolished
kingly rule.

taur-us, -i, M., bull.

Taximāgūl-us, -i, M., Taximagulus,
one of the petty kings of Kent (c. v, 22).

Tectōsag-es, -um, M., the Tecto-
sages, a division of the Volcae, who lived
in the western part of the Roman province
of Gaul. Their capital was Tolōsa (now
Toulouse).

tect-um, -i, N., house.

tēgiment-um, -i, N., covering.

tēgo, tēgere, texi, tectum, v. tr.,
cover, protect.

tēl-um, -i, N., weapon, dart.

tēmērāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., rash,
indiscreet.

tēmēre, adv., at random, without a
purpose (c. iv, 20).

tēmērī-as, -ātis, F., rashness.

tēm-o, -ōnis, M., pole (of a chariot).

tempērānti-a, -ae, F., self-control,
moderation.

tempērāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., tem-
perate, mild; loca sunt tempera-
tiora, the climate is milder (c. v, 12).

tempēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.
and intr., with acc., rule, manage; with
dat., restrain.

tempest-as, -tātis, F., weather,
storm; reiçi tempestate, to be driven
back by a storm (c. v, 5).

tem-plum, -pli, N., temple.

tempt-o (or tent-o), -āre, -āvi,
-ātum, v. tr., try, attempt, attack.

tem-pus, -pōris, N., time, season,
occasion; in reliquum tempus, for
the future; omni tempore, always;
tempus ducere, to protract the time
(N. T. 7); annum tempus, a year's
time (N. T. 9); tempore dato, at an
appointed time (N. H. 2); ad tempus,
at a moment's notice (c. iv, 23); pro
tempore et pro re, suited to the time
and conditions (c. v, 8).

tēn-ax, -ācis, adj., holding fast,
tenacious.

Tenctēr-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Tenc-
teri, a German tribe on the Rhine, who

crossed the river along with the Uspetes,
and were defeated by the Romans. They
occupied the districts of Utrecht and
Guelderland of Holland.

tendo, tendere, tētēdi, tentum
(or tensum), v. tr., stretch, extend.

tēn-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -tum, v. tr., hold,
possess; navem tenere in ancoris,
to keep a ship at anchor (N. T. 8);
cursum tenere, to hold on its course
(c. iv, 28).

tēn-er, -ērā, -ērum, adj., tender.

tento: see tempto.

tēnū-is, -ēs, adj., thin, weak.

tēnus, prep. (with abl. or gen.), up to,
as far as; usually after the word it gov-
erns; capite tenus, up to the head;
ore tenus, up to the lips.

ter, num. adv., thrice.

Tērenti-us, -i, M., Terentius; Caius
Terentius Varro, consul along with Lucius
Æmilius Paulus in 216 B.C., when the
unfortunate battle of Cannae was fought
against the wish of Paulus, who was slain.
Varro escaped with a few horse.

tēr-es, -ētis, adj., smooth.

ter-gum, -gi, N., back; a tergo,
in the rear; post tergum, behind the
back; terga vertere, to flee.

ter-ni, -nae, -nā, distrib. num. adj.,
three each, three apiece.

tēro, tērēi, -rivi, tritum, v. tr.,
wear.

terr-a, -ae, F., land, earth, country.
terr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr.,
frighten, terrify, alarm.

terrestr-is, -ēs, adj., of or belonging
to land; exercitus terrestris, land
army, opposed to exercitus navalis,
sea forces.

terrīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
terrify, frighten.

terr-or, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

tertio, num. adv., in the third
place.

tertium, for the third time.

tertī-us, -ā, -um, num. ord. adj.,
third.

test-a, -ae, F., shell; see note on
Nepos, Them., Chap. 8.

testāment-um, -i, N., will, testa-
ment.

testīmōnī-um, -i, N., proof, testi-
mony.

test-is, -is, M., witness.

test-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep.
witness, assert.

testūd-o, -inis, F., a tortoise, a covering formed by the shields of the soldiers held above their heads so as to ward off the weapons hurled by the enemy; so called from the fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell. The term was also applied to the different kinds of sheds under which the soldiers worked when attacking a town.

testūl-a, -ae, F., tile, piece of pottery; **suffragilis testularum**, by the votes of the tiles, i.e., by ostracism (N. T. 8).

Teutōn-es, -um and **Teutōn-i-ōrum**, pl. M., the Teutons, a people of Germany.

Thēmistocl-es, -is or -i, M., Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian statesman who lived 514 B.C. to 449 B.C.

Thermōpyl-aē, -ārum, pl. F., Thermopylae, a celebrated pass in Greece near the Malac Gulf, between Thessaly and Locris. Here Leonidas and his Spartan band fell 480 B.C. It obtained the name "Hot Gates," from the warm sulphur springs near it.

Thūcýdid-ēs, -is, M., Thucydides, a Greek historian who wrote an account of the Peloponnesian War down to 411 B.C. He lived 471 B.C. to 401 B.C.

Tibēr-is, -is (acc., **Tiberim**; abl., **Tiberi**), M., the Tiber, the river of Rome.

Tibēri-us, -i, M., Tiberius; see **Sempronius**.

tign-um, -i, N., beam, log.

tīm-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v. tr. and intr., fear, be afraid.

timidē, adv., fearfully, timidly.

timid-us, -ā, -um, adj., fearful, afraid, timid.

tīm-or, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

Titūri-us, -i, M., Titurius; see **Sabinus**.

Tit-us, -i, M., Titus; see **Labiēnus, Gracchus**.

tōg-a, -ae, F., gown. The toga was the distinguishing dress of a Roman citizen.

tōlēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bear, support.

tollo, tollēre, sustūli, sublātum, v. tr., lift, raise, carry away, destroy; **ancorā tollere**, to weigh anchor (C. IV, 23).

torment-um, -i, N., military engine for throwing missiles against the enemy.

torrēo, torrēre, torrūi, tostum, v. tr., scorch, burn.

tot, indecl. adj., so many; **tot...quot**, as many as.

tōtidem, indecl. adj., just as many.

tōt-us, -ā, -um (p. 26), adj., whole, all, entire; often with the adverbial force of wholly, entirely; **totum se dedit republicae**, he devoted himself wholly to the interests of the state (N. T. 1).

trab-s, trāb-is, F., beam, timber.

trād-o, -ēre, -idi, -itum, v. tr., hand over, give over, deliver, surrender; hand down to posterity; **traditur**, it is said; **traditum est**, the tradition is.

trā-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., lead across, transport (p. 277, 8).

trāho, trāhēre, traxi, tractum, v. tr., draw, drag.

trā-icio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw across, lead across, pierce (p. 277, 8).

trā-lect-us, -ūs, M., passage, crossing over.

tranquillit-as, -ātis, F., calm weather; **summa tranquillitas**, a dead calm (C. V, 23).

trans, prep. (with acc.), across, over, on the other side, beyond.

transduco: see **traduco**.

trans-ēo, -ire, -ivi (ii), **-itum**, v. tr., cross over, cross (p. 277, 7).

trans-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, v. tr., bear or carry across; **summam imperii transferre**, to transfer the supreme power (N. A. 2).

trans-grēdiōr, -grēdi, -gressus sum, v. tr., pass over, cross (p. 277, 7).

trans-igo, -igēre, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., pass through; **tempus transigere**, to pass the time (N. T. 9).

trans-itus, -itus, M., a going or crossing over, passing, crossing.

trans-mārin-us, -ā, -um, adj., across, or beyond the sea.

transmiss-us, -ūs, M., passage.

trans-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., carry over, transport.

Transrhēnān-i, -ōrum, pl. M., those living across the Rhine (C. V, 2).

Trāsimēn-us, -i, M., Trasimenus (now *Lago di Perugia*), a lake in Etruria where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, June 23, 217 B.C.

Trebōn-i-us, -i, M., Trebonius; **Caesar Trebonius**, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Trēbī-a, -ae, M. or F., Trebia, (now *Trebbia*), a river of Gallia Cisalpina, one

undécim-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., eleventh.

undiquē, adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.

univers-us, -ā, um, adj., whole, all (in a body).

unquam: see **umquam**.

ūn-us, -ā, -um (p. 244), card. num. adj., one, alone; **uno tempore**, at one and the same time; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man; **unus omnino**, only one (c. v, 18).

ūnusquisque, ūnāquaque, ūnum quidque, indef. adj. pro., each, every.

urbān-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to the city.

urb-s, -is, F., city; the city, i.e., Rome.

urgēo, urgēre, ursi, no sup., v. tr., press.

Usipēt-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Usipetes, a German tribe near the Tencteri, on the lower Rhine, in Utrecht and Guelderland in Holland; but originally found in Saxony, from which they were driven out by the Suebi. They crossed the Rhine into the borders of the Menapii, in Gaul, but were driven back by Caesar.

urs-us, -i, M., a bear.

usquam, adv., anywhere.

usque, adv., all the way, all the while, until; **usque ad urbem**, up to the city; **usque ad meum tempus**, up to my day.

ūs-us, -ūs, M., use, experience, practice, advantage; **usu venire**, to come by occasion, i.e., to happen (N. II, 12); **ratio atque usus belli**, theory and practice of war, i.e., the systematic practice of war (c. iv, 1); **magno usui sibi esse**, to be of great advantage to him (c. iv, 20); **ex usu**, of advantage (c. v, 6).

ūsus, indef. noun with **est**: there is need (p. 166, 2); **usus est mihi cibo**, I have need of food.

ūt (or ūti), conj., as, how, that, in order that (p. 293, 1); so that (p. 295, 1); though (p. 303, 1, (b)); **ut...ita**, as...so (p. 303, 1).

ut, as: **accidit ut** (p. 293, 1).

ut-er, -ra, -rum (p. 27), interrog. pro., which of two?

uterque, utrāque, utramque, adj. pro., each (of two), both: **ex utraque parte**, on both sides.

utervis, utrāvis, utrumvis, adj., pro., either of the two you wish.

uti: see **ut**.

ūtīl-is, -ē, adj., useful, serviceable, fit, profitable.

ūtīl-it-as, -ātis, F., usefulness, advantage, service.

ūtīnam, adv., O! that (p. 288, 5).

ūtōr, ūti, ūsus sum, v. intr. dep. (with abl., p. 116), use, employ, enjoy; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (c. iv, 24).

utpōte, adv., inasmuch as, seeing that.

utrimque, adv., from or on both sides.

utrique, pl. of **uterque**.

utrobique, adv., on both sides, in each place; **utrobique=et mari et terra** (N. II, 10).

utrum, conj., whether; **utrum...an**, whether...or; often not translated in direct questions (p. 287, 6).

ux-or, -ōris, F., wife.

V.

Vācāl-us, -i, M., the Vacalus (now Waal or Wahal), a branch of the Rhine.

vācātī-o, -ōnis, F., freedom, exemption.

vāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., be unoccupied, lie waste.

vācū-us, -ā, -um, adj., empty, vacant.

vād-um, -i, N., ford.

vāg-ōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., wander.

valēn-s, -tis (pres. part. of **valeo** used as an) adj., powerful.

vāl-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. intr., be powerful, strong; have power or influence; **quo valeret**, what it implied (N. I, 2); **hoc eo valebat**, the purpose of this was (N. I, 4); **longe plurimum valet**, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 3); **quam plurimum valere**, to be as powerful as possible (c. v, 4).

vālētūd-o, -inis, F., state of health (good or bad according to context); **valetudine premi**, to be afflicted with bad health (N. II, 4).

vall-is, -is, F., valley.

vall-um, -i, N., rampart, breastwork of a camp.

vall-us, -i, M., stake, palisade.

vārī-us, -ā, -um, adj., different, changing.

Varro: see **Terentius**.

vās, vāsīs (in the sing., 3rd decl.: in

seful, serviceable,
usefulness, advan-

nat (p. 288, 5).

um, v. intr. dep.
e, employ, enjoy;
dash (c. iv, 24).

much as, seeing

from or on both

arque.
on both sides, in
te=et mari et

her; utrum...
not translated
87, 5).

the Vacalus (now

h of the Rhine.

freedom, exemp-

um, v. intr., be

a, adj., empty,

sum, v. intr.

part. of valeo

um, v. intr., be

power or influ-

what it implied

at, the purpose

ge plurimum

most powerful

mum valere,

ble (c. v, 4).

state of health

g to context);

to be afflicted

part, breastwork

palisade.

adj., different,

18.

g., 3rd decl. : in

the pl., *vāsa*, -ōrum of the 2nd, N.,
vessel; *vāsa fictilia*, earthenware
vessels (N. H. 10).

vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., lay
waste, devastate.

vast-us, -ā, -um, adj., vast.

vā-tes, -tis, M. or F., a soothsayer,
prophet, prophetess.

-*vē*, enclitic conjunction, or; giving
a choice between two or more things.

vectig-al, -ālis, N., tax, toll, revenue.

vectigāl-is, -ē, adj., tributary; as
a noun; *vectigāl-es*, -ium, pl. M.,
tributary people.

vectōri-us, -ā, -um, adj., adapted
for carrying; *navigium vectorium*,
a transport ship.

vēhēmen-s, -tis, adj., angry, violent.

vēhēmenter, adv., vigorously, reso-
lutely.

vēhīcūl-um, -i, N., a carriage.

vēho, *vēhere*, *vexi*, *vectum*, v.
tr., bear, carry, convey; in pass., *vēhi*,
to sail in a ship (scil. in nave, N. H.
10).

vēl, conj., or; *vel*... *vel*, either...
or; with sup., even, indeed; *vel opti-
mus*, the very best.

vēlōcit-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

vēl-ox, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid,
active.

vēl-um, -i, N., sail; *dare vela
ventis*, to set sail (N. H. 8).

vēlūt, adv., just as; *velūt* *sl*, just
as if.

vēnāl-is, -ē, adj., for sale.

vēnāti-o, -ōnis, F., hunting; *mul-
tum sunt in venationibus*, they
are much given to hunting (c. iv, 1).

vēnāt-or, -ōris, M., hunter.

ven-do, -dēre, *didi*, -dītum, v. tr.,
sell, offer for sale; pass., *vēnēo* (which
see).

vēnēnāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., venom-
ous, poisonous.

vēnēn-um, -i, N., poison.

vēnēo, -ire, -ivi (or *ii*), -itum, v.
pass. (see *vendo*), be sold (p. 168, note).

vēnēr-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr.,
adore, worship.

Vēnētīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or be-
longing to the Veneti, a tribe on the west
coast of France, north of the Loire, in the
vicinity of the bay of Quiberon. Caesar
subdued them 57 B.C.

vēnī-a, -ae, F., favor, forgiveness.

vēnīo, *vēnīre*, *vēnī*, *ventum*, v.

intr., come; in *suspicionem venīre
regi*, to be suspected by the king.

ventit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
visit, keep coming; *multum ad eos
mercatores ventitant*, merchants
frequently visit them (c. iv, 3).

vent-us, -i, M., wind; *dare vela
ventis*, to set sail (N. H. 8).

Venusī-a, -ae, F., Venusia (now
Venosa), a town on the borders of Apulia
and Lucania.

vēr, *vērīs*, N., spring; *primo vere*,
at the beginning of spring; *extremo
vere*, at the end of spring.

(*ver-ber*), *verbēris* (nom. dat acc.
sing, not found), N., stroke, blow.

ver-bum, -bi, N., word; in pl., con-
versation; *dare verba*, to give empty
words, hence, to deceive (N. H. 5); *his
verbis*, on these terms (N. T. 10).

vērē, adv., truly, in truth (comp.,
verius; sup., *verissime*); *verissi-
me iudicabat*, he formed the most
correct judgment (N. T. 1).

verēcund-us, -ā, -um, adj., modest.

vēr-ēor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. tr., dep.,
fear, dread; *navibus veritus*, fearing
for the safety of the ships (c. v, 9).

vergo, *vergēre*, no perf., no sup.,
v. intr., incline, slope; *ad septentri-
ones vergit*, it has a northerly slope
(c. iv, 20).

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, truly,
certainly; but, indeed.

Verr-es, -is, M., Verres, a notorious
proconsul of Sicily, impeached by Cicero
for plundering this province.

vers-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
turn often, change.

vers-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr.,
dwell in, be occupied with, engaged in;
*multis in privatis iudiciis ver-
sari*, to be often employed in private
suits (N. T. 1); *tuto versari*, to dwell
in safety (N. T. 8).

vers-us, -ūs, M., line, verse.

verto, *vertēre*, *verti*, *versum*,
v. tr., turn, change; *terga vertere*,
to turn their backs, flee.

vector, *verti*, *versus* sum, v. intr.
dep., turn, change.

vēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., true.

vescor, *vesci*, no perf. or sup., intr.
dep. (with abl., p. 116), feed, live upon.

ves-per, -pēris (or -perī), M., even-
ing; *vespere*, or *vesperi*, in the
evening.

Vest-a, -ae, F., Vesta, the Roman god-
dess of the hearth and home.

- vest-er, -ra, -rum, adj. pro., your, yours.**
vestigi-um, -i, N., foot track, trace, mark; **eodem vestigio,** in the same spot, without moving (c. iv, 2); **in vestigio,** at once, promptly (c. iv, 5).
vestment-um, -i, N., garment.
vest-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., clothe, dress; **pellibus vestiri,** to clothe oneself in skins (c. v, 14).
vest-is, -is, F., dress.
vestit-us, -us, M., clothing, dress.
veterān-us, -ā, -um, adj., old; as a noun, **veterān-i, -ōrum, pl. M.,** veteran troops (scil. milites).
vēt-o, -āre, -ūi, -itum, v. tr., forbid, prevent.
vēt-us, -ēris, adj., old, ancient; no comp.; sup., **veterimus.**
ve-xill-um, -i, N., flag, standard.
vex-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., harass, plunder, waste.
vi-a, -ae, F., way, road, journey; **tridui viā,** a journey of three days (c. iv, 4).
viā-tor, -tōris, M., traveller.
vicēn-i, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., twenty each.
vicēsīm-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., twentieth.
vicēs, num. adv., twenty times.
vicinī-tas, -ātis, F., neighborhood.
vicin-us, -i, M., neighbor.
vicis (genitive), **vicem, vicē, F.** (no nom. sing.), change; **in vicem,** in turn (c. iv, 1).
victim-a, -ae, F., sacrifice, victim.
vic-tor, -tōris, M., victor, conqueror; as an adj., victorious.
victōri-a, -ae, F., victory.
vict-us, -tūs, M., living, food.
vic-us, -i, M., village, hamlet.
vidēlicet, adv., manifestly, of course, forsooth.
vidēo, vidēre, vidī, visum, v. tr.; see **videor, vidēri, visus sum, intr. dep.,** seem, appear.
vidū-a, -ae, F., widow.
vigēo, vigēre, no perf., no sup., be vigorous, thrive, flourish.
vigilī-a, -ae, F., watch, guard. The Romans had four night watches: **prima vigilia,** from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m.; **secundā vigilia,** from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.; **tertia vigilia,** from 12 p.m. to 3 a.m.; **quartā vigilia,** from 3 a.m. to 6 a.m.; **secundā**
inita vigilia, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).
viginti, card. num. adj., twenty.
vil-la, -lae, F., a country house, villa.
vi-men, -minis, N., twig, slender.
vinc-lo, -ire, vinxi, victum, v. tr., bind.
vinco, vincēre, vici, victum, v. tr., conquer.
vincul-um, -i, N., chain; **in vincula conicere,** throw into prison.
vindic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., claim, set free, punish.
vinē-a, -ae, F., a shed; a movable shed with sloping roof of planks and sides of wickerwork and covered over with hides. It was usually 8 feet high and 16 feet long. Under it the soldiers advanced and worked the battering ram.
vin-um, -i, N., wine.
viol-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., violate, injure, harm.
vir, vīri, M., man, husband.
virg-a, -ae, F., twig.
virg-o, -inis, F., maiden.
viridit-as, -ātis, F., greenness, vigor.
viril-is, -is, adj., manly.
vir-tus, -tūtis, F., manliness, virtue.
vis, vis, F., strength, power (p. 45); **vim facere,** to offer violence; **vi** or **per vim expugnare,** to take by storm; **vim sustinere,** to withstand an attack (N. H. 11).
viso, visēre, visi, visum, v. tr., go to see, visit.
vi-ta, -tae, F., life.
viti-um, -i, N., fault, vice.
vit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., avoid, shun.
vit-rum, -ri, N., wood; a plant known to botanists as **Isatis tinctoria**, which produced a blue dye. Till the introduction of indigo in the 17th century it was largely cultivated.
vītūpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., abuse, revile.
vivo, vivēre, vixi, victum, v. intr., live; **liberius vivere,** to live a careless life (N. T. 1); **lacte et carne vivunt,** they live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).
viv-us, -ā, -um, adj., alive, living.
vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.
vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., call, summon.

the beginning of the

adj., twenty.

country house, villa.

der.

xi, vinctum, v.

vici, victum, v.

chain; in vincula

prison.

vi, -atum, v. tr.,

shed; a movable

of of planks and

covered over with

8 feet high and 16

soldiers advanced

ng ran.

.

-atum, v. tr.,

usband.

aiden.

greenness, vigor.

ply.

manliness, virtue.

h, power (p. 46);

violence; vi or

re, to take by

re, to withstand

visum, v. tr.,

vice.

-atum, v. tr.,

wood; a plant

stictoria,

dy. Till the

the 17th century

atum, v. tr.,

victum, v.

vere, to live a

cte et carne

milk and flesh

alive, living.

culty, hardly,

am, v. tr., call,

vōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., fly, hasten.

vōlo, velle, vōlūi, no sup. (irregular verb, p. 147), intr., be willing, wish, desire.

vōlit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., flit about.

vōlū-er, -eris, -ere, adj., winged.

vōluntāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., willing, voluntary.

vōluntāri-us, -i, M., a volunteer.

vōlunt-as, -ātis, F., willingness, good will; voluntate sua, of his own free will; ad voluntatem, to suit the wishes of (c. iv, 5).

vōlup-tas, -tātis, F., pleasure; animi voluptatisque causā, for recreation and pleasure (c. v, 12).

Vōlūsēn-us, -i, M., Volusenus; Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

vōvēcō, vōvēre vōvi, vōtum, v. tr., vow.

vos: see tu (p. 104).

Vōsēg-us, M., the modern *Vosges*, a mountain range in north-eastern France.

vox, vōcis, F., voice; magnā voce, in a loud voice (c. iv, 25).

Vulcān-us, -i, M., Vulcan, the god of the Romans.

vulgo, (abl. of *vulgus* used as an) adv., generally, commonly.

vulg-us, -i, N. (rarely M.), common people, multitude.

vulnēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wound, hurt.

vuln-us, -eris, N., wound; paucis vulneribus acceptis, with slight loss (c. v, 10).

vulp-es, -is, F., fox.

Vuls-o, -ōnis, M., Vulso; Cneius Manlius Vulso, a Roman consul who had charge of the province of Asia in 189 B.C.

vult-ur, -ūris, M., a vulture.

vul-tus, -tūs, M., expression, countenance.

X.

Xēnōph-ōn, -ontis, M., Xenophon, an Athenian, pupil of Socrates, and leader of the Greeks in the expedition of Cyrus.

Xerx-ēs, -is, M., Xerxes, a king of Persia who reigned from 485 B.C. to 465 B.C.

Z.

Zācynth-us, -i, F., Zacynthus (now *Zante*), an island in the Ionian Sea, west of Greece.

Zāma, -ae, F., Zama, a town of Numidia, where Scipio defeated Hannibal, B.C. 202.

eq
qu
all
me
154
rel
a
by
a
a
sur
a
a
adv
neig
ab
cen
and
a
a
fora
a
abs
a
a, i
from
a
a
(p. 2
dico
a
ac
tum.
ac
dat.,
ac
den
ac
-fect,
tum.
acc
ob, p
acc
acc
F.
acc
281, 1

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- a**, generally untranslated; when **a** is equivalent to **a certain**, translated by *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*; by *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* (p. 132). If = **some**; or, if meaning **one**, by *unus* (p. 27).
- abandon**, *mīt-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 150, 1, note); *desēr-o*, -ēre, -ēi, -desertum; *relinq-uo*, -ēre, *reliq-ui*, *relictum*.
- abide by**, *I*, *sto* (with *abl.*); **I abide by the decision**, *iudicio sto*.
- ability**, *ingēni-um*, -i, N.
- able**, *adj.*, *pōtēs*; **I am able**, *possum*, *posse*, *pōt-ui* (p. 261).
- abode**, *domicilium*, -i, N.
- about**, *prep.*, *circā*, *circiter*, *apud*; *adv.*, *circiter*, *ferē*, *paene*; **about** (in the neighborhood of) *Rome*, *circā Rōmam*; **about two hundred**, *circiter ducenti*; **about** (= almost), *ferē* with *adj.* and *adv.*, *paene* with *verb.*
- about** (concerning), *prep.*, *de* (p. 222).
- abroad**, *militiæ* (p. 86); *foris* or *foras*.
- absence**, *absenti-a*, -ae, F.; **in my absence**, *me absente* (p. 100, 5).
- absent**, *adj.*, *absens*, *absentis*; **I am a**, *absūm*, *abesse*, *absui*; **I am absent from**, *absūm ab*.
- abundance**, *cōpi-a*, -ae, F.
- abuse**, *v.*, *āb-ūt-or*, -ūt-i, -ūsus sum (p. 283, 10); = **to speak ill of**, *māledico*, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum (p. 278, 5).
- abuse**, *maledict-um*, -i, N.
- accept**, *ac-cipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum.
- acceptable to**, *grāt-us*, -a, -um (with *dat.*, p. 277, 2).
- accident**, *cās-us*, -ūs, M.; **by accident**, *cāsū*.
- accomplish**, *I*, *con-ficio*, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; *ef-ficio*, -ficere, -feci, -fec-tum.
- account** (on account of), *prep.*, *ob*, *propter* (with *acc.*).
- account**, on no, *nullo modo*.
- account** (=reckoning), *rāt-i-o*, -ōnis, F.
- accuse**, *accūs-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 281, 12).
- accustomed**, *I am*, *sōlēo*, *sōlēre*, *sōlitus sum*.
- acquit**, *ab-solvo*, -solvere, -solvi, -sōl-ūtum (p. 281, 12).
- across**, *prep.*, *trans* (with *acc.*); **go across**, *trans-eo*, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum (*acc.*).
- act**, *v.*, *āgo*, *āgere*, *ēgi*, *actum*; *fācio*, *fācere*, *feci*, *factum*.
- active**, *adj.*, *ālācer*, *ālācris*, *ālācre*; *strenu-us*, -a, -um (*adj.*).
- address**, *orāt-i-o*, -ōnis, F.; *v.*, *verba facio*; **I address you**, *apud vos verba facio*.
- admire**, *admīr-or*, -āri, -ātus sum.
- admit**, *all*, *inter omnes constat* (p. 162, 3); *conceditur*.
- admonish**, *ad-mōnēo*, -mōnēre, -mōn-ī, -mōnitum.
- adorn**, *v.*, *orn-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *dēcor-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- Adrumētum**, *Adrumēt-um*, -i, N.
- advance**, *progrēdi-or*, -grēdi, -gressus sum; *pro-cēdo*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum.
- advantage**, *commōd-um*, -i, N.
- advantage**, *it is of interest*, *refert* (p. 166, 3); *prodest* (*great* = multum).
- adverse**, *advers-us*, -a, -um (*adj.*).
- adversity**, *res adversae*.
- advice**, *consill-um*, -i, N.
- advise**, *mōn-ēo*, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.
- Aedui**, *Aedū-i*, -ōrum, M., pl.
- Aegina**, *Aegin-a*, -ae, F.
- affair**, *res*, *rēi*, F.
- afraid**, *be*, *tīm-ēo*, -ēre, -ūi, *no sup.*; *met-uo*, -ēre, -ūi, *no sup.*; *vērē-or*, -ēri, -itus sum; with *ut* or *ne* and subjunctive (p. 185, 3).
- after**, *prep.*, *post* (with *acc.*; p. 222, 4); *adv.*, *post*, *postēā* (p. 82, 3).
- after** (with verbal nouns), *post+pt* part.; **after the founding of the city**, *post urbem conditam*; or use *abl.* *abs.*, or **after that**.
- after that**, *postquam* (p. 201, 5).
- afterwards**, *adv.*, *postea*.
- again**, *adv.*, *rursus*; *iterum* (a second time); **again and again**, *saepe*, *saepe-issime*.

against, contrā (acc.), in (acc.).
 Agamemnon, Agāmēnnon, -is, M.
 age (time of life), aet-as, -ātis, F.
 age (old), sēnect-us, -ūtis, F.
 age, those of his own, aequāles
 -ium, M.
 age, a boy two years of, puer
 duos annos natus (p. 285, 6).
 agitate, perturb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 ago, abhinc; ten years ago, ab-
 hinc decem annos or annis (abl., p. 284, 5).
 agree, I, consensio; agreed by all,
 it is, constat inter omnes (p. 162, 3);
 convēnit.
 aid, auxili-um, -i, N.; come to a,
 p. 134, 1; v., ad-iūvo, -iuvāre, -iūvi,
 -iūtum (with acc.); sub-venio, -venire,
 -veni, -ventum (with dat.).
 air, aēr, aēris, M.
 alarm, pāv-or, -ōris, M.
 all, omn-is, -e; cunct-us, -a, -um; uni-
 vers-us, -a, -um; tot-us, -a, -um.
 allow, I, sīno, sīnere, sivi, sītum;
 con-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; I am
 allowed, rālī licet (p. 163, 5).
 ally, soci-us, -i, M.
 almost, tēre, paene.
 alone, sol-us, -a, -um.
 along with, unā cum.
 Alps, Alp-es, -ium, F.
 already, iam, adv.
 also, etiā (adv.), quōque (adv.);
 idem (123, 5).
 although, quamquam, quamvis, licet,
 ut (p. 196, 5-7).
 always, semper, adv.
 ambassador, lēgāt-us, -i, M.
 ambition, ambit-i-o, -ōnis, F.
 among, inter (prep. with acc.); apud
 (prep. with acc.); in (prep. with abl.).
 amount, what; use quantum + gen.
 ambushade, ambush, insidi-ae,
 -ārum, F. pl.
 ancestors, maiōr-es, -um.
 ancient, antiqu-us, -a, -um; vētus,
 -ēris; priscus¹-a, -um (adj.).

¹ Omnis, all without exception, opposed to nemo or unus; cunctus, a stronger term than omnis, "all together"; universus, all in a body, opposed to singuli; totus, the whole, as opposed to a part.

² Antiquus, old and no longer existing; vetus, old and still existing; priscus, old-fashioned; pristinus, belonging to an earlier age.

Ancus, Anc-us, -i, M.
 and, et, -que, atque, ac.
 anger, ir-a, -ae, F.
 angry (be), irascor, irasci, irātus sum;
 suc-censeo, -censere, -censui, -censum
 (with dat.).
 animal, ānim-al, -ālis, N.
 annihilate, del-ēo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.
 announce, nunti-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 another, āll-us, -a, -ud (p. 26); one
 another, inter se (p. 223).
 answer, respons-um, -i, N.; v., re-
 spond-ēo, -ēre, respondi, responsum.
 Antonius, Antonius, -i, M.
 anxious, be, cupio, cupere, cupivi
 (II), cūpitum.
 any (after negatives), quisquam, quid-
 quam; ul-us, -a, -um (132, 3); (affirma-
 tive), quivis, quaevis, quidvis; quilibet,
 quaelibet, quodlibet; quis, after si, nisi,
 ne, num, quo, quanto, (p. 188, 6, note).
 anyone, p. 132, 3.
 anywhere, usquam, adv.
 apiece, distributive numeral [p. 69, 8,
 (a)].
 appeal to, I, obtest-or, -āri, -ātus
 sum; I appeal to you not to do
 this, te obtestor ne hoc facias.
 appear, I (seem), vīdeor, vidēri, visus
 sum (p. 289, 6).
 appear, I (come in sight), ap-pāreo,
 -pārere, -pārui, -pāritum (used as pass. of
 video).
 applaud, I, plaudo, plaudere, plausi,
 plausum (dat.).
 apple, pōm-um, -i, N.
 appoint, dico, dicere, dixi, dictum;
 appoint over, praeficio, -ficere, -fecit,
 -fectum; I appoint an officer over
 the camp, lēgātum castris (dat.)
 praeficio (p. 278, 6).
 apprehension, mēt-us, -ūs, M.
 approach, advent-us, -ūs, M.; addit-us,
 -ūs, M.; v., appropinqu-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 (with dat., or ad with acc.); ag-grēdor,
 -grēdi, -gressus sum; add-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii),
 -itum.
 approved, spectāt-us, -a, -um; pro-
 bāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).
 ardor, for, studi-um, -i, N. (with
 gen.).
 aright, recte (adv.).
 Arlovistus, Arlovist-us, -i, M.
 aristocratic party, optimā-tes,
 -tium, M. pl.
 arise, orior, oriri, ortus sum.

i, M.
ue, etc.
F.
or, irasci, iratus sum;
-censui, -censum

-ālis, N.
-o, -ere, -avi, -atum.
-i-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
-a, -ud (p. 26); **one**
(p. 223).

-um, -i, N.; v., re-
ndi, responsum.
-ius, -i, M.
-pio, cupēre, cupivi

-es), quisquam, quid-
n (132, 3); (affirma-
s, quidvis; quilibet,
; quis, after si, nisi,
p. 188, 6, note).

-am, adv.
-re numeral [p. 69, 8,
-test-or, -ārī, -ātus
you not to do
oc facias.

-vīdēor, vīdēri, vīsus
in sight), ap-pāreo,
um (used as pass. of
o, plaudēre, plausi,
N.
-ēre, dixi, dictum;
-cio, -ficere, -feci,
an officer over
um castris (dat.)

-ēt-us, -ūs, M.
-us, -ūs, M.; -dīt-us,
-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
acc.); ag-grēdi-or,
-l-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii),

-us, -a, -um; pro-
-um, -i, N. (with

-st-us, -i, M.
-rty, optimā-tes,
-tus sum.

arm, brāchi-um, -i, N.; v., arm-o,
-āre, etc.

armed, armāt-us, -a, -um; p.p. of
armo; light armed: see next word.

armor, troops of light, milites
levis armaturae.

armor-bearer, armīg-er, -ērī, M.
arms, arm-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

army, exercit-us, -ūs, M. (in training);
agmen, agminis, N. (on the march);
acies, ēī, F. (in line).

around, circā, circum (prep.+acc.).
arouse, incit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

arrival, advent-us, -ūs, M.

arrive, ad-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ven-
tum.

arrive, at, per-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni,
-ventum (ad with acc.).

arrow, sagitt-a, -ae, F.

art, ars, artis, F.

as (p. 127, 2); (in place of), pro; as....
so, ut with ita in the main clause; as....
as, tam.... quam; such.... as, tālis
.... quālis; as if, velut si (195, 3).

as, as though, as if, tanquam,
quasi (p. 195, 3).

as (=while), dum (p. 261, 3).

as many as, tot quot.

as many as possible, quam plu-
rimi.

as much as, tantum quantum.

as often as, quoties, cum (204, 4).

as soon as, simul ac (or atque), (p.
208, 2).

ascertain, cognosco, cognoscere, cog-
nōvi, cognitum.

ashamed, be, pudet, ēre, ūit (or
-itum est); I am ashamed of my
folly, me stultitiae meae pudet (p.
165, 1).

Asia, As-ia, -ae, F.

ask, I (you a question), te rogo or
interrogo; ex or a te quaero (quaerere,
quaesivi, quaesitum).

ask, I (request, beg, you), te rogo, oro,
(-āre, -āvi, -ātum); abs te pēto (pētere,
petivi, petitum).

ask for, I, posco, poscere, pōposci.

assault, oppugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

assemble, v.a., convōc-o, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum; v.n., con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni,
-ventum (intr.).

assembly, confri-o, -ōnis, F.; convent-
us, -ūs, M.; concili-um, -i, N.

assert (as a fact), affirmo, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

assist, sublēv-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (acc.),
sub-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum (dat.);
ad-lūvo, -lūvāre, -lūvi, -lūtum (acc.).

at, ad (prep. with acc.); apud (prep.
with acc.); orlocative. See p. 85, 3. After
verb of motion, say to (p. 85, 1): come
to me at Rome, me Romam vēni; of
time, use abl.

Athenians, Athēniens-es, -ium, M.

Athens, Athēn-ae, -ārum, F.

attack, v., ag-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus
sum; (suddenly), ad-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus
sum; (a city), oppugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
impet-us, -ūs (on=in+acc.) M.

attain to, per-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni,
-ventum (ad).

attempt, v., con-or, -ārī, -ātus sum;
tempt-o or tent-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; nitor,
niti, nisus or nixus sum; incept-um, -i,
N.; conāt-us, -ūs, M. or cōnāt-um, -i, N.

attribute, attrib-ūo, -nēre, -nī, -ūtum;
tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributum.

authority, pōtest-as, -ātis, F.; auc-
torit-as, -ātis, F.

autumn, autumn-us, -i, M.

auxillaries, auxili-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

avarice, āvariti-a, -ae, F.

avenge, ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum.

avert from, I, prōhib-ēo, -ēre, -ui,
-itum.

avoid, I, dē-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgi,
fūgitum (acc.).

avoid, I (a danger), vit-o, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

away from, ā or āb, with abl.

B.

backs, to turn their backs in
fight, terga in fugam dare (dō, dāre,
dēdi, dātum); terga ver-to, -tēre, -ti,
-sum.

bad, māl-us, -a, -um (comp., pēior;
sup., pessimus); imprōb-us, -a, -um.

badly, mālē; comp., pēius; sup.,
pessimē.

baggage, impēdi-ment-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

bane, pernici-es, -ēī, F.

banish, I, ex civitate pello or expello;
in exilium pello (pellere, pēphi, pulsus).

banishment, exil-um, -i, N.

bank, rip-a, -ae, F.

banquet, epul-um, -i, N. pl., epulae,
F. (p. 242).

barbarian, barbār-us, -a, -um (adj.
and n.).

barbarous, crudel-is, -e (adj.).

bark, v., latro-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; (of a tree) cortex, corticis, M., liber, libri, M.

base, turp-is, -e (adj.).

baseness, turpitud-o, -inis, F.

battle, proeli-um, -i, N.; pugn-a, -ae, F.; to begin a battle, proelium committere; in battle, in b. array, in acie.

be, sum, esse, fui (p. 24).

beam, trabs, trabis, F.

bear, urs-us, -i, M.; v., fero, ferre, tuli, lätum; port-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

beautiful, pulch-er, -ra, -rum (comp., pulchrior; sup., pulcherrimus); amoenus, a, -um (of scenery).

because, quod, quia, quoniam (p. 198); often expressed by part. (p. 220, 2).

become, fio, fieri, factus sum.

becomes, it, dēcet, dēcēre, dēcūt (acc.); est with gen. (p. 124, 1).

beech, fāgus, -i, F.

before, ante (prep. with acc.); conj., antequam, priusquam (p. 201, 5); adv., ante, antea, antehac (p. 82, 3).

beg, I, rōg-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum. See ask.

begin, I, in-clipo, -clipere, -cepi, -cep-tum; coep-i, -isse; **begin a battle**, proelium committere.

beginning, the, init-um, -i, N.; at the beginning of winter, prima hieme, inita hieme.

behalf of, on, pro (prep. with abl.).

behold, aspicio, aspicere, aspexi aspectum.

behind, post, prep. with acc.

Belgae, Belg-ae, -arum, M. pl.

belief, opini-o, -onis, F.

believe, I, cred-o, -äre, -idi, -itum, with dat. (p. 105, 9).

belong, per-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, no sup.; see p. 124, 1; **belonging**: say which belonged.

beloved, car-us, -a, -um (with dat.; = dear to).

beneficial, salutar-is, -e; util-is, -e (adj.).

benefit you, I, tibi prōsum (prodesse, profui).

besiege, I (by blockade), ob-sidēo, -sidēre, -adi, -essum; (by attack), op-pugn-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

best, p. 57, 4.

bestow, larg-ior, -iri, -itus suū.

betake myself to, I, me confero ad.

betray, I, pro-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum.

better, melior (comp. of bonus); it would have been better, satius or melius fuit.

between, inter (acc.).

beyond, prep., ultrā, trans, extrā (with acc.).

bid, iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum.

bill, rōgāti-o, -ōnis, F.

bird, av-is, -is, M. or F.

bitter, acerb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

black, niger, nigra, nigrum; āter, ātra, ātrum (adj.).

blame, culp-a, -ae, F.; v., culp-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; vituper-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

bleeding, bōn-um, -i, N.

blind, caec-us, -a, -um (adj.).

blood, sangu-is, -inis, M.; crū-or, -ōris, M.

bloody, cruent-us, -a, -um (adj.).

blot out, dēl-ēo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.

boat, linter, lintris, F.

body, corp-us, -ōris, M.

body-guard, sātell-es, -itis, M.

bold, audax, audācis (adj.).

boldly, audāciter or audacter, adv.

bond, vincul-um, -i, N.

book, liber, libri, M.

booty, praed-a, -ae, F.

born, be, nascor, nasci, natus sum.

both, uterque, utraque, utrumque (p. 132); ambo, amba, ambo (like duo, 68, 4).

both . . . and, et . . . et, quē . . . quē.

bound (in a geographical sense), continēo, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum.

boundaries, fin-es, -um (pl.), M.

boy, puer, M.; from a boy, a puero.

bow, arc-us, -ūs, M.

branch, rām-us, -i, M.

brandish, iact-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

brave, fort-is, -e; **bravely**, fortiter.

bravery, fortitud-o, -inis, F.

break, frango, frangere, frēgi, fractum; **b. through**, per-fringo, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum; **b. one's word**, fidem fallo (fallere, fefelli, falsum).

bridge, pons, pontis, M.

briefly, breviter; **as b. as possible**, quam brevissime.

brigand, latro, -onis, M.

lo, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum.

(comp. of bonus); it
en better, satius or

(acc.).

ultrā, trans, extrā

e, iussi, iussum.

is, F.

. or F.

-a, -um (adj.).

nigra, nigrum; āter,

-ae, F.; v., culp-o,
vitupér-o, -āre, -āvi,

-i, N.

-um (adj.).

-inis, M.; crū-or,

-s, -a, -um (adj.).

-ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.

is, F.

is, M.

cell-es, -itis, M.

cis (adj.).

or audacter, adv.

-i, N.

M.

e, F.

nasos, natus sum.

aque, utrumque (p.

nbo (like duo, 68, 4).

... et, que... que.

aphical sense), con-

es, -um (pl.), M.

m a boy, a pūero.

f.

is, M.

-āre, -āvi, -ātum.

bravely, fortiter.

-o, -inis, F.

angere, frēgi, frac-

er-fringo, -fringere,

ne's word, fidem

(sum).

is, M.

as b. as possi-

is, M.

bright, clār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

bring, I, dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductum
(a person); affero, afferre, attūli, allātum
(a thing); bring up, erūdīo, -īre, -īvi,
-ītum; bring back word, rēnūnti-o,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum; bring a person be-
fore you, ad te aliquem adducere;
bring forward a bill, rogationem
fero (ferre, tūli, lātum).

Britain, Britanni-a, -ae, F.

Britons, Britanni-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

broad, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

brother, frāter, frātris, M.

Brundisium, Brundisi-um, -i, N.

Brutus, Brut-us, -i, M., one of the
conspirators against Caesar.

build, aedific-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

building, aedifici-um, -i, N.

burden, ōnus, ōneris, N.

burdensome, mōlest-us, -a, -um;

grāv-is, -e (adj.).

burn, crēm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; incen-

do, incendere, incendi, incensum.

bushel, mōdi-us, -i, M.

business (the), rēs, rēf, F.; negō-

tium, -i, N.

but, sed; verum (emphatic); (only),

tantum, mōdo; (unless), nisi; (except),

prae-ter (prep. with acc.).

butcher, trucid-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

buy, ēmo, ēmere, ēmi, emptum.

by (of a person after a passive verb), ā

or āb (p. 71, 2); dat. of agent (173, 4);

abl. of means (p. 71, 3); per (prep. with

acc.), of indir. agent; by day, interdiū;

by night, noctū.

C.

Caesar, Caes-ar, -āris, M.

calamity, cālāmit-as, -ātis, F.

call, vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; call to-

gether, convōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

calling (after forbid), use inf.

call out, evōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

call by name, appell-o, -āre, -āvi,

-ātum.

calm, tranquill-us, -a, -um (adj.).

calmness, tranquillit-as, -ātis, F.

camp, castra, -ōrum (pl. N.).

can, possum, posse, pōtūi (p. 142);

(=may), licet, impers. with a dat. (p.

162, 3; 163, 5); 130 (a), (in deliberative

questions).

candid, lib-er, -era, -erum (adj.).

candidate for, I am a, pēt-o, -ēre,

-īvi, -ītum.

candidly, lib-ere, aperte, adv.

Cannae, Cann-ae, -ārum (pl.), F.

cannot, non possum; nequ-ēo, -īre,

-īvi (or īi), -ītum.

capital, cāpūt, cāpitis, N.

caprice, libid-o, -inis, F.

capture: use take.

care, cūr-a, -ae, F.

careful for, I am, cāveo (cāvere,

cāvi, cautum); I am careful for you,

tibi caveo.

carefully, diligenter, adv.

carry (=bear), fero, ferre, tūli, lā-

tum; port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; carry

on war, bellum gēro (gerere, gessi,

gestum); carry out, ex-sēquor, -sequi,

-sēcūtus sum; con-ficio, -ficere, -feci,

-fectum; carry across, transport-o,

-āre, -āvi, -ātum; carry out of the

country, export-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

Cassius, Cassi-us, -i, M.

cast, con-icco, -icere, -icci, -iectum;

cast away, ab-icco, -icere, -icci,

-iectum.

Casticus, Casti-cus, -i, M.

catch, cāpio, cāpere, cēpi, captum.

cattle (in general), pēc-us, -oris, N.;

(of a single head), pēcus, pēcudis, F.

cause, caus-a, -ae, F.; v., ef-ficio,

-ficere, -feci, -fectum; with ut+subj. for

Eng. to (p. 181, 3).

cavalry, equit-es, -um, M. pl.; adj.,

equest-er, -ris, -re.

cave, antr-um, -i, N.; cāv-um, -i, N.

cease, I, dē-sino, -sinere, -sivi (si),

-situm; de-sisto, -sistere, -stisti, no sup.

(with abl.; p. 158, 2).

Cecrops, Cecrops, Cēcrops, M.

celebrated, clār-us, -a, -um; insign-

-is, -e (adj.); the celebrated Cicero,

Cicero, vir clarissimus or ille C. (adjs.

are not added to proper names).

central, medi-us, -a, -um (adj.); a

central place, locus medius.

centurion, centūrī-o, -ōnis, M.

century, centūrī-a, -ae, F.

certain (sure), cert-us, -a, -um (adj.).

certain (one), a, quidam, quaedam,

quoddam.

chain, catēn-a, -ae, F.; vinetūl-um, -i, N.

chance, cās-us, -ūs, M.; fortūn-a, -ae,

F.; by chance, forte, cāsū.

change, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

n., commutātī-o, -ōnis, F.

character, turn by a dependent

clause (p. 181, 1).

- character** (natural), ingēni-um, -i, N.; indol-es, -is, F.
character (good), virt-us, -ūtis, F.
character (mode of life), mōr-es, -um, M., pl.; **the highest character**, mores optimi.
character, of the same c. as, talis...qualis.
characteristic of, it is: see p. 124, l.
charge (accusation), crīmen, -inis, N.
charge (of troops), inapēt-us, M.; **make a charge**, in-vādo, -vādēre, -vāsi, -vasum; impetum facere (on=in).
charged, I am (with), accūs-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 281, 12).
chariot, essēd-um, -i, N.; curr-us, -ūs, M.
charioteer, essēdārī-us, -i, M.
check, mōdēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (with dative); tempēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (with dative); coer-co, -ēre, -cī, -itum.
cheer, clām-or, -ōris, M.
cheer, v. a., hort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.
cheerful, hilār-is, -e; ālāc-er, -ris, -re (adj.).
cheerfully, facīle, adv.
cherish, tuōr, tuērī, tūltus sum.
chief, princeps, principis, M. (n. and adj.).
child, puer, pūerī, M.
children, puerī, M.; libēr-i, -ōrum, M. pl.
choose, I (like), mihi libet (impers.).
choose, I, clīgo, clīgēre, clēgi, elcctum; cre-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
Cicero, Ciccō-o, -ōnis, M.
Cimon, Cim-on, -ōnis, M.
circumstances, res, rēi, F.; **I yield to circumstances**, tempōri cedo.
citadel, arx, arcis, F.
citizen, civ-is, -is, M. and F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
civil, civil-is, -e (adj.).
civilization, hūmānit-as, -ātis, F.
civilized, hūmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).
clamor for, flāgit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (acc.).
class, gēn-us, -ēris, N.
clear, cert-us, -a, -um; mānifest-us, -a, -um (adj.).
clear, it is, appār-et, -ēre, -uit; mānifestum est (p. 100, 1); **I clear myself of the charge**; me de crimine (or simply crimine) purgo.
clemency, clēmētī-a, -ae, F.
clerk, scrib-a, -ae, M.
client, my, hic (p. 178, 2).
cloak, tōg-a, -ae, F.; **the military cloak**, palūdāment-um, -i, N.
close, I, claudo, claudēre, clausi, clausum; **close up**, inter-clūdo, -clūdēre, clūsi, -clūsum.
close to, prope ad (acc.).
close at hand, prope, iuxtā.
clothe, vesti-o, -īre, -īvi (II), -itum.
clothing, vestit-us, -ūs, M.; vest-is, -is, F.
cloud, nūb-es, -is, F.
coast, ōr-a, -ae, F.; **sea coast**, ora maritima; lit-us, -ōris, N.
coast along, v., praeter-vēhor, -vēhi, -vectus sum (with acc.).
cohort, cōhor-a, -tis, F.
cold, frigid-us, -a, -um (adj.); frigus, -ōris, N.
colleague, collēg-a, -ae, M.
collect, compār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
colony, colōnī-a, -ae, F.
column, cōlumn-a, -ae, F.
come, vēnio, vēnīre, vēni, ventum; **c. away**, discēdo, -cedēre, -cessi, -cessum.
command, n., impērī-um, -i, N.; impērāt-um, -i, N.
command, I, impēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (with dat.); (be at head of), praesum (with dat.).
commander, impērāt-or, -ōris, M.; praefect-us, -i, M.; dux, ducis, M.
commence, in-clipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum; coep-i, -isse.
commencement, initī-um, -i, M.
commit, I (a crime), facinus ad-mitto (-mittēre, -misi, -missum).
common, commūn-is, -e, adj.
commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, F.
communicate, I (= impart to), comunico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cum).
companion, soci-us, -i, M.; sōdāl-is, -is, M.; cōm-es, -itis, M.
company with, in, cum (prep. with abl.).
compare, con-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, col-lātum.
compassion, misēricordi-a, -ae, F.
compel, cōgo, cōgēre, cōēgi, cōactum.
complain, quēr-or, quērī, questus sum.
complaint, p. 219, (g).

nti-a, -ae, F.
M.
178, 2).
F, the military
m, -i, N.
udère, clausi, clau-
er-clūdo, -clūdēre,
(acc.).
rope, iuxtā.
-ivi (ii), -itum.
-ūs, M.; vest-is,
sea coast, ora
N.
acter-vēhor, -vēhi,
F.
-um (adj.); frig-
-ae, M.
-are, -āvi, -ātum.
F.
-ae, F.
vni, ventum;
re, -cessi, -cessum.
pēri-um, -i, N.;
-o, -āre, -āvi,
t head of), prae-
-t-ōr, -ōris, M.;
ducis, M.
-cipere, -cēpi,
nti-um, -i, M.
facinus ad-mitto
-e, adj.
republica, reipub-
-mpart to), com-
(cum).
-i, M.; sōdāl-is,
cum (prep. with
erre, -tūli, col-
ordi-a, -ae, F.
cōgē, cōactum.
quēri, questus

comrade, commilit-o, -ōnis, M.
conceal, cel-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (92, 3).
concerning, de (prep. with abl.).
concerns, it, pertinet ad (with acc.);
p. 166, 3.
condemn, condemn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
(for=gen.).
condition (lot), fortūna, -ae, F.;
(terms), condici-o, -ōnis, F.
conference, I have a, collōquor,
-lōqui, -lōcūtus sum.
confess, fātōr, fātōri, fassus sum,
confiteor, -fītōri, -fessus sum.
confidence, fiduci-a, -ae, F.; fides,
-ei, F.
confidence in, I have, confido,
-fidere, -fideus sum; fidem alicui habeo.
congratulate, I c. you on this,
hoc (acc.), ob hanc rem, de hac re, tibi
gratūl-or (-āri, -ātus sum).
conquer, vīco, vīcēre, vīcī, victum;
sūper-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
conquered, victus, -a, -um (p.p. of
vīco).
conqueror, vict-or, -ōris, M.
consciousness, sens-us, -ūs, M.;
conscienti-a, -ae, F.
consent of Caesar, with the,
Caesare volente.
consequence, it is of c. to me,
meā interest or refert (p. 166, 3).
consider, I, arbit-r-or, -āri, -ātus sum;
(hold, think), habeo, duco.
consist of, consist-o, -ēre, -stiti (in+
abl.).
consolation to me, it is a great,
magno solatio mihi est (p. 134, 1).
conspiracy, consūrati-o, -ōnis, F.
conspire, consūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
consul, cons-ul, -ūlis, M.
consulship, consulat-us, -ūs; in the
c. of Caesar, Caesare consule.
consult, consulo, consūlere, consūlui,
consultum (with acc.).
content(ed), content-us, -ū, -um (with
abl.), (p. 233, 9).
continent, continēn-s, -tis (supply
terra).
contrary to, contra, prep. with acc.
conversation, serm-ō, -ōnis, M.; I
have a conversation with you,
tecum collōquor.
convoke, convōco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
Corinth, Cōrīnth-us, -i, F.
corn, frument-um, -i, N.

costs, it, stat (p. 150, 1).
cottage, cās-a, -ae, F.
council, concili-um, -i, F.
could: see can (p. 163, 5, note).
count, I (=I number), nūmēro, -āre,
-āvi, -ātum; (=I hold), habeo, -ēre, -ūi,
-itum; dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductum.
country, one's, pātri-a, -ae, F.
country, the (=the state), respub-
lica, reipublicae, F.; civit-as, -ātis, F.
country (as distinct from the town),
rus, rūris, N.; from the country,
rure (abl.); to the country, rus (acc.);
in the country, rūri (locative; p. 86).
countryman, civ-is, -is, M.
courage, virt-us, -ūtis, F.; fortitūd-o,
-inis, F.
course, I take this, haec facio.
court, aul-a, -ae, F.; iūdic-um, -i, N.
cover, tēgo, tēgere, texi, tectum.
coward, cowardly, ignāv-us, -a,
-um; timid-us, -a, -um (adj.).
cowardice, ignāvi-a, -ae, F.
crave for, I, dēsidēr-o, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.
credible, it is scarcely, vix credi
potest.
credit, fām-a, -ae, F.
crime, facin-us, -ōris, N.; scēl-us,
-ēris, N.
criminal, scēlērāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).
crisis, discrim-en, -inis, N.; temp-us,
-ōris, N.
cross, I, transēo, -ire, -ivi (or -ii),
-itum (acc.).
crowd, multitūd-o, -inis, F.; turb-a,
-ae, F.; v., circum-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī,
-fusus (se).
crown, cōrōn-a, -ae, F.; (=a kingdom),
regnum, -i, N.
cruel, crudel-is, -e; saev-us, -a, -um,
(adj.).
cruelly, crudeliter; saeve, adv.
cruelty, crudelit-as, -ātis, F.; saevi-
tia, -ae, F.
Cyrus, Cīr-us, -ōris, M.; v., clām-o,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum.
cultivate, cōlo, cōlōre, cōlūi, cultum.
culture, cult-us, -ūs, M.; humanit-as,
-ātis, F.
Cures, Cūr-ēs, -um, F.
Curtius, Cūri-us, -i, M.
custom, mos, mōris, M.; consuetūd-o,
-inis, F.
cut, sēco, sēcāre, sēcōi, sectum.

D.

dagger, pūgī-o, -ōnis, M.; sic-a, -ae, F.

daily, quotidie; with comparatives or words denoting increase or diminution, in dies.

danger, pēriculū-m, -i, M.

dangerous, pēriculōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

dare, audēo, audēre, ausus sum.

daring, audax, audācis (adj.).

dark (metaphorically applied to crime), ātrox, ātrōcis (adj.).

dark (literally), ater, atra, atrum; obscur-us, -a, -um.

dart, tel-um, -i, N.; iaculū-m, -i, N.

daughter, fili-a, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

day (opposed to night), dies, diē, M. or F.; (opposed to darkness), lux, lūcis, F.; **daybreak**, prima lux; **day after day**, diem ex die; **the day before**, pridē; **for the day**, in diem.

deadly, mortī-fer, fēra, fērum (adj.).

dear, cār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

death, mors, mortis, F.

debt, aes alienū; gen., aēis alieni.

deceive, I, decipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.

decide on, I (resolve), constitūo, -stitūere, -stitūi, -stitūtum (inf.); statuo, stātūere, stātūi, stātūtum; (pass judgment on), iudic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; de-cerno, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum (de).

decision, iudici-um, -i, N.

declare, dico, dicere, dixi, dictum.

declare (war) I, indic-o, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum.

decree, I, v., dē-cerno, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum; decretū-m, -i, N.

deed, faciū-us, -ōris, N.; fact-um, -i, N.

deep, alt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

defeat, n., clād-es, -is, F.

defeat, v., vinco, vincere, vici, victum; super-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

defend, defendo, defendere, defendi, defensum.

defile, n., angustī-ae, -arum, F. (pl.); salt-us, -ūs, M.

delay, v., mōr-or, -āri, -ātus sum (tr. and intr.); cunct-or, -āri, -ātus sum; mōra, -ae, F.

deliberate, delibē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

deliberation, there is need of, opus est consulto (p. 166, 2).

delight, I, delect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (trans.); gaudēo, gaudere, gavisus sum (intr.).

delightful, amoenus, -a, -um (of scenery); pulch-er, -ra, -rum.

deliver (hand down), tradō, tradere, tradidi, traditum; reddo, -dere, -didi, -ditum; (free), libē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

deliver a speech, orationem habere; **after the speech was d.**, abl. abs. (220).

Delphi, Delph-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

demand, postul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; flagito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; posco, poscere, poposci, no sup. (p. 92, 3).

Demosthenes, Demosthēnes, -is, M.

dense, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

deny, I, nēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

depart, I (=go away), ab-eo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum; dis-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum.

descend, de-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum.

desert, desēro, -sērere, -sērui, -sertum.

deserter, transfūg-a, -ae, M.; perfūg-a, -ae, M.

deserve, I, mēreō, mēreri, meritum sum; mēreo, mērere, mērui, meritum.

deserving of, dignus, -a -um (with abl.).

design, n., consiliū-m, -i, N.

designedly, consulto, adv.

desire, I, cupio, cupere, cupivi (ii), cupitum.

desirous, be d. of, cup-lo, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itum (+inf.).

despair of, I, despēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum (acc.).

despatch, litter-ae, -arum (pl. F.); v., mitto.

despise, con-temno, -temnere; tempei, -temptum; de-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum.

despoil, spoli-o, -āre, etc.

despot, domin-us, -i, M.

despotism, dominat-us, -ūs, M.

destined, fatāl-is, -e (adj.).

destiny, fat-um, -i, N.

destitution, ēgest-as, -ātis, F.

destroy, delē-o, -ere, -āvi, -ētum; vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

destruction, extirp-um, -i, N.; pernici-es, -iē, F.

detain, retinēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum.

deter, deterr-ēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.

-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum
gavävis sum

enus, -a, -um (of
a, -rum.

wn), trädö, trädäre,
eddo, -däre, -didi,
-äre, -ävi, -ätum;
orätonemi habäre;
was d., abl. abs.

rum, M. pl.

-äre, -ävi, -ätum;
m; posco, poscere,
3).

emosthènes, -is, M.
-um (adj.).

-äre, -ävi, -ätum.

away), ab-ö, -äre,
do, -cedere, -cessi,

-o, -scendere, -scendi,

-äre, -säräi, -sertum.

-g-a, -ae, M.; per-

or, möreri, meritus
mörüi, meritum.

enus, -a -um (with
um, -i, N.

lto, adv.

cüpäre, cüplvi (II),

of, cüp-lo, -äre,

espär-o, -äre, -ävi,

-äre, -ärum (pl. F.);

-temnäre; tempai,
-spicere, -spexi,

e, etc.

, M.

-ut-us, -üs, M.

e (adj.).

N.

-as, -ätis, F.

-äre, -ävi, -ätum;

um, -i, N.; per-

-näre, -tinüi, -ten-

-e, -üi, -itum.

determine, con-stütö, -stütäre, -stü-
täl, -stütüm (+inf.).

devastate, vast-o, -äre, -ävi, -atum.

devote myself to, I, operam do
(with dat.).

devour, dövör-o, -äre, -ävi, -atum.

dictator, dictät-or, -öris, M.

did: see do.

did the boy wound? Use perf. of
wound.

die, mörior, möri, mortuus sum.

differ, differö, differre, distül, no
sup.; to differ from each other,
inter se differre.

difference to us, it makes no,
nihil nosträ interest (p. 166, 3).

differently from, aliter ac.

difficult, difficil-is, -e (adj.).

difficulty, difficult-as, -ätis, F.

diligence, diligent-i-a, -ae, F.

diligent, diligen-s, -tis (adj.).

diligently, diligenter.

din, ströp-it-us, -üs, M.

dinner, cön-a, -ae, F.

direct, iübö, iübäre, fussi, iussum
(acc.); impär-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum (dat.).

directions, in both, utrimque; in
different d., diverse; in all d.,
undique.

disagree, I, dis-sentio, -sentire, -sensi,
-sensum.

disagreement, dissensi-o, -önis, F.

disaster, cäs-us, -üs, M.; cälämät-as,
-ätis, F.

discharge the duties of, I,
fungor, fungi, functus sum (p. 116).

discipline, disciplin-a, -ae, F.

discourse, serm-o, -önis, M.

discover: see ascertain.

disease, morb-us, -i, M.

disembark, I (act.), ex-pöno, -pönäre,
-pösi, -pösitum; neut., egrädior, egrädi,
egressus sum.

disgrace, ignömíni-a, -ae, F.; turpi-
tüd-o, F., -inis.

disgraceful, turp-is, -e (adj.).

dismay, päv-or, -öris, M.

dismiss, di-mitto, -mittere, -misi,
-missum.

displease, dis-plícö, -plícäre, -plícui,
-plícitum.

disposition, ingéní-um, -i, N.; in-
döl-es, -is, F.

dissatisfied, I am d. with my-
self, mei me poenitet (p. 165, 1).

dissemble, dissimäl-o, -äre, -ävi,
-ätum.

dissension, diasensi-o, -önis, F.

distance, spätí-um, -i, N.

distance from, I am at a, ab-sum,
-esse, -fui (ab).

distant, longinqu-us, -a, -um (adj.);
be d., absum.

distinguished, clär-us, -a, -um (adj.).

district, régi-o, -önis, F.; lóc-us, -i,
M.; pl. löca, -örum, N. (p. 242).

distrust, dif-fido, -fidere, -fisis sum
(with a dat.).

disturb, turb-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

ditch, foss-a, -ae, F.

Divico, Divic-o, -önis, M.

divide, di-vido, -videre, -visei, -visum.

divine, divin-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Divitiacus, Divitiäc-us, -i, M.

do, fácio, fácäre, feci, factum (p. 216, 1).

dog, cánis, -is, M. or F.

doom, fät-um, -i, N.

door, iänü-a, -ae, F.

doubt, v., dübit-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum;
there is no doubt that, non est
dubium quin (p. 188, 6).

doubtful, dübi-us, -a, -um (adj.).

drag, I, trähö, trähäre, traxi, tractum.

draw, I, trähö. See above.

draw up a law, I, legem scribo,
(scribere, scripsi, scriptum).

draw up an army, I, aciem in-
struo (inströere, instruxi, instructum);
after the army was drawn up,
acie instructä (p. 100, 5).

dread, I, réformid-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

dreadful, ätrox, ätröcis (adj.).

dress, vest-is, -is, F.; vestit-us, -üs, M.

drink, bib-o, -äre, bibi.

drinking, good for, utilis bibendo
(p. 60, 2).

drive, pella, pelläre, päpüi, pulsum;
ägo, ägere, ägi, actum.

due, use pass. of déb-äo, -äre, -äi, -itum

during (= in), abl. (82, 1); (all through),
acc., p. 82, 4; d. the reign, p. 100, 5.

dust, pulv-is, -eris, M.

duty, offici-um, -i, N.; see p. 124.

dwelt, häbit-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

dwelling, aedifici-um, -i, N.; tect-um,
-i, N.

E.

each (one), quisque (never first in sentence), quaeque, quodque (adj.) and quidque (subst.); unusquisque; (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (p. 132); inter se (p. 223).

each other, alius... alius; alter... alter (p. 20); inter se (p. 223).

eager for, avidus, -a, -um (with gen.).

eagle, áquill-a, -ae, F.

eagle-bearer, áquillif-er, -eri, M.

early, mātūr-us, -a, -um; in early spring, vère novo.

earth, the, terr-a, -ae, F.

easily, facill-e.

east wind, Eur-us, -i, M.

easy, facill-is, -o (p. 57, 2).

eat (p. 160).

educate, edúc-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

effort, cōnāt-us, -ūs, M.; cōnāt-um, -i, N.

Egypt, Aegypt-us, -i, F.

eight, octo.

eighteen, duodeviginti.

either... or, aut... aut; vel... vel.

elect, crê-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; be

elected, fio, fieri, factus sum.

elephant, éléphant-us, -i, M.

eloquence, éloquenti-a, -ae, F.

eloquent, elô-quens (-quentior, -quentissimus).

else, or, aut.

embark (trans.), in navem imponere; (intr.) navem conscendere.

emergency, temp-us, -oris, N.

empire, impéri-um, -i, N.

employ, ütör, üti, üsus sum (p. 233, 10).

empty, inän-is, -e; vácü-us, -a, -um (adj.).

encamp, castra pôno (pônere, pôsui, pôsitum); castra lôco (äre, ävi, ätum).

enact (a law), promulg-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; perfero.

encourage, adhort-or, -äri, -ätus sum.

end, fin-is, -is, M.; **at the e. of summer**, extremâ aestâte; v., con-fic-o,

¹ One alternative excluding the other: as, Aut scribit aut legit, he is either writing or reading.

² Giving a choice: as, Par erat vel möribus vel fortunâ, he was equal either in character or in fortune.

-ficere, -fäci, -fectum (tr.); fin-lo, -ire, -ivi, -itum (tr. and intr.).

endeavor, I, cön-or, -äri, -ätus sum; nitor, niti, nisus or nixus sum (p. 216, 3).

endowed with, praedit-us, -a, -um (with abl.).

endure, tölér-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

enemy (private), inimic-us, -i, M.; (public), host-is, -is, M.

engage in battle, proelium com-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

engine (of war), torment-um, -i, N.

enjoy, fröör, fräti, fructus sum (with abl., p. 116); (= to have), habeo.

enmity, inimicit-i-a, -ae, F.

enough, sätis, adv.

enquire: see inquire.

enquiry, gerund of enquire.

enroll (soldiers), con-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum.

enter, in-ëo, -ire, -ivi, -itum (acc., p. 277, 1).

enterprise, res, rei, F.

entirely, tot-us, -a, -um (p. 26, 1).

entrust, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

enumerate, önümér-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

envoy, légät-us, -i, M.

envy, n., invidi-a, -ae, F.; in-vidéo, -videre, -vidi, -visum (dat., p. 278, foot note).

Ephesus, Ephés-us, -i, F.

equal, aequ-us, -a, -um; pār, pāris (= equal to); I make e., aequ-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

equally, pärlter, aequè.

err, I, err-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

error, err-or, -oris, M.

escape, ef-fugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum.

establish, confirm-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; státuo, státuere, státui, státutum.

estimate, aestim-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

estimation, aestimät-i-o, -onis, F.

eternal, sempitern-us, -a, -um (adj.).

even, etiam; quôque (used after an emphatic word); before an adj., vel; not...even, ne...quidem (with the emphasized word put between); ne unus quidem, not even one.

evening, vesp-er, -ëris, M.; in the e., vespéri (or -e).

ever, unquam.

(tr.); fin-*io*, -*ire*,
-*er*).

or, -*ari*, -*atus* sum;
us sum (p. 216, 3).

gradit-us, -a, -um

e, -*avi*, -*atum*.

inimic-us, -i, M.;

o, proelium com-
missum.

ment-um, -i, N.

fructus sum (with
e), habeo.

-ae, F.

ire.

enquire.

a-scribo, -scribere,

-i-vi, -itum (acc.,

F.

-um (p. 26, 1).

-mittere, -misi,

-ero, -are, -avi,

I.

-ae, F.; in-vidéo,

lat., p. 278, foot

-i, F.

-um; pār, pāris

e, aequ-o, -are,

us.

-atum.

-ere, -fngi, -fngi-

-are, -avi, -atum;

-atum.

-are, -avi, -atum.

-i-o, -onis, F.

-a, -um (adj.).

(used after an

adj. vel; not

th the empha-

s unusquidam,

s, M.; in the

every (=all), omni-is, -e; quisque,
quaque, quidque or quodque (p. 132).

every day. See daily.

evident, manifest-us, -a, -um (adj.);
it is e., appar-et, -ere, -uit.

exact (punishment), sūmo, sūmere,
sumpsi, sumptum.

excellent, optim-us, -a, -um; excel-
len-s, -tis (adj.).

except, praeter (acc.).

except (to), nisi (ut).

excessive, nimis-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exchange for, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -
ātum (p. 150, 1, note).

excite, ex-cito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

execute, con-ficio, -ficere, -feci,
-fectum.

exercise, v., exerc-ēo, -ēre, -tū, -itum.

exhort, hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

exile, ex-ul, -ilis, M.; exili-um, -i, N.

(of a condition).

exist, I, sum, esse, fui.

expect, ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

expedient, utilis, -e (adj.); it is

expedient (p. 163, 6).

expediently, ūtilit-as, -ātis, F.

expel, pello, -ēre, pepuli, pulsum.

experience, ūs-us, -ūs, M.; experi-
ēnti-a, -ae, F.

explain, ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsi,
-positum.

extent, p. 69, 9.

extortion, repetund-ae, -arum, F. pl.
[lit. of things that should be got back
(repeto); supply rerum].

extreme, extrēm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exult, exult-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

eye, ocul-us, -i, M.; I saw it with
my own eyes, ipse id vidi.

F.

face, ūs, ōris, N.; faci-es, -ei, F.;
vult-us, -us, M.

fact, rēs, rei, F. (p. 181, 2).

faction, facti-o, -onis, F.

fail, de-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -factum
(used with or without acc.); de-sum,
-esse, -fui (with dat.).

fair, pulch-er, -ra, -rum; amoen-us,
-a, -um (of scenery).

faith, fid-es, -ei, F.; I put faith in
you, tibi fidem habeo.

faithful, fidel-is, -e (adj.).

faithfulness, fid-es, -ei, F.

fall, cado, cadere, cecidi, cāsum; fall
in battle, per-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum,
fall into, in-cido, -cidere, -cidi (with in
and acc.); fall headlong, praecipit-o,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum; fall into ruin, cor-
ruo, corrūere, corruī.

false (of persons), mend-ax, -ācis;
(of things), fals-us, -a, -um; fict-us, -a,
-um.

falsehood, mendāci-um, -i, N.; to
tell a falsehood, mentior, mentiri,
mentitus sum.

falsely, speak, ment-ior, -iri, -itus
sum.

fame, fām-a, -ae, F.; glōri-a, F.

family, n., famili-a, -ae, F.

family, domesti-cus, -ca, -cum (adj.).

famine, fām-es, -is, F.

famous, praecelār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

far (=distant), longinqu-us, -a, -um
(adj.).

far, by, multo.

far off, adv., prōcul, longe.

far and wide, late.

farmer, agricōl-a, -ae, M.

farm-house, vill-a, -ae, F.

farther, ulterior, -is (from ultra).

fate, fortuna, -ae, F.; sor-s, -tis, F.

fatal, perniciōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

father, pater, patris, M.

father-in-law, sōcer, sōcērī, M.

fault, culp-a, -ae, F.; viti-um, -i, N.

fault, I find f. with, culp-o, -āre,
-āvi, -ātum.

fault, I commit a, pecc-o, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

favor (=kindness), bēnēfici-um, -i,
N.

favor, I, fāvō, fāvere, fāvi, fautum
(with dat., p. 278, foot note).

fear, m., mēt-us, -us, M.; tim-or, -oris,
M.

fear, I, v., mētio, mētōere, mētū, no
supine; timēo, timēre, timēi, mo sup.;
verēor, verēri, veritus sum.

feast, cēn-a, -ae, F.; epul-um, -i, N.;
pl., epulae, -arum, F. (p. 242).

feather, pinn-a, -ae, F.

features, vult-us, -us, M.

feel, sentio, sentire, sensi, sensui;

feeling, anim-us, -i, M.

fellow-citizen, civ-is, -is, M.

fertile, fertil-is, -e (adj.).

- fertility**, cōpl-a, -ae, F.
fetters, cāten-ae, -arum, F. (pl.).
few, pauc-i, -ae, -a; **very few**, per-pauc-i, -ae, -a (adj.).
fidelity, fid-es, -ei, F.
field, āger, āgri, M.
field of battle, ācles, āclēi, F.
field, in the (opposed to "athome"), militāe (p. 86).
fierce (spirited), fēr-ox, -ōcis; ātrox, atrōcis; saev-us, -a, -um (adj.).
fiercely, fērōciter; atrōciter; saeve.
fifteen, quindēcim.
fifth, quīn-tus, -a, -um (adj.).
fifty, quinquāginta.
fight, pug-n-a, -ae, F.; proell-um, -i, N.; v., pug-n-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; dimic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
fill, com-plēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum; replēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum.
find (after a search), rēpōrō, rēpōrū, rēpōrū, repertum; (come on suddenly), in-vēnō, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
find fault with, culp-o, -āre, et vitūpōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
find out, reperio. See **find**.
fine, pulch-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).
finish, con-ficō, -ficāre, -fēcī, -fectum; fin-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.
fir, abies, abietis, F.
fire, ign-is, -is, M.
fire and sword, with, ferro et igni.
firm, firm-us, -a, -um; (of character), fort-is, -e (adj.).
first, prim-us, -a, -um; **I was the first to do it**, hoc primus feci.
fit for, apt-us, -a, -um (adj.), (with dat., p. 60, 2).
five, quinque.
flag, sign-um, -i, N.
flank, lat-us, -ēris, N.
flash, fulg-ūr, -ūris, N.
flee, vōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; fugio, fugēre, fugi, fugitum.
flee to, advōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (acc.).
fleet, class-is, -is, F.
flesh, cāro, carnis, F.
flight, fug-a, -ae, F.
fling at, pro-icō, -icēre, -icēcī, -iectum;
f. away, ab-icō, -icēre, -icēcī, -iectum.
flock, grex, grēgis, M.
flourishing in wealth, opulēt-us, -a, -um (adj.).
flow, fluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum; **flow down**, de-fluo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum.
flower, flos, flōris, M.
fly, vōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; fugio, fugēre, fugi, fugitum.
foe (public), host-is, -is, M. or F.; (private), inimic-us, -i, M.
follow, sequor, sequi, secutus sum; **it follows that**, sequitur ut.
follower, use pres. part. of sequor.
following day, dies postērus; **on the following day**, die postero; postridie.
folly, stultiti-a, -ae, F.
fond, avidus, -a, -um (adj.).
food, vict-us, -ūs; cib-us, -i, M.
foolish, stult-us, -i, -um (adj.).
foot, pes, pēdis, M.; **on f.**, use abl. pl.; **foot of hill**, tree, etc., use imus (p. 59, 1, note).
foot-soldier, pēdes, pēditis, M.
for, prep., pro. (with abl.; p. 224); (on account of), prae (abl.); of time, p. 69, 9.
for gold, abl. (p. 150, 1).
for, conj., nam; enim (after first emphatic word).
for some time past, iamdūdum [p. 216, 2, (b.)].
forage, pābul-or, -āri, -ātus sum.
forbid, vēto, vētāre, vētāi, vētītum.
force, vis, F. (p. 45); (army), = **forces**; v., cōgo, cōgēre, cōgegi, cōactum.
forces, cōplae, -arum, F. pl.
forefathers, maiōr-es, -um, pl. M.
foreign, extern-us, -a, -um (adj.).
foreigner, peregrin-us, -i, M.
foremost, prim-us, -a, -um (adj.).
foresee, pro-spiciō, -spiciēre, -spexi, -spectum.
forest, silv-a, -ae, F.
foretell, prae-dico, -dicēre, -dixi, -dictum.
forget, obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum (p. 146, 7).
form a plan, consilium in-eo [-ire, -ivi (or -ii), -ītum].
form a league, foedus ferre.
form a line of battle, aciem instruo (-struēre, -struxi, -structum).
former, pri-or, pri-us; **of former days**, pristīn-us, -a, -um.
formerly, olim.
fort, castell-um, -i, N.
fortify, mūn-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.

axi, fluxum; flow
fluxi, fluxum.

M.
vi, -itum; fugio,

s, -is, M. or F.;
M.

qui, secutus sum;
ultur ut.

part. of sequor.
es posterus; on

y, die postero;

F.
(adj.).

b-us, -i, M.
-um (adj.).

on f, use abl.
e, etc., use Imus

peditis, M.
abl.; p. 224; (on

of time, p. 60, 9.

1).
n (after first em-

ast, iamdudum

-atus sum.
vital, vitatum.

45); (army), =
coegi, coactum.

F. pl.
s, -um, pl. M.

-um (adj.).
s, -i, M.

-um (adj.).
spicere, -spexi,

-dicere, -dixi,

blivisci, oblitus

um in-eo [-ire,

s ferre.

ttle, aciem in-

structum).

; of former

vi, -itum.

fortress, arx, arcis, F.; castellum, -i, N.

fortunate, felix, felicis; fortunatus, -a, -um (adj.).

fortune, fortunatus, -a, -um, F.

foul, foedus, -a, -um, adj.

foully, nefarie.

found, con-do, -dere, -didici, -ditum.

four, quattuor.

fourteen, quattuordecim.

fourth, quartus, -a, -um, adj.

free, adj., lib-er, -era, -erum; experts, expertis (with abl.; p. 64, 4); v., liber-o, -are, -avi, -atum.

freedom, libertas, -atis, F.

freedwoman, liberta, -ae, F.

fresh, recens, recentis, adj.

friend, amicus, -i, M.

friendly, amicus, -a, -um (adj.).

friendship, amicitia, -ae, F.

frequent, creber, crebra, crebrum (adj.).

frog, rana, ranae, F.

from, a or ab (with abl.); de (abl.); p. 153, 2.

front, frons, frontis, F.; on the (in) front, a fronte.

frost, frigus, -oris, N.

fruit, fructus, -us, M.; fruges, -um, F., pl.

fugitive, fugitivus, -i, M.

full, plenus, -a, -um (with gen. or abl.).

funeral, funus, -eris, N.

further, adj., ulterior, -oris (adj.).

fury, ira, -ae, F.

future, the futura, -orum (N. pl.).

future, in, or for the, in futurum; in posterum.

G.

gain, emolumentum, -i, N.; lucrum, -i, N.

gain, possession of, potior, potius, potius sum (with abl.).

games, ludus, -orum, M.

garden, hortus, -i, M.

Garonne, Garumna, -ae, M.

garrison, praesidium, -i, N.

gate, portus, -ae, F.

gather together (trans.), compar-o, -are, -avi, -atum; (intr.), con-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum.

Gaul, the country now called France, Gallia, -ae, F.

Gaul, a, an inhabitant of Gallia, Gallus, -i, M.

gaze at or on, spect-o, -are, -avi, -atum.

general, dux, ducis, M.; imperator, -oris, M.

Geneva, Genua, -ae, F.

gentle, mitis, -e; lenis, -e (adj.).

gently, leniter.

German, Germanus, -a, -um (adj.).

get, ac-quo, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum; as-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum.

gift, donum, -i, N.

girl, puella, -ae, F.

give, don-o, -are, -avi, -atum; do, dare, dedi, datum; g. notice, say "in-

form;" give up (=surrender), de-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum; (=hand down), tra-

do, -dere, -didi, -ditum.

glad, laetus, -a, -um; libens, libentis (adj.); I am g. to do it, hoc libenter facio.

gladly, laete, libenter.

globe, orbis terrarum.

glorious, praeclarus, -a, -um (adj.).

glory, gloria, -ae, F.

go, eo, -ire, -ivi (-II), -itum; (be about to), p. 174, 1.

go away, ab-eo, -ire, -ivi (-II), -itum.

go out, ex-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum; ex-eo, -ire, -ivi (or -II), -itum.

God, Deus, Dei (p. 13, 2).

goddess, dea, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

gold, aurum, -i; for g., p. 150, 1.

golden (gold), aureus, -a, -um, adj.

good, bonus, -a, -um (p. 20); comp., melior; sup., optimus.

goods, merx, mercis, F.

govern, rego, regere, rexi, rectum; gubern-o, -are, -avi, -atum.

governor, praefectus, -i, M.

gradually, paulatim.

grandfather, avus, avi, M.

Granicus, Granicus, -i, M.

grateful, gratus, -a, -um (adj.).

grain, frumentum, -i, N.

gratitude, gratia, -ae, F.; I show

gratitude, gratiam refero (referre, retuli, relatum); I feel g., gratiam hab-eo (-ere, -ui, -itum).

great, magnus, -a, -um; of great

size, ingens, ingentis (adj.); so g., tantus.

greatly, magnopere (adv.); comp., magis; sup., maxime.



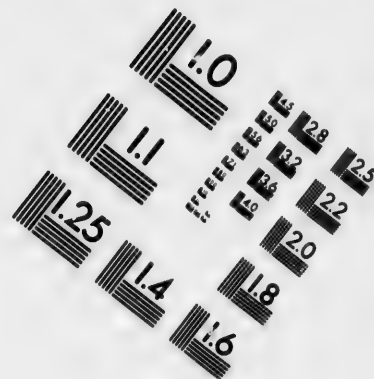
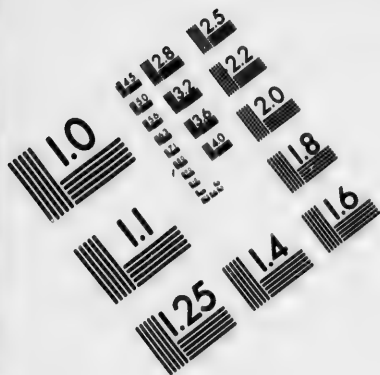
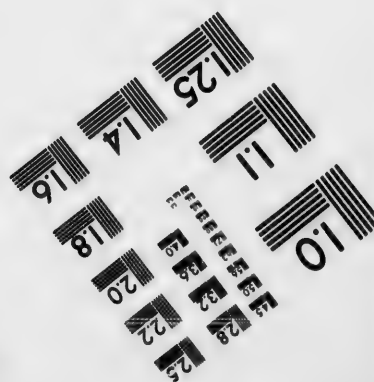
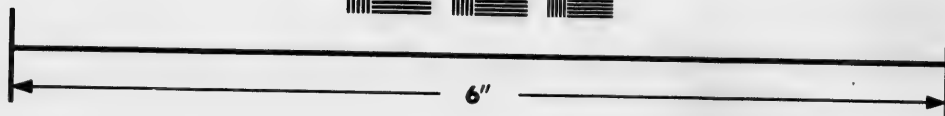
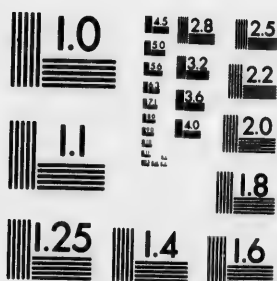


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



Greece, Graeci-a, -ae, F.
greedy, avid-us, -a, -um; āvār-us, -a, -um (adj.).
Greek, Graeco-us, -ā, -um, adj.
greenness, viridit-as, -ātis, F.
grief, dōl-or, -ōris, M.
groan, gēm-o, -ēre, -nī, -itum.
ground, hūm-us, -i, F.; on the ground, hūmī.
grow, cresc-o, -ēre, crēvi, crētum; virēo, virēre, no perf., no sup.
guard, custōd-io, -īre, -īvi, -itum; n., see next word.
guardian, cust-os, -ōdis, M.
guide, dux, dūcis, M.; v., gubern-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
guilt, scēl-us, -ēris, N.
guilty, noxi-us, -a, -um; **be g. of**, in se admitto (acc.).

H.

habit of, I am in the, solēo, solēre, solitus sum (+inf.).
hair, cōm-a, -ae, F.; cāpill-us, -i, M.
hall, aul-a, -ae, F.
halt, come to a halt, con-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum.
Hamilcar, Hamil-car, -āris, M.
hand, mān-us, -ūs, F.
hand, I am at, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.
hand over to, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
hand-maid(en), ancill-a, -ae, F.
Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ālis, M.
happens, it, accidit, accidere, accidit, no sup.; contingit, contingere, contigit, no sup.; evenit, evenire, evenit, no sup.
happiness, beate vivere (p. 108, 4).
happy, beat-us, -a, -um; **lucky**, felix, felicis (adj.).
harbor, port-us, -ūs, M.
hard, adj., dūr-us, -ā, -um (adj.).
hard, press, prem-o, -mēre, pressi, pressum.
hard to say, or tell, it is, difficile est dictu (p. 175).
hardly, vix (adv.).
hardship, lāb-or, -ōris, M.
harsh, asper, aspera, asperum (adj.).
harvest, messis, -is, F.
haste, celerit-as, -ātis, F.; **there is need of h.**, opus est properato (p. 160, 2).
hasten, propēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

mātūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; fest-ino, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
hate, ōdi-um, -i, N.
hate, I, ōdi, odisse; **I am hated**, odio sum (p. 196, 7, note).
haughty, superb-us, -a, -um, adj.
have, hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.
he, p. 168, 3.
he himself, ipse (p. 123, 6).
head, caput, capitis, N.; in the h., p. 98, 3.
head of, I am at the, prae-sum, -esse, -fui (with dat.).
headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis (adj.).
heal, mēd-ēo, mēd-eri, no perf., no sup.
health, I am in good, vāleo, vāl-ēre, vālui, vālūtum.
hear, aud-iō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.
heart, cor, cordis, N.; (feelings), animus.
heat, aestus, -ūs, M.
heaven, cael-um, -i, N.; pl. M., cael-i, -ōrum (p. 242).
heavy, grāv-is, -e (adj.).
heir, hēr-ēs, -dis, M.
help, iuvo, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum; ad-iuvo, iuvāre, iūvi, -iūtum; n., auxili-um, -i, N.
Helvetians (Helvetii), Helv-eti, -ōrum, M.
hem in, con-tin-ēo, -tin-ēre, -tin-ui, -tentum.
hence, henceforth, proinde, hinc.
herald, praec-o, -ōnis, M.
here, hic.
here, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.
hesitate, dubit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
hidden, occult-us, -ā, -um, adj.
hide, cel-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
high, alt-us, -ā, -um (adj.).
highest, summ-us, -ā, -um; with interest, use magni (p. 166, 3); of price, p. 150, 2.
highly, I value, magni aestimo (p. 150, 2).
hill, coll-is, -is, M.; mons, montis, M.
him; p. 168, 3.
himself, se; ipse, ipsā, ipsum (p. 168, 3).
hinder, imp-edi-o, -īre, -īvi, -itum; ob-sto, -stare, -stiti, -stātum (dat.).
his, eius, suus (p. 168, 3); often omitted; 169, 6, note 2.
historian, rerum script-or (-ōris, M.).

atum; fest-ino, -äre,

N.
esse; I am hated,
(note).
-us, -a, -um, adj.
-i, -itum.

(p. 123, 6).
-is, N.; in the h.,

at the, prae-sum,

eps, -cipitis (adj.).
-ri, no perf., no sup.
good, väleo, väli-

-ivi, -itum.
-is, N.; (feelings),

M.
-i, N.; pl. M., cael-i,

(adj.).
f.
-i, fūvi, iūtum; ad-
-i, -itum; n., auxili-um,

iveti), Helvēti-i,

-o, -tinēre, -tīnūi,

th, proinde, hinc.
-is, M.

m, -esse, -fūi.
-äre, -ävi, -ätum.

-ä, -um, adj.
-vi, -ätum.

n (adj.).
-ä, -um; with in-
166, 3); of price,

3, magni aestimo

mons, montis, M.

ipsä, ipsum (p.

-re, -ivi, -itum;
-itum (dat.).

68, 3); often omit-

script-or (-ōris, M.).

hither, öfter-ior, -iōris (adj.).

hold, habeo, habere, habui, habitum;
tēno, tēnere, tēnui, tentum; capio,
cāpere, cēpi, captum (=contain).

home, dom-us, -ūs, F.; at home,
domi; (to) home, domum; from
home, domo.

Homer, Hömēr-us, -i, M.

honest, prob-us, -a -um (adj.).

honor, fides, fidēi (good faith), F.;
hōn-or, -ōris, M. (distinction).

hope, spes, spēi, F.

hope, hope for, I, spē-o, -äre, -ävi,
-ätum.

Horace, Hörätī-us, -i, M.

horse, equus, equi, M.

horseman, eques, equitis, M.

host (opposed to guest), hospes, hos-
pitis, M.

host (a multitude), multītūd-o, -inis, F.

hostage, obaes, obsidis, M.

hot, be, cālēo, cālēre.

hour, hōr-a, -ae, F.

house, dom-us, -ūs, F. (p. 62, 6).

how, quam (p. 176, 3).

however, autem, vero; p. 196, 7,
note.

how many, quot.

how much, quantum; with com-
paratives, quanto.

how often, quoties.

human, hūmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

humble, hūmil-is, -e (adj.).

hundred, a, centum.

hunger, fāmes, fāmīs, F.

hurl, con-icēo, -icēre, -icēi, -iectum
(at= in+acc.).

hurry to, con-tendo, -tendēre, -tendi,
-tentum (ad with acc.).

husband, vir, viri, M.

I.

I, ego (p. 104).

if, si (p. 190); if... not, nisi, si...
non (p. 190, 3); unless, nisi (p. 190, 3).

ignorant of, I am, ignōr-o, -äre,
-ävi, -ätum; ne-scio, -scire, -scivi, -scitum.

ill, I am, aegrō-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

illustrious, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

ill-will, mälévōlentī-a, -ae, F.

imitate, imit-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

immediately (adv.), statim, confes-
tim.

immediately after the battle,
confestim a proelio.

immortal, immortāl-is, -e (adj.).

impart, I, communic-o, -äre, -ävi,
-ätum.

impiety, impiēt-as, -ätis, F.

implore, implōr-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

importance, it is of: p. 166, 3.

important to me, it is, meā inter-
est (p. 166, 3).

important, grāv-is, -e; magnus (adj.).

impunity, with, impūne.

impute this to you as a fault,

I, hoc tibi vitio verto.

in, prep., in (with abl. or acc.; p. 222, 2);

in company with, cum; in the

power of, penes (with acc.); in turn,

in vicem; in order that, ut; in order

that not, ne (p. 183, 2).

inasmuch as, quum (+subj.); p. 203,

1); qui (p. 190, 5).

inclination, vōlūt-as, -ätis, F.

inconsistent with, aliēn-us, -a, -um

(ab+abl.).

increase (trans.), augēo, augēre, auxi,

auctum; (intrans.), cresco, crescēre, crevi,

cretum.

incredible, incrediblis, -e (p. 175).

indecisive, anceps, ancipitis (adj.).

inexperienced, impērit-us, -a, -um.

infant, infans, infantis, M. or F.

infantry, pedit-es, -um, M. pl.

influence, auctōrit-as, -ätis, F.

inform, certiorē facere (of=de).

inform him about these mat-
ters, I, ego eum certiorē de his rebus

facio.

inhabitant, incol-a, -ae, M.; i. of a

town, oppidānus, -i, M.

injure, nocēo, nocēre, nocui, -itum

(with dat.).

injury, iniūri-a, -ae, F.; damn-um,

-i, N.

innocence, innocētī-a, -ae, F.

innocent, innocens, innocentis (adj.).

inquire, quero, quaerēre, quaesivi

quaesitum; rōgo, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

insist on, flāgit-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

instantly, continuo.

institution, institūt-um, -i, N.

instruct, erūd-lo, -re, -ivi, -itum.

insult, contūmēli-a, -ae, F.

intellect, mens, mentis, F.

intend, p. 174, 1.

intentionally, consulto.

interest, it is of, inter-est, -esse, -fui (p. 166, 5); (high = magni or multum).

interpreter, interpres, interpretis, M.

into, in (with acc.).

intrust, I, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum; mand-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

invade, I, bellum inféro (inferre, intüll, illätum).

inventor, invent-or, -öris, M.

invite, I, invit-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

irruption, an, incurso, -önis, F.

island, insül-a, -ae, F.

issue, event-us, -üs, M.

it. See **he**.

Italy, Itälí-a, -ae, F.

its, eius; referring to subject, suus, sua, sum (p. 169, 5).

itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

J.

January, Iännäri-us, -a, -um (adj.); mensis being understood).

javelin, täl-um, -i, N.; pil-um, -i, N.

jealous of you, I am, tibi in-vidéo (-videre, -vidi, -visum).

join, iungo, iungere, iunxi, iunctum.

joint, art-us, -üs.

journey, iter, itinérís, N.

joy, gaudi-um, -i, N.; laetití-a, -ae.

joyful, laet-us, -a, -um (adj.).

judge, iudex, iudicis, M.; v., iudic-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; arbitr-or, -äri, -ätus sum.

judgment, iudici-um, -i, N.; arbitri-um, -i, N.

Jugurtha, Iugurth-a, -ae, M.

June (month of), Iüni-us, -a, -um.

Jupiter, Iüpi-ter, Iövis, M.

jury, iudic-es, -um, M. pl.

just, aequ-us; iust-us, -a, -um (adj.).

just then, iam tum.

just as though: say as if.

justice, iustiti-a, -ae, F.

justly, iure [abl. of ius (iuris), used adverbially].

Jura, Iür-a, -ae, F.

K.

Karthage, Karthäg-o, -önis, F.

Karthaginians, Karthaginienses, -ium, M. pl.

keen, ácer, ácri-a, ácre (adj.).

keep, serv-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; **k. promises**, promissis (abl.) sto (stäre, steti, stätum).

keep back, arc-eo, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

keep back from, pröhibeo, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; arceo, arcere, arcei (+abl.).

keep my word, fidem serv-o (-äre, -ävi, -ätum); fidem prae-sto (-stare, -stiti).

keep off, defen-do, -dère, -di, -sum.

kill, inter-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; occido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum.

kind, gén-us, -eris, N.

kind, adj., benévöl-us, -a, -um; comp., benevolentior; sup., benévölentissimus.

kind deed, a, benéfici-um, -i, N.; offic-um, -i, N.

kind of every, omní-a, -e (adj.); omnis géneris.

kind of man, the, use qualis (p. 181, 1).

kind, of this, huiusmodi; of that kind, eiusmodi; talis.

kindness, benéfici-um, -i, N.

king, rex, régis; **king's**, régí-us, -a, -um.

knee, gén-u, -üs, N.

know, scio, scire, scivi, scitum (a fact); nosco-o, -ävi, -notum (a person).

know, -st-us, -a, -um (adj.).

knowledge, scientí-a, -ae, F.; (learning), doctrín-a, -ae, F.

L.

Labienus, Lábíen-us, -i, M.

Lacedaemon, Lacedaem-on, -önis, F.

Lacedaemonian, Lacedaemóni-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lack, I, mihi deest.

lacking, expens, expert-is (with abl.; p. 64, 4; p. 281, 9).

lake, lac-us, -üs, M.

lame, claud-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lament, lament-or, -äri, -ätus sum; doléo, dolere, dolui, no sup.

land (the soil), áger, ágri, M.; (a country), terr-a, -ae, F.; **native land**, pátri-a, -ae, F.; **by sea and land**, terrá márique.

land troops, milites in terram expóno (-ponere, -posui, -positum).

language (tongue), lingu-a, -ae, F.; (conversation), serm-o, -önis, M.

large, magn-us, -a, -um; ingen-s, -tis; so l., tant-us, -a, -um (adj.).

acre (adj.).

ae, -ivi, -itum; k.
sis (abl.) sto (stare,

eo, -ere, -ui, -itum.

m, prôhil 'o, -ere,
cère, arcuî (+abl.),

, fidem serv-o (-äre,
ae-sto (-stare, -stiti).

o, -dere, -di, -sum.

cère, -feci, -fectum;
-cisum.

N.

-us, -a, -um; comp.,
benévôlentissimus.

benêfici-um, -i, N.;

omni-ia, -e (adj.);

the, use qualis

iusmodi; of that

-um, -i, N.

king's, regi-us, -a,

ivi, scitum (a fact);

m (a person).

-um (adj.).

-a, -ae, F.; (learn-

ad, -i, M.

adaem-on, -onis, F.

Lacedaemôni-us,

pt-is (with abl.;

um (adj.).

-avi, -atus sum;

sup.

r, Agri, M.; (a

native land,

sea and land,

es in terram ex-

-stium).

lingua, -ae, F.;

onis, M.

m; ingen-a, -tis;

adj.).

last (of a number), ultim-us, -a, -um;
(nearest: as, last night), proxim-us, -a,
-um; most remote, extrem-us, -a,
-um; at last, demum (= then and not till
then); tandem.

late (recent), recens, recentis (adj.).

late, too, adv., aëro.

lately, nuper; sup., nuperrime.

law, lex, legis, F.

lay waste, vast-o, -äre, -avi, -atum.

lead, dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductum;
lead across or through, trans-dūco,
-dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum; lead back,
re-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum; lead
out, edūco, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.

lead, plumb-um, -i, N.

leader, dux, dūcis, M.

learn, disco, discere, didici, no sup.;

(ascertain), cognosco, -ere, cognovi, cog-
nitum.

learned, doctus (p. p. of doceo, teach).

learning, doctrin-a, -ae, F.

least, at, saltem; I at least, ego
certe.

leave, re-linquo, -linquere, -liqui,
-lictum; (a place) ex-cedo, -cedere, -cessi,
-cessum (with acc. or abl. or with ex.);

discedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum (ex.);
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum.

left, sinist-er, -ra, -ræ n (adj.).

legion, legi-o, -onis, F.

leisure, ôti-um, -i, N.; at leisure,
otios-us, -a, -um (adj.).

less (adv.), minus; less than two
hundred fell, minus ducenti perierunt.

Minus, with numerals (like plus and
amplius, more) has no effect upon the
construction.

less, adj., minor, minus (p. 57, 4).

lest, nè (p. 185, 3).

let, sino, sinere, sivi, situm; or use
licet (163, 5).

letter, epistola, also epistula, -ae, F.,
litter-ae, -arum, F. (pl.).

levy, n., delect-us, -us, M.; I hold a
levy, delectum habeo.

liar, mendax, mendacis, M. or adj.

liberality, liberalit-as, -atis, F.

liberate, liber-o, -äre, -avi, -atum.

liberty, libert-as, -atis, F.

lie, lūc-éo, -ere, -ui, -itum; (speak
falsely) mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum.

Lieutenant, légat-us, -i, M.

life, vit-a, -ae, F.

light, lux, lūcis, F.; lūmen, lūminis, N.

lightning fulgur, fulguris, N.

like, simil-is, -e; comp., similior; sup.,
simillimus (dat.).

likely; use 174, 1.

line of battle, acies, aciei, F.; line
of march, iter, itineris, N.

lion, leo, leonis, M.

listen to, aud-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum (acc.).

little, parv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

live, vivo, vivere, vixi, victum; I
live on milk, lacte vescor (vesci, no
perf., no sup.).

living, be; say live.

load: ônus, oneris, N.

load, v., oner-o, -äre, -avi, -atum.

locality, loc-a, -orum, N. pl. of locus
(p. 242).

lofty, alt-us, -a, -um; excels-us, -a, -um
(adj.).

long, long-us, -a, -um; for a long
time, diu, iampridem (216, 2, b).

look at, spect-o, -äre, -avi, -atum.

look down on, de-spicio, -spicere,
-spexi, -spectum.

look for, exspect-o, -äre, -avi, -atum.

lord, domin-us, -i, M.

lose, amitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum;
lose an opportunity, occasione
amitto.

loss, damn-um, -i, N.; calamit-as,
-atis, F.

lot, sors, sortis, F.; fortun-a, -ae, F.

lot, it falls to my, mihi accidit;
mihi contingit.

loud, magn-us, -a, -um (adj.).

love, am-o, -äre, -avi, -atum; diligo,
diligere, dilexi, dilectum.

lovely, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
(adj.).

lover, amans, amantis, M. or F.

low(ly), humil-is, -e, adj.

lowest, imus, -a, -um, adj. (59, 1).

loyal, fidel-is, -e, adj.

loyalty, fides, fidelis, F.

Lucca, Lucc-a, -ae, F.

luxury, luxuri-a, -ae, F.

M.

mad, I am, furo, furere, no perf.,
no sup.

made, I am being, fio, fieri, fac-
tus sum.

magnitude, use quantus (see p.
181, 1).

maiden, puell-a, -ae, F.; virg-o, -inis, F.

maintain, sus-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinēi, -tentum; vindic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

make, faciō, facere, feci, factum; (a magistrate), cre-o, (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); (war upon), bellum in-fero, [inferre, intūli, illātum (dat.)]; (an attack), impetum faciō (facere, feci, factum), or simply aggrēdiōr, -grēdi, -gressus sum (acc.)

Malta, Mēlit-a, -ae, F.

man, vir, viri, M. (an adult male, opposed to mulier, woman); hōmo, hōminis, M. or F. (a human being).

maniple, mānīpl-us, -ī, M.

manners, mōres, mōrum (pl.), M.

many, mult-i, -ae, -a (adj., pl.): **many good men**, multi et boni homines.

marble, marm-or, -ōris, N.

marble, marmōreus, -a, -um (adj.).

march, iter, itinēris, N.; **to make a march**, iter faciō (facere, feci, factum).

Marcus, Marc-us, -ī, M., a Roman name.

Marius, Māri-us, -ī, M.

market-place, for-um, -ī, N.

Marseilles, Massill-a, -ae, F.

marsh, pal-ūs, -ūdis, F.

master (of boys), māgīst-er, -ri, M.; (of slaves), dōmīn-us, -ī, M.

matter, res, rei, F.

matters little, it, parvi interest or refert (p. 166, 3).

may, licet, licēre, licēt (or licitum est) (p. 163, 5); possum, posse, pōtūi (p. 142); in final clauses, ut+subj. (p. 123); of a wish (p. 138, 4, c).

May (month of), Māi-us, -a, -um, adj. (mensis being understood).

meal, cēn-a, -ae, F.; epul-ae, -ārum, F. pl.

mean, v., sibi volo (velle, volui).

means of, by, abl. (p. 71, 3).

meanwhile, intērim.

measure, mētiōr, mētri, mensus sum.

Medes, Mēd-i, -ōrum (pl.), M.

meet an enemy, obviam hostibus (dat.) ire.

meet death, mortem ob-ēo [ire, ivi (or ii), itum].

meeting, concill-um, -ī, N.; convent-us, -ūs, M.

memory, mēmōri-a, -ae, F.

merchant, mercat-or, -ōris, M.

merchantman, navis oneraria.

Mercury, Mercūri-us, -ī, M.

mercy, misericordi-a, -ae, F.

mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum (p. 123).

message, nunt-i-us, -ī, N.

messenger, nunt-i-us, -ī, M.

midday, mēridi-es, -ei, M.; tempus mēridiānum.

middle of, mēdi-us, -a, -um; **in the middle of the plain**, in mediā planitie; **in the middle of the night**, mediā nocte.

midst of, in the, inter (with acc.).

might, use licet (163, 5).

mild, mit-is, -e (adj.).

mile, mille passum or mille passus; **two miles**, duomillia passuum (p. 69, 10).

milk, lac, -tis, N.

mind, ānim-us, -ī, M.; mens, mentis, F.

miserable, miser, misēra, misērum (adj.).

modesty, mōdesti-a, -ae, F.

money, pecūni-a, -ae, F.

month, mens-is, -is, M.

moon, lūn-a, lūnae, F.

morals, mōres, mōrum, M.

more, plus (p. 57, 4), of amount; magis, of degree (p. 77, 6); **more than**, magis quam.

moreover, praetērā, adv.

morning, in the, māne, adv.

mortal (dying), mortāl-is, -e (adj.); (deadly), mortī-fer, -fērum (adj.).

most, plērique, plēraque, plēraque (adj.).

most part, for the, maxime.

mound, ag-ger, -gēris, M.

mount, v., a-scendo, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum.

mountain, mons, montis, M.

mourn over, lūgeo, lugēre, luxi, luctum.

mouth, os, ōris, N.

move, mōvĕo, mōvēre, mōvī, mōtum; **move forward**, pro-mōvēo.

much, mult-us, -a, -um (adj.); with comparative, multo; **m. time**, multum tempōris.

multitude, multitud-o, -inis, F.

murder of Caesar, Caesare interfecto.

must: p. 172, 2; 173, 5.

my, mē-us, -ā, -um (adj.).

myself (emphatic), ipse.

N.

name, nóm-en, -inis, N.
name, good, fám-a, -ae, F.
Naples, Neapól-is, -is, F.
nation, nópul-us, -i, M.; olvíť-as, -átis, F.; náti-o, -ónis, F. (of foreign nations).
native land or country, pátri-a, -ae, F.
nature, nátūr-a, -ae, F.
near, própe, ad, or ápod (with acc.); **be near**, adsum (dat.).
nearest, proxím-us, -a, -um (adj.).
nearly, paene, fere (adv.).
necessary, nécessári-us, -a, -um (adj.).
necessity, nécessít-as, -átis, F.
need, opus est (p. 166, 2); **I have need of food**, opus est mihi cibo (abl.); égé-o, égére, égi (+abl. or gen., p. 282, 1).
needy, égenus (57, 3, note).
neglect, neg-légo, -légere, -lexi, -lectum.
neighbor, vicin-us, -i, M.; finítim-us, -i, M.
neighboring, finítim-us, -a, -um (adj.).
neither . . . nor; **néque . . . néque**; **neq. . . nec**.
neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neutrum (p. 26).
nest, nid-us, -i, M.
never, nunquam.
new, nov-us, -a, -um (adj.).
news of, **there is**, nuntiátur (p. 164, 2, note 2).
next, the, proxím-us, -a, -um (adj.).
next day, dies postérus; **on the next day**, die postero, postridie eius diēi.
night, nox, noctis, F.
no: p. 29, 4, note.
noble, praeclár-us, -a, -um; nobil-is, -e (adj.).
noon, noonday, mēridi-es, -ei, M.
no one, nemo (gen., nullus; p. 132, 2); null-us, -a, -um; **and no one**, nec quisquam (132, 3).
nor, neque, nec; owing to the Latin love of connectives, used instead of non to introduce a sentence; **nor . . . any**, p. 132, 3.
not, non; with imperat., p. 138, 4 (b).
not yet, nondum.
nothing, nihil.
nourish, nutr-fo, -ire, -ivi, -itum; ál-o, álere, álui, álítum (or altum).

now (of time up to the present), iam; (at the present moment), nunc; (= to-day), hodie.

nowhere, nusquam.

number, nómēr-us, -i, M.; p. 181, 1.

Numidia, Numidi-a, -ae, F.

O.

O, interjection, O; omitted usually with vocative; **O! that**, utinam; see p. 138, 4.

oak-tree, querc-us, -ūs, F.

obey, pár-co, -ere, -ūi, -itum (dat.); ob-edi-o, -ēdi-re, -ēdvi (ēdii), -ēditum (dat.; p. 164).

object, v., reeđs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

object, have an o. in view, āgo, āgere, ēgi, actum.

obscure, obscūr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

obtain, I, adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum; pōtior, pōtiri, pōtītus sum; (a request), impetr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

occupy, I (hold), tēn-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -tum.

ocean, oceān-us, -i, M.

Octavianus, Octaviān-us, -i, M.

of, expressed by gen. or abl.; **dē**, prep. with abl.

offence, peccāt-um, -i, N.

offer, I, de-fero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

office, magistrāt us, -ūs, M.; **I hold office**, magistratum habeo or obtineo.

officers, the military, centuriones tribunique militum.

often, saepe; **so often**, tōtīes.

old, antiqu-us, -a, -um; vētus, vēteris; **oldest**, maximus nātū; see **ancient**.

old age, senect-us, -ūtis, F.

old man, senex, senis, M.

Olympus, Olymp-us, -i, M.

on (of rest), in (abl.); (of motion), in (acc.), of time, abl.; **on this side**, citrā (prep. with acc.); **on this account**, quam ob causam; **on the side of**, ab (with abl.).

once, semel; **more than once**, semel ac saepius.

once (formerly), quondam; **ōlim**; **at o.**, statim.

one (numeral), ūn-us, -a, -um; **one of the soldiers**, unus e militibus.

one, some, āliquis, āliqua, āliquid or āliquod; quidē, quēdam, quoddam or quiddam (p. 132).

one, not, nemo, gen. nullus (p. 132, 2); ne unus quidem.

one..the other, *alius..alius*; *alter..alter* (of two).

one and all, *cuncti*, -ae, -a; *omnes*, *omnium*.

one day, *aliquando*.

only, *tantum*; *solum*; *môdo* (all placed after the words qualified); **not only**, *non solum*, *non môdo* (but also = *sed etiam*).

onset, *impêt-us*, -us, *M*.

open (*trans.*), *pâtê-facio*, -*fâcere*, -*fêci*, -*factum*; (*intr.*), *pâtêo*, *pâtêre*, *pâtûi*, *no sup.*; **open ranks**, *ordines laxare*.

openly, *pâlam*.

opinion, *sententi-a*, -ae, *F*.

opportunity, *occâs-io*, -iônis, *F*.

oppose, *oc-curro*, -*currêre*, -*curri*, -*cursum* (with *dativ*); *ob-sto*, -*stâre*, -*stiti*, *no sup.* (with *dat.*).

oppress, *vex-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum*; *op-primo*, -*primêre*, -*pressi*, -*pressum*.

or, *aut*; *vel*.

or not, *annon* in the second part of a principal alternative question (130, 6, note); *neque*, in a dependent alternative question (p. 177, 5).

oration, *ôrât-i-o*, -iônis, *F*.

orator, *ôrât-or*, -ôris, *M*.

order, *v.*, *iûbêo*, *iûbêre*, *iussi*, *iussum* (with *acc.*); *impêr-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum* (with *dat.*).

order, *n.*, *mandât-um*, -i, *N*; *prae-cept-um*, -i, *N*.

order that, *in*, *ut* (p. 183, 2; p. 185, 5).

origin, *gên-us*, -êris, *N*; **of humble origin**, *humili loco natus*.

other, *the* (of two), *alter*; **others**, *alii*; **other men** (= the rest), *cêtêri*.

ought, *dêbêo*, -*êre*, -*ûi*, -*îtum* (of moral obligation); *impêrs.*, *oport-et*, -*êre*, -*ûit* (p. 162, 4); p. 173, 5.

our, *ours*, *nost-er*, -*ra*, -*rum* (*adj.*).

ourselves, *nos*; p. 104, 5.

out of, *s.*, *ex* (with *abl.*); *ex* before vowels and consonants, *ê* before consonants only.

outward, *extêr-us*, -a, -um.

over, *super* (*prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, p. 222, 2); *trans* (*acc.*).

overcome, *super-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum*; *vinco*, *vincêre*, *vici*, *victum*.

overthrow, -*êvert-o*, -*êre*, -*i*, -*sum*.

Ovid, *Ovidi-us*, -i, *M*.

owe, *dêb-êo*, -*êre*, -*ûi*, -*îtum*.

own, *gen. of ipse*; **my own book**, *meus ipsius liber* (123, 6); *v.*, p. 120, 3.

ox, *bos*, *bôvis*, *M*.

P.

pacify, *I*, *plâc-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum*.

pain, *dol-or*, -ôris, *M*.

panic, *pâvor*, *pâvôris*, *M*.

pardon, *n.*, *vênî-a*, -ae, *F*.

pardon, *v.*, *ignosco*, *ignoscere*, *ignôvi*, *ignôtum* (*dat.*).

parent, *pârens*, *M*. or *F*.

part, *pars*, *partis*, *F*; **it is the part of**, p. 124.

pass (a law), *promulg-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum*; *fero*.

pass by, *praetêr-co*, -*ire*, -*ivi*, -*itum*.

pass over, *trans-co*, -*ire*, -*ivi*, -*itum*.

pass the winter, *hiêm-o*, -*âre*, -*âvi*, -*âtum*.

passion (*anger*), *ira*, -ae, *F*.

passionate, *irâcund-us*, -a, -um (*adj.*).

passionateness, *irâcundi-a*, -ae, *F*.

past, *praetêrit-us*, -a, -um (*adj.*); **the past**, *tempus praetëritum*.

patiently, *pâtienter*.

pay, *pendo*, *pendêre*, *pendi*, *pensum*.

pay, *merces*, *mercêdis*, *F*.

pearl, *margarit-a*, -ae, *F*.

peace, *pax*, *pâcis*, *F*.

Peligni, *Pelign-i*, -ôrum, *M*. pl.

penalty, *poen-a*, -ae, *F*; *supplicio*, -um, -i, *N*.

people (*a*), *pôpûl-us*, -i, *M*; (*men*), *hômînes*, (*M*. pl.); 164, 2.

perceive, *intellêgo*, -*lêgêre*, -*lexi*, -*lectum*; *senti*, *senti*, *sensum*.

perform, *facio*; *con-ficio*, -*ficêre*, -*fêci*, -*fectum*.

Pericles, *Pêricl-es*, -is, *M*.

perish, *pêr-êo*, -*ire*, -*ivi* (or *ii*), -*îtum*.

permit: see *allow*; **you p. me**, *mihi per te licet* (p. 163, 5).

permitted, *I am*, *mihi licet* (p. 163, 5).

Persian, *Mêd-us*, -i, *M*.

persuade, *per-suâdeo*, -*suâdere*, -*sûasi*, -*sûasum* (*dat.*).

Philippi, *Philipp-i*, -ôrum, *M*. pl.

philosopher, *philosoph-us*, -i, *M*.

philosophy, *philosophi-a*, -ae, *F*.

pick, *pick out*, *lêgo*, *lêgêre*, *lêgi*, *lectum*.

pine, *pîn-us*, -ûs, *F*.

e: my own book,
3, 6); v., p. 120, 3.

o.
-äre, -ävi, -ätum.
s, M.
öris, M.
a, -ae, F.
co, ignoscere, ignövi,

f. or F.
is, F.; it is the
omulg-o, -äre, -ävi,

eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
r, hiem-o, -äre, -ävi,
ra, -ae, F.
und-us, -a, -um (adj.).
iracundi-a, -ae, F.
a, -um (adj.); the
itum.
cer.

e, pependi, pensum.
dis, F.
ae, F.
F.

örum, M. pl.
-ae, F.; supplicio-

us, -i, M.; (men),
2.
o, -légere, -lexi,
e, sensi, sensum.
con-ficio, -ficere,

-is, M.
-ivi (or ii), -itum.
w; you p. me,
s, 6).
nihilicet (p. 163, 5).
M.

adäéo, -suädere,

örum, M. pl.
söph-us, -i, M.
öphi-a, -ae, F.
go, légere, légi,

pirate, praed-o, -önis, M.
pitch a camp, castra pönere or
munire.

pity, miséricordi-a, -ae, F.

pity, v., misérëor, misérëri, misérütus
sum, with gen.; I pity you, me tui
miseret (165, 1).

place, loc-us, -i, M.; pl., loci, M.,
and loca, N., p. 242.

place, v., loc-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum
(acc.); pono, pönere, pösüi, pösütum;
place over; prae-ficio, -ficere, -feci,
-fectum.

plain, camp-us, -i, M.; plāniti-es, -ei, F.
plain (evident), mānifest-us, -a, -um
(adj.).

plan, consili-um, -i, N. (form = hinc).

play, lud-us, -i, M.; lüs-us, -üs, M.;
v., lud-o, -ere, -si, -um.

pleasant, iucund-us, -a, -um (adj.);
grätus, -a, -um (adj.).

please, delect-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum
(acc.); placéo, placere, placui, placitum
(with dat.).

please, I (i.e., choose), mihi libet,
libuit, libitum est.

pleasing: see pleasant.

pleasure, volupt-as, -ätis, F.

plough, n., arätr-um, -i, N.

plough, v., ar-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

ploughed land, arvum, arvi, N.

pluck, carpo, carpere, carpsi, carptum.

plunder, praed-a, -ae, F.

poet, poet-a, -ae, M.

point out, monstr-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum;
ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostentum.

poison, venén-um, -i, N.

Pompey, Pompéi-us, -i, M.

pool, stagnum, -i, N.

poor, pauper, paupéris (adj.).

populace, plebs, plébis, F.

possession obtain or gain, pötior,
pötiri, pötius sum (p. 116).

possible, use possum; all p., omnes
quas potes; as many as p., quam
plurimi (p. 143, note).

poverty, pauper-as, -ätis, F.

power, impér-um, -i, N.; pötést-as,
-ätis, F.; pötenti-a, -ae, F. (undue
power).

powerful, pöténs, pöténtis.

practice, usus, -üs, M.

praise, n., laus, laudis, F.

praise, v., laud-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

praiseworthy, laudabil-is, -e (adj.).

pray for, or-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

prayers, prä-es, -um, F.

prefer (wish rather), mälö, mälle,
mälüi, no sup.; ante-pono, -ponere, -pö-
ni, -pösütum (with acc. and dat.); prae-
fero, -ferre, -tölli, -ätum.

prepare, pär-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

present, a, dönum, -i, N.

present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui;
inter-sum, -esse, -fui (at = dat.).

presently, mox, brevi.

preserve, conserv-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum;
serv-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

pretend, simül-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum;
dissimül-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

prevent, ob-sto, -stäre, -stüti; prä-
hibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum; prevent
him from doing, I, prohibeo eum
quominus faciat (p. 185, 2).

previous, prior, prius.

price, preti-um, -i, N., p. 150.

pride, superb-ia, -ae, F.

prince, princeps, princípis, M.

prison, carcer, carcéris, M.

prisoner (of war), captiv-us, -i, M.

private person, privät-us, -i, M.

prize, praemi-um, -i, N.

promise, pro-mitto, -mittère, -misi,
-missum; pol-licëor, -licëri, -licitus sum
(with fut. inf.; 110, 1)

promise, promiss-us, -i, N.

proof, indic-um, -i, N.

property, böna, N. pl.; fortunae, F.
pl.; res, rei, F.

proud, süperb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

provide for, I, pro-vidéo, -vidère,
-vidi, -visum.

providence, providenti-a, -ae, F.

provided that, módo, dummódo
(194, 3).

province, provinci-a, -ae, F.

provoke, läcëso, läcëssäre, läcëssivi,
läcëssitum.

prudence, prudënti-a, -ae, F.

punish, pünio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.

punishment, poena, poenae, F.;
supplic-um, -i, N.

pupil, discipülus, -i, M.

purpose, for the p. of, causä
(171, 6).

purposely, consulto.

pursue, säquor, säqui, secütus sum.

pursuit, stüdi-um, -i, N.

put, pōno, pōnere, pōnī, pōnitum.
 put to death, inter-ficio, -ficere,
 -feci, -fectum.

Pyrenees, Pyrēnaci Montes.

Q.

quaestor, quaest-or, -ōris, M.
 quantity, cōpi-a, -ae, F.; vis, F.
 queen, rēgin-a, -ae, F.
 question, I ask a, rō-go, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum (92, 3); I ask you this ques-
 tion, hoc te rōgo.
 quickly, celeriter.
 quiet, quiet-us, -a, -um (adj.); quies,
 quietis, F.

R.

race (kind), gēn-us, -eris, N.; the
 human race, genus humanum; R. of
 men, genus hominum.

rage, ira, -ae, F.; fūr-or, -ōris, M.

rain, pluv-i-a, -ae, F.; im-ber, -bris, M.

raise, tollō, tollere, sustollī, sublātum.

rank, ord-o, -inis, M. (military term).

rather, potius.

Ravenna, Ravenn-a, -ae, F.

reach, pērvēnio, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum (ad with acc.).

read, lēgo, lēgere, lēgi, lectum.

read aloud, rēcit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ready, parāt-us, -a, -um (with inf.,
 dat., or ad. and acc.).

really, vērō; rē verā (in truth).

rear, terg-um, -i, N.; from or in
 the rear, a tergo.

reason, caus-a, -ae, F.; p. 181, 1 (use
 cur).

receive, accipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-
 tum.

recent, rēcens, recentis (adj.).

recover (intr.), se recipio.

refrain, de-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -sti-
 tum (abl., or abl. with a).

refuse, nōlo, nolle, nōlāi; recūs-o,
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

regard, habeo, habēre, habūi, habi-
 tum.

reign, v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 imperi-um, -i, N.; during the r., see
 p. 100, 5.

reject, rēpudi-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

rejoice, gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.

relate, narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; it is
 related, narrātur; it is related by
 tradition, traditum est.

relying on, frēt-us, -a, -um (adj.)
 (with abl.).

remain, măn-eo, -ēre, -si, -sum.

remarkable, insign-is, -e; eximī-us,
 -a, -um (adj.).

remember, p. 146; 146, 7.

remind, admōn-eo, -ēre, -dī, -itum;
 commone-facio, -facere, -feci, -factum
 (p. 167).

repent of my folly, I, me meae
 stultitiāe pœnitet (p. 165, 1).

reply, v., re-spondēo, -spondere,
 -spondi, -sponsum; respons-um, -i, N.

report, nunti-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

republic, republica, reipublicae, F.
 resist, re-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum,
 (dat.).

resolve, con-sistō, -stitūere, -stitui,
 -stitutum.

rest, qui-es, -ētis, F.; the r., reliqui,
 ceteri.

retake, re-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.

retreat, se recipere.

return (go back), rēd-eo, -ire, -ivi (or
 -ii), -itum; (give back), red-do, -dēre, -didi,
 -ditum.

revile, mālē-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dic-
 tum (dat.).

reward, praemi-um, -i, N.

Rhine, Rhēn-us, -i, M.

Rhone, Rhodān-us, -i, M.

rich, dives, divitis; dīs, ditis; opu-
 lentus, -a, -um; cōpiōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

right, iust-us, -a, -um; aequ-us, -a,
 -um (adj.).

right (= on the right hand), dex-ter,
 -tra, -trum; right hand, manus dextra.

right, n., ius, iūris, N.; fas, N. (p. 239).

ripe, mātūr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

rising, oriē-s, -tis (adj.).

risk, pericūl-um, -i, N.; discrim-en,
 -inis, N.

river, flūm-en, -inis, N.; fluvī-us, -i,
 M.; riv-us, -i, M.; amn-is, -is, M.

road, vi-a, -ae, F.; iter, itinēria, N.

rock, sax-um, -i, N.; rūp-es, -is, F.,
 scōpūl-us, -i, M.

Roman, Rōmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Rome, Rōm-a, -ae, F.

Romulus, Rōmūl-us, -i, M.

root, rad-ix, -icis, F.

rose, rōs-a, -ae, F.

-us, -a, -um (adj.)

-ère, -al, -sum.

sign-is, -e; eximi-us,

145; 146, 7.

-o, -ère, -al, -itum;
-ère, -feci, -factumfolly, I, me mense
165, 1).pondéo, -aspondere,
espons-um, -i, N.-are, -avi, -atum;
-um.

ica, reipublicae, F.

stere, -stiti, -stitutum,

-o, -stituere, -stitui,

F.; the r., reliqui,

-père, -cepi, -ceptum.

-re.

red-éo, -ire, -ivi (or
red-do, -dère, -didi,

-dicere, -dixi, -dico-

-um, -i, N.

-M.

-i, M.

; dis, ditis; opu-

-us, -a, -um (adj.).

-um; aequ-us, -a,

right hand), dex-ter,

nd, manus dextra.

N.; fas, N. (p. 239).

um (adj.).

(adj.).

I, N.; discrim-en,

-a, N.; flui-us, -i,

-is, -is, M.

ter, itineris, N.

N.; rûp-es, -is, F.,

-a, -um (adj.).

F.

-is, -i, M.

rough, asper, -era, -erum (adj.).

route, vi-a, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.

ruin, exiti-um, -i, N.; pernici-es, -ei, F.

rule, v., regn-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum;

gubern-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; n., reg-num,

-i; imperi-um, -i, N.

run, curro, currere, cucurri, cursum;

(a wall), düco, ducere, duxi, ductum.

run away, aufugio, -fugere, -fugi,

-fugitum.

S.

sacred, sac-er, -ra, -rum; sanct-us,

-a, -um (adj.).

sad, maest-us, -a, -um; trist-is, -e

(adj.).

safe, tüt-us, -a, -um; salv-us, -a, -um

(adj.); incolm-is, -e, (securus=free from

care).

safety, sal-us, -utis, F.

said, it is, p. 164, 3.

sail, velum, -i, N.

sail, v., navig-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

sailor, naut-a, -ae, M.

sake of, for the, causä (+gen.);

for my sake, mea causä; for the

sake of plundering, praedandi causä

(p. 171, 6).

sally, erupti-o, -önis; make a s.,

e-rumpo, -rumpere, -rûpi, -ruptum.

salt, sal, salis, M.

salute, v., salüt-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

same, idem, eadem, idem; same as,

127, 2.

satisfy, sätis-facio, -facere, -feci, -fac-

tum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).

savage (wild), fer-us, -a, -um.

savage (cruel), saev-us, -a, -um; crü-

dél-is, -e (adj.).

save, serv-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

say, dico, dicere, dixi, dictum; s.

not, neg-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

scholar, discipul-us, -i, M.

school, schöl-a, -ae, F.

science, doctrin-a, -ae, F.; scienti-a,

-ae, F.

Scipio, Scipi-o, -önis, M.

scout, explorät-or, -öris, M.; speculät-

-or, -öris, M.

sea, märe, märis, N.

sea, of the, maritim-us, -a, -um; the

sea coast, ora maritima, litus.

season, tempest-as, -ätis, F.; anni

tempus (temporis).

seat, sed-es, sedis, F.; sella, sellae, F.

second, scound-us, -a, -um; alter, -a,

-um (adj.).

secret, occult-us, -a, -um (adj.).

see, video, videre, vidi, visum; cerno,

cernere, crövi, cretum; spect-o, -äre, -ävi,

-atum.

seed, sēmen, sēminis, N.

seek, quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quae-

situm.

seem, vidēor, vidēri, visus sum; it

seems that he was good, ille vide-

tur bonus fuisse (p. 164, 3).

seize, occup-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum (a

place); arripio, arripere, arripui, arrip-

tum (a person).

select, delig-o, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum.

sell, ven-do, -dère, -didi, -ditum; to be

sold, venco, venire, venivi (-ii), ventum.

senate, senät-us, -is, M.

send, mitto, mittere, misi, missum.

send forward, prae-mitto, -mittere,

-misi, -missum.

Sequani, Sequän-i, -örum, M. (pl.).

serpent, serpen-s, -tis, M.

servant, serv-us, -i, M.

service, ütill-as, -ätis, F.; be of s.,

prodesse; 143, (2 great=multum).

sesterce or sestertius, sesterti-us,

-i, M.

set (of sun), sölis occäsus (-üs, M.).

set out, prä-ficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus

sum (for=ad).

seventh, septim-us, -a, -um (adj.).

severe, gravis, -e (adj.).

severely, graviter.

shade, umbr-a, -ae, F.

shall, sign of fut.; (in deliberative

question), 139 (a).

sharp, äcer, äcris, äcre; äcut-us, -a,

-um (adj.).

ship, näv-is, -is, F.; navigi-um, -i, M.;

s. of war, navis longa.

shore, ör-a, -ae, F.; lit-us, -öris, N.

short, bröv-is, -e.

shortly, brevi.

should (ought), p. 173, 5.

shout, cläm-or, -öris, M.

shout, raise a s., v., cläm-ö, -äre,

-ävi, -ätum; p. 164, 2, note.

shudder at, horr-eo, -ère, -ui (acc.).

Sicily, Sicili-a, -ae, F.

sick, aeg-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

sick, I am, aegröt-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.

side, pars, partis, F.; lätus, lätis,

- N. : on all sides, undique ; on both sides, utrinque ; on this s. of, citra (acc.).
- siege, obsidi-o, -ōnis, F.
- sight, conspect-us, -ūs, M.
- signal, sign-um, -i, N.
- silence, silentium, -i, N.
- silent, I am, taceo, tacere, taci, tacitum.
- silent, tacit-us, -a, -um (adj.).
- silver, argent-um, -i, N.
- silver, of, argent-eus, -ea, -eum.
- since, adv., abhinc ; ten years since, abhinc decem annos (or annis).
- since, conj., quum, cum (p. 203) ; quoniam, quia (p. 198) ; p. 190, 5.
- sing, cant-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum ; cān-o, cānere, cecinī, cantum.
- single, not a, ne unus quidem.
- sister, sor-or, -ōris, F.
- sit, sedeo, sedere, sedi, sessum.
- six, sex.
- six hundred, sexcenti, -ae, -a, num.
- size, magnitud-o, -inis, F. ; use quantum (p. 181, 1).
- skilful, perit-us, -a, -um with (genitive).
- skill, scienti-a, -ae, F.
- skilled, perit-us (in=gen.).
- skin, pell-is, -is, F.
- sky, cael-um, -i, N.
- slave, serv-us, -i, F.
- slavery, servit-us, -ūtis.
- slay, interficio, ficere, feci, fectum ; trucid-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- sleep, somn-us, -i, M. ; v., dorm-i-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
- slip, labor, lapsi, lapsus sum.
- sloth, ignavi-a, -ae, F.
- small, parv-us, -a, -um (p. 57, 4) ; exigū-us, -a, -um (adj.).
- smile at, rideo, ridere, risi, risum (acc.).
- snow, nix, nivis, F.
- so, adv., adēō (with adj.s.) ; ita, sic (in this way) ; so . . . as, ita . . . ut ; so that, ut (p. 187) ; dum, dummodo (p. 194, 3) ; so much, tantum, tantopere ; so great, tant-us, -a, -um ; so long, tandū ; so many, tot.
- Socrates, Socrat-es, -is, M.
- soil, sol-um, -i, N. ; āger, āgri, M.
- solace, solati-um, -i, N.
- sold, be, vān-ēo, -īre, -ivi (-it), -itum.
- soldier, mil-es, -itis, M.
- some, aliquis, qua, aliquod (p. 132) ; quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam (p. 132) ; some . . . others, alii . . . alii ; sometimes, interdum.
- some, there are : p. 188, 5, (a).
- son, fil-i-us, -ii, or -i, M.
- song, cant-us, -ūs, M. ; carm-en, -inis, N.
- son-in-law, gēn-er, -ōri, M.
- soon, statim, confestim, mox, brevī.
- sooner, mātūrius (comp. of mature, early).
- Sophocles, Sophocl-es, -is, M.
- sorrow, dol-ōr, -ōris, M.
- soul, ānim-us, -i, M. ; ānim-a, -ae, F.
- sound, sōnit-us, -ūs ; v., sōno, sōnāre, sōnāi, sōnitum.
- sovereignty, regn-um, -i, N.
- sow, sero, sēre, sēvi, sātum.
- space, spāt-um, -i, N. ; within the space of two days, biduo.
- spare, parco, parcere, peperci, parol-um or parsum (with dative ; p. 105, 9).
- sparrow, passer, passeris, M.
- speak, loquor, dico.
- speaking, dicere (inf. used as a noun ; 108, 4) ; ars dicendi.
- spear, hasta, -ae, F.
- speech, orāti-o, -ōnis, F.
- speed, celerit-as, -ātis, F.
- spend, consūm-o, -ēre, consumpsi, consumptum.
- spit, ver-u, -ūs, N.
- splendid, splendidus, -a, -um (adj.).
- sport, n., lūd-us, -i, M. ; lūs-us, -ūs, M. ; v., lūdo, lūdēre, lūsī, lūsūm.
- spot, loc-us, -i.
- spread, spargo, spargere, sparsi, spar-sum ; sterno, sternere, strāvī, strātum.
- spring, ver, vēris, N.
- spy, spēcūlāt-or, -ōris, M. ; explorāt-or, -ōris, M.
- stand, sto, stare, stēti, stātum ; s. for, pet-o, -ere, -ivi (-it), -itum ; s. near, ad-sto, -stare, -steti.
- star, stell-a, -ae, F.
- start : see set out.
- state, civit-as, -ātis, F.
- statue, stātū-a, -ae, F.
- stay : see remain.
- step, pass-us, -ūs, M.

e, -ivi (-it), -itum.

M.

aliquid (p. 132);
dam or quoddam

ers, alii... alii;

p. 188, 5, (a).

M.

; carn-en, -inis,

-eri, M.

im, mox, brev.

omp. of mature,

-es, -is, M.

M.

anim-a, -ae, F.

V., sōno, sōnāre,

um, -i, N.

i, sātum.

N.; within the

biduo.

e, peperci, parci-

live; p. 105, 9).

asseris, M.

used as a noun;

F.

F.

ere, consumpsi,

-a, -um (adj.).

M.; lūs-us, -ūs,

lūsum.

ere, sparsi, spar-

trāvi, strātum.

M.; explorāt-or,

stātum; s. for,

s. near, ad-

still, tranquill-us, -a, -um (adj.);
(nevertheless) tāmen; (even now), adhuc.

stone, lapis, lapidis, M.

stork, ciconi-a, -ae, F.

storm, tempest-as, -ātis, F.

story, fabul-a, -ae, F.

stream, riv-us, -i, M.; flūvi-us, -i, M.;

annis, -is, M.; flūm-en, -inis, N.

strength, rob-ur, -ōris, N.; virēs,

virium, F. (pl. of vis; p. 45).

strive, cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum; nitōr,

nīti, nīsus or nīsus sum.

subdue, sup-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

vinco, vincere, vici, victum.

such, tālis, -e; of such a kind,

ēiusmodi (in contempt).

sue, p. 185, 5.

suffer, patiōr, pati, passus sum.

suffering, lab-or, -ōris, M.; dol-or,

-ōris, M.

suitable, aptus, -a, -um (adj.); idōc-

us, -a, -um (adj.).

Sulmo, Sulm-o, -ōnis, M.

summer, aest-as, -ātis, F.

summon, convōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

arcesso, -cessere, -cessitum.

sun, sol, sōlis, M.

sunset, sōlis occāsus (-ūs), M.

sure, certus, -a, -um (adj.).

surpass, sup-er-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

vinco, vincere, vici, victum.

surrender, trad-o, -dēre, -didi,

-ditum; dē-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum (tr.).

sway, imp-er-ium, -i, N.

swift, celer, celeris, celere; rapidus,

-a, -um; swifter, celerior, celerius.

swim, nat-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

swine, sus, suis, M. or F.

sword, gladi-us, -i, M.; ferrum, -i, N.

T.

table, mens-a, -ae, F.

take, capio, capere, -cēpi, captum;

take by storm, expugn-o, -āre, -āvi,

-ātum.

talent, ingēni-um, -i, N.; (a weight

or a sum of money), tālent-um, -i, N.

tall, altus, -a, -um; prōcēr-us, -a, -um;

ingens, ingentis (adj.).

teach, doc-ēo, -ēre, -nūi, -tum.

teacher, magist-er, -ri, M.

tear, lacrim-a, -ae, F.

tell, narr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; dico,

dicere, dixi, -dictum.

temple, templ-um, -i, N.; aed-es,

-is, F.

ten, decem.

tenth, decim-us, -a, -um.

terrify, terre-o, -ēre, -nūi, -itum.

territory, fin-es, -ium (pl. M.); āger,

āgri, M.

terror, terr-or, -ōris, M.

than (after comparatives), quam (p.

55, 3).

thank, grātiās agere (dat.).

that, p. 109, 1; ut (183; 187).

that, ille, illa, illud.

the, p. 4, 11, note; (emphatic), p. 188, 4.

theft, furt-um, -i, N.

their, p. 169, 5; often omitted, p. 169,

5, note 2.

them, they, 168, 3.

then, tum.

there, ibi; be t., adsum.

thick, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

thing, res, rei, F.

think (fancy), pūt-o, -āre, -āvi, ātum;

(reflect), cōgito, -āre, -āvi, ātum; (hold

as an opinion), cens-o, -ēre, -ui, -sum;

(judge), arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum.

this, hic, haec, hoc (p. 117).

thou, tu, tū.

though, 106, 5.

thousand, mille, indecl. in sing.; in

the pl., millia, millium, millibus (p. 68, 5).

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trēcent-i, -ae, -a.

threshold, lim-en, -inis, N.

through, per (acc.).

throw, v., iacio, -iacere, -ieci, -iectum;

throw away, ab-icio, -icere, -ieci,

-iectum.

throw, iact-us, -ūs, M.

thy, thine, tū-us, -a, -um (adj.).

till, p. 201, 4.

timber, mātēri-a, -ae, F.

time, temp-us, -ōris, N.

timid, timidus, -a, -um (adj.).

to, prep., ad or in with acc.; (of pur-

pose), 185, 5; to no purpose, frustra,

nequidquam.

to-day, hodie.

to-morrow, cras.

tongue, lingu-a, -ae, F.

too, (with compar.), p. 188, 5, (c); too

great to be told, say greater than

which can be told, 188, 5, (c).

top, culm-en, -inis, N.; fastigi-um, -i, N.; **the top of the hill**, collis summus; **the top of the mountain**, mons summus.

turn, lá-cer, -cēra, -cērum (adj.).

touch, tango, tangere, tētigī, tactum; **t. the heart**, animum móveo.

tower, turr-is, -is, F.; arx, arcis, F.

town, oppid-um, -i, N.

track, vestigi-um, -i, N.

traitor, prodi-or, -ōris, M.

treachery, perfidī-a, -ae, F.; prō-diti-o, -ōnis, F.

treaty, foed-us, -ēris, N.

tree, arbor, arbōris, F.

tribe, trib-us, -ūs, F.

troops, cōpi-ae, -arum, F. (pl.).

Troy, Trōi-a, -ae, F.

Trojan, Trōiān-us, -a, -um.

true, vēr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

trust, fido, fidere, fīsus sum; confido, fidere, -fīsus sum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).

truth, vērīt-as, -ātis, F.; vērā (n. pl.).

try, cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; nitor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum; p. 216, 3, note 1.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, viginti; **twenty at a time**, vicēni, -ae, -a; **twenty times**, vicies.

two, duo, dūae, dūo (68, 4).

two hundred, ducent-i, -ae, -a (adj.).

U.

unable, I am, non possum (posse, pōtū); néqu-ēo, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -ītum.

uncertain, incert-us, -a, -um (adj.).

undertake, suscipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum; I undertake to do this, suscipio me hoc facturum esse (p. 110, 1).

undertaking, nēgōti-um, -i, N.

understand, intel-lego, -lēgere, -lēxi, -lectum (literally = pick up).

undying, immortal-is, -e (adj.).

unfortunate, infēlix, -fēlicis (adj.).

ungrateful, ingrāt-us, -a, -um.

unhappy, infelix, -fēlicis (adj.).

unlike, dissimilis, -símile (adj., dat.).

until, p. 201, 4.

unwilling, invit-us, -a, -um (adj.);

I am u., nōlo, nolle, nōlū (p. 147).

unworthy, indignus (64, 4).

upon, in (+abl., of rest; +acc., of motion).

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (116).

used; p. 216, 3, note 1.

useful, ūtil-is, -e (adj.).

V.

valley, vall-is, -is, F.

valor, virt-us, -ūtis, F.

value, I, aestim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

value, the, aestimāti-o, -ōnis, F.

Verres, Verr-es, -is, M.

Vergil, Vergil-ius, -ii, M.

very, expressed by superlative when with an adj. or adv. (p. 53, 5); before a noun, ipse: **the very man**, ipse vir.

Vesontio, Vesonti-o, -ōnis, F.

veteran, vétéran-us, -a, -um (adj.).

vice, viti-um, -i, N.; scēl-us, -ēris, N.

victory, victori-a, -ae, F.

view, conspect-us, -ūs, M.; v. spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **your v. of the matter**, say, what you think (sentio) of (de) the matter (isi, i) (sentio, I hold a view).

vigor, vig-or, -ōris, M.

vigorously, vehementer.

village, vic-us, -i, M.

violation, use viciō (-āre, etc.); p. 219, (b).

violent, violentus, -a, -um (adj.).

virtue, virt-us, -ūtis, F.

visit, ad-eo, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -ītum (acc.).

voice, vox, vōcis, F.

vote, sententi-a, -ae, F.

W.

wage, gēro, gerere, gessi, gestum.

waggon, plaustr-um, -i, N.

wait, expect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

walk, ambul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

wall, mūr-us, -i, M.; moeni-a, -um, N. (defence); pari-ēs, -ētis, F. (of a house).

wander, err-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

war, bell-um, -i, N.; **carry on w.**, bellum gerere.

ward off: say **keep off**.

warlike, bellicōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

warm, calid-us, -a, -um (adj.).

warn, moneo (of = de).

waste, lay waste, vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **w. time**, tempus consumere.

watch, v., observ-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, custōd-io, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.

sum (116).
e 1.
adj.).
F.
s, F.
-are, -āvi, -ātum.
-ti-o, -ōnis, F.
s, M.
-ii, M.
y superlative when
(p. 53, 5); before a
y man, ipse vir.
-o, -ōnis, F.
us, -a, -um (adj.).
; scēl-us, -ēris, N.
-ae, F.
-ūs, M.; v. spect-o,
your v. of the
o think (sentio) of
I) (sentio, I hold
M.
menter.
M.
(-āre, etc.); p. 219,
-a, -um (adj.).
is, F.
I (-II), -Itum (acc.).
s, F.
gessi, gestum.
m, -i, N.
-āvi, -ātum.
-āvi, -ātum.
t.; moeni-a, -um,
tis, F. (of a house).
-āvi, -ātum.
; carry on w.,
p off.
s, -a, -um (adj.).
-um (adj.).
e).
s, vast-o, -āre, -āvi,
ous consumēre.
-āre, -āvi, -ātum,
m.

watch, custō-s, -dis, M.; vīgīl-a,
-ae, F.
water, aqu-a, -ae, F.
wave, fluct-us, -ūs, M.
waxen, cērē-us, -a, -um (adj.).
way, vi-a, -ae, F.; iter, itinēris, N.;
in no w., nullo mōdo.
wealth, ōp-es, -um (pl.); divitī-ae,
-arum (pl.), F.
wealthy, ōpulent-us, -a, -um; dives,
divitis (adj.).
weep, lācrim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
flēo, flēre, flēvi, flētum.
weeping, flēt-us, -ūs, M.; adj., flens,
flentis.
weight, pond-us, -ēris, N.
welcome, grāt-us, -a, -um.
well, bēne; comp., melius; superl.,
optime; be w., bēne esse.
well-known, nōtus, -a, -um (adj.).
what (interrog.), quid; (rel.), id quod.
when, quum (p. 203); often expressed
by part. (p. 220, 2): as, when the news
was reported, re nuntiata; interrog.,
quando (never, quum).
whenever, p. 204, 4.
where, ubi; w. from, unde.
whether, num; whether . . . or,
utrum . . . an (p. 130, 6; 177, 6).
which, quis, quae, quid (interrog.);
(of two), uter, utra, utrum; (rel.), see p.
126.
while, dum (p. 201); quum (p. 203, 2).
white, alb-us, -a, -um (adj.).
who, (rel.), qui (p. 126); (interrog.),
quis (p. 129).
whoever, quicumque, quaecumque,
quodcumque.
why, cur, quāre.
wicked, scēlērāt-us, -a, -um (adj.);
w. deed, say crime.
wide, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).
wife, uxor, uxōris, F.
wild, fēr-us, -a, -um (adj.).
will, sign of fut.; volo (of intention),
or p. 174.
will, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.; against
my w., me invito.
willing, I am, vōlo, velle, vōlūi.
wind, vent-us, -i, M.
winding, curv-us, -a, -um (adj.).
wine, vin-um, -i, N.
wing, āl-a, -ae, F.; corn-u, -ūs, N.

winged, vōlūc-er, -ris, -re (adj.).
winter, v., hiēm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
winter, hiēm-s, -is, F.; that w.,
p. 82, 1; all w., acc.
wisdom, sapiēti-a, -ae, F.
wise, sapiē-s, -tis (adj.).
wish, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.; v., volo,
velle, vōlūi.
with, cum, prep. with abl., written
after personal and rel. pronouns: mecum,
quibuscum (105, 8; 126, 3, note 2); of
military accompaniment, p. 12, 3.
withdraw, se abdūco.
within, p. 82, 2; intrā (acc.).
without, extrā (prep. with acc.); p.
281, 1; be without, expers esse (abl.).
withstand, resisto, -sistere, -stīti,
-stītum; ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti, -stītum
(dat.).
wolf, lūp-us, -i, M.
woman, mūlier, -is, F.
wood, lign-um, -i, N.
wood, a, silv-a, -ae, F.
woody, silvest-er, -ris, -re (adj.).
word, verb-um, -i, N.; (promise), fides,
et; keep one's w., fidem praesto
(-stāre, -stīti, -stītum).
work, ōp-us, -ēris, N.
workman, fāb-er, -bri, M.
workmen, opērae, M. (pl.), fābri.
world, mund-us, -i, M.
worse, pēior, pēius; dētēri-or, -us.
worst, p. 57, 4.
worthy, dign-us, -a, -um (adj.) (p.
64, 4).
wound, vuln-us, -ēris, N.
wound, v., vulner-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
would, see will; what you w.
do, p. 174, 1.
would that, ūtinam (with subj.;
p. 138, 4).
wretched, miser, -a, -um; infēl-l-x,
-icis.
write, scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scrip-
tum.
writing, scribere.
wrong, iniūri-a, -ae, F.; nefas, N.,
indecl.
wrong doing, mālēfici-um, -i, N.
X.
Xenophon, Xēnōph-on, -ontis.

Y.

year, ann-us, -i, M.
yearly, annu-us, -a, -um (adj.);
(every year), quotannis.
yes: p. 29, 4.
yesterday, heri; dies hesternus.
yet, tamen, verum; **as yet**, adhuc;
not yet, nondum.
yield, cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum;
(surrender), se dēdo, dēdere, dēdidi,
 deditum.
yoke, iūg-um, -i, N.
yonder, ille, illa, illud (p. 118, 4).
you, tu (the Latins used the sing. to
 refer to one person, not, like us, the

plural: as, You are calling, boy, Tu, puer,
 vōcas; pl., vos (p. 104); **you yourself**,
 tu ipse.

young man, iūvenis, adolescens,
 adolescentis (also written adulescens).

younger, iūnior (p. 58, note).

your, yours, tu-us, -a, -um (referring
 to one); vest-er, -ra, -rum (adj.) (re-
 ferring to more than one); p. 118, 3.

youth, iuvent-us, -ūtis (body of);
 iuvent-a, -ae, F. (time of).

youthful, pūeril-is, -e (adj.).

Z.

Zama, Zām-a, -ae, F.

lling, boy, Tu, puer,
); you yourself,

ivenis, adolescens,
ten adulescens).

p. 58, note).

as, -a, -um (referring
i, -rum (adj.) (re-
one); p. 118, 3.

, -ntis (body of);
of).

as, -e (adj.).

F.

LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

ROMAN METHOD.

VOWELS.

Letters.

Latin A long as in *cālo, mānāre*,
short as in *cālor, mānēo*.

E long as in *nēdum*,
sēcēdo, diē.

short as in *nēfas, sēcō*,
arcē.

I long as in *sī, sīn, rīdēo*.

short as in *sīne, sīlīs*,
rīgīdus.

O long as in *cōmēs, omēs*.
short as in *cōmēs, opūs*.

U long as in *ūnā, ūmōr*.

short as in *ūtēr, hūmūs*.

Y long as in *gŷrūs, Hŷdra*.

short as in *cŷmbā, lŷrā*.

Pronunciation.

as Eng. *a* in psalm, *salve*.
the same sound shortened.

Both *ā* and *ā* are found in *āhā*!
N.B. *ā* in Latin was never pro-
nounced as in *mate*, nor *ā* as
in *man*, *mat*.

as Eng. *e* in *grey* and *skēin*.

as Eng. *e* in *sped* and *met*.

N.B. Lat. *ē* was never pro-
nounced as Eng. *ee* in *see*.

as *i* in *machīne*, *ee* in *feel*.

N.B. The Latin *ī* was never the
i in *fine*.

as *i* in *fit*, *pīn*.

as *o* in *bone*, *lone*.

nearest representative Eng. is *o*
in *not*, *rock*.

as *u* in *ruin*, *rude*.

N.B. Lat. *ū* was never pro-
nounced like *u* in *acute*, *mule*.

as *u* in *full*, *oo* in *foot*.

N.B. Lat. *ū* never as Eng. *ū* in
but, *cut*.

as *I* long.

as *y* in *beauty*, *lady*.

DIPHTHONGS.

The pronunciation of the diphthongs is best learnt by first sound-
ing each vowel separately and then running them together. Thus:

ae as *ah-eh* ; *au* as *ah-oo* ; *oe* as *o-eh* ; *ei* as *eh-ee* ; *eu* as *eh-oo*, and *ui* as *oo-ee*.

AE in <i>tacdae</i>	either Eng. <i>a</i> in <i>fare</i> or as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .
AU in <i>laudo</i>	Eng. <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> .
OE in <i>foedus</i>	N.B. Avoid the pronunciation "feed-us."
EI in <i>hei</i>	Eng. <i>ey</i> in <i>grey</i> , <i>ei</i> in <i>skein</i> .
EU in <i>seu, neuter</i>	The general rule, as given above, is a sufficient guide.
UI in <i>cui, huic</i>	

CONSONANTS.

C as in <i>cāno, cēctni, circā, condicio</i> .	always as Eng. <i>k</i> ; never as <i>s</i> nor as <i>c</i> before <i>e, i</i> .
Qu in <i>inquit</i> .	as Eng. <i>qu</i> in <i>quick</i> .
G in <i>gaudeo, gēnus, gīgās, agē</i> .	always as Eng. <i>g</i> in <i>got, get, begin</i> ; never as <i>j</i> or <i>g</i> soft.
N before c (<i>k, qu</i>), <i>g</i> , as <i>inceptil, ingquam, congero</i> .	as <i>ng</i> in <i>sing</i> . Thus : <i>ingkipit, ingquam conggero</i> .
R in <i>ringi, rārus, dator</i> .	trilled <i>r</i> as in French or Scotch.
S as in <i>sūs, accuso, tristes</i> .	always voiceless, as in <i>hiss, hist</i> ; never voiced as in <i>has (haz)</i> .
J or I consonant, as in <i>iūgum, iācio</i> .	as Eng. <i>y</i> . Thus : <i>yugum, yakio</i> .
V or U consonant, as in <i>uānus, uīs, seruo</i> (i.e., <i>vanus, vis, servo</i>).	as Eng. <i>w</i> . Thus : <i>wāhnus, wees, serwo</i> .

N.B. There is no ancient authority for spelling *i* consonant as *j*, or *u* consonant as *v*. The Romans used one symbol for both vowel and consonant.

B, D, F, H, L, M, P, T	as in Eng. N.B. T is always the same. Ediſio is not to be pronounced edishio.
X as in <i>saxum, exulto</i> .	as Eng. <i>ks</i> (<i>x</i>). Thus : <i>eksulto, not eggulto</i> .
Z as in <i>gaza, Zephyrus</i> .	Probably as <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> .

Double consonants should be carefully separated in pronunciation, as *ag-ger, pos-sum, pin-na*.

ce ; *eu* as eh-oo, and

r as *ai* in *aisle*.

nciation "feed-us."

kein.

given above, is a

g. *k* ; never as *s* nor

e, *i*.

n quick.

Eng. *g* in *got*, *get*,

ver as *j* or *g* soft.

r. Thus : ingkipit,

onggero.

n French or Scotch.

ess, as in *hiss*, *hist* ;

ed as in *has* (*haz*).

hus : *yugum*, *yakio*.

. Thus : *wāhnus*,

g *i* consonant as *j*,

e symbol for both

always the same.

ot to be pronounced

). Thus : *eksulto*,

o.

dz in *adse*.

ated in pronuncia-

